



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

# Italian conversational course

Giovanni Toscani

GIFT OF  
Harold Wheeler



779  
T7133

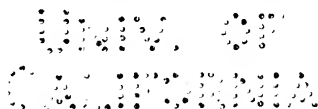






# ITALIAN CONVERSATIONAL COURSE.

A NEW METHOD OF  
TEACHING THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE, BOTH  
THEORETICALLY AND PRACTICALLY.



BY  
GIOVANNI TOSCANI,  
" "  
PROFESSOR OF THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE  
IN QUEEN'S COLLEGE, LONDON.

*Fifth Edition.*

LONDON:  
TRÜBNER & CO., 58, LUDGATE HILL.

---

1875.

TO THE  
ASSOCIATION  
LONDON  
PRINTED BY C. F. HODGSON & SON  
GOUGH SQUARE, FLEET STREET.

GIFT OF  
Harold Wheeler

## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

---

LONG experience in the teaching of his native tongue has enabled the Author of this ITALIAN CONVERSATIONAL COURSE to judge of the practical utility of the Italian grammars commonly used in this country. Meritorious as some of these are, he is not acquainted with any one which embodies the modern principles of instruction so successfully applied in the teaching of other modern languages. The aim of the author has therefore been to supply to students of Italian advantages of method heretofore almost exclusively enjoyed by students of French and German.

The main feature, then, of this Work is, that it unites grammatical theory with conversational practice; and that the pupil, thus combining the study of words with their immediate application, is enabled to form complete sentences from the very commencement of the course.

To this end, the author has given the study of the Verb the first place in his work. This Chapter, which gives the complete accidence and syntax of the Verb, comprises twelve Exercises; each Exercise being followed by a series of simple questions in Italian, which serve chiefly the purpose of exciting intellectual activity on the part of the pupil.

The theory of the other parts of speech, which are comprehended in separate chapters, is intended to be

studied concurrently with the Verb; and afterwards the Practical Exercises, which accompany these parts of speech, to be worked out in the same manner as the preceding exercises on the Verb. A Chapter is also devoted to an explanation of the different modes of address in Italian. When this has been mastered, the student is to return to the Exercises on the Verbs, and re-work them, applying the directions given in the text.

The different parts of the course having been thus repeatedly brought before the student, will remain permanently impressed on the memory.

The rules have been for the most part illustrated by quotations from Italian classics; and the Conversational Exercises have been made the vehicle of useful information about Italy.

The Author may mention that the tables of irregular and exceptional forms in the various parts of speech are here given more comprehensively and exactly than in any Italian grammar that has fallen under his notice.

GIOVANNI TOSCANI.

*January, 1867.*

---

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

To add to the utility of the work, and in accordance with the advice of practical teachers, the Author has supplemented the English-Italian vocabulary of the former Edition by an Italian-English one of all the words used in the questions on the exercises, and elsewhere.

G. T.

*May, 1867.*

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

---

THE rapid sale of two editions of this work affords a sufficient indication that such a compilation was really wanted ; and the favourable comments of the press, as well as of practical teachers, convince the author that the plan he has followed in its construction is found in the hands of others as effective as he has found it in his own.

The plan, the general order and arrangement, of the work has been preserved in this as in the former editions ; but many additions and improvements have been made in each division of the book.

There have been given, at the outset of the work, complete tabulated forms of the inflected parts or speech, which generally precede the verb ; these will be found sufficient to explain such inflected words as are met with in the exercises.

The practical exercises, which in the former editions consisted only of English sentences to be translated into Italian, have each of them been preceded by a Reading Exercise in Italian, consisting of phrases, passages, and extracts, chiefly chosen from the best writers, to be translated into English ; and the Questions following the exercises are made to refer to both.

The use of the different Moods and Tenses of the Verb, as also the mode of their formation, have been

carefully explained, and a Table has been added, showing the conjugation of all verbs, regular and irregular, which will be found greatly to facilitate the learning of the verbs, and to aid in retaining them in the memory.

Observations have been appended to all the chapters, on the orthography of the different parts of speech; and throughout the work great care has been taken to point out differences of idiom and construction between the Italian and English languages.

In conclusion, the author desires to acknowledge the assistance he has received from Mr. E. Grosvenor, to whose knowledge of the language, and literary skill, he is indebted for several improvements in matters of detail.

GIOVANNI TOSCANI.

QUEEN'S COLLEGE, HARLEY STREET, W.

*January, 1870.*

# CONTENTS.

## CHAPTER I.

	Page		Page
<b>PRONUNCIATION :</b>		Articles.....	8
Vowels .....	1	Adjectives.....	<i>ib.</i>
Consonants .....	2	<b>Pronouns :</b>	
Accents.....	5	Personal .....	<i>ib.</i>
Apostrophe .....	6	Possessive.....	9
Use of Capitals .....	<i>ib.</i>	Demonstrative.....	<i>ib.</i>
<b>TABLES OF INFLECTIONS, &amp;c. (for reference).</b>		Relative .....	<i>ib.</i>
Nouns .....	7	Interrogative .....	<i>ib.</i>
		Indefinite .....	10

## CHAPTER II.

### VERBS.

Personal Pronouns, which are the subjects of the verb, when expressed and not expressed .....	11	Present Subjunctive, Note <i>e</i> .....	16
Auxiliaries used to conjugate the compound tenses of all verbs .....	<i>ib.</i>	Imperfect „ Note <i>f</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
<b>CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY <i>Essere</i> .....</b>	12	<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
Agreement of the Past Participle preceded by <i>Essere</i> , Note <i>f</i> .....	13	<i>Questions</i> (to be answered in Italian).....	18
<i>Phrases</i> .....	15	<b>CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY <i>Avere</i>.....</b>	19
<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	Agreement of the Past Participle preceded by <i>Avere</i> , Note <i>c</i> .....	20
<b>USE OF THE MOODS AND TENSES :</b>		<i>Phrases</i> .....	21
Imperfect Indicative, Note <i>d</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
Perfect „ Note <i>f</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	22
Compound Present, Note <i>h</i> ... ..	<i>ib.</i>	<i>Questions</i> (to be answered in Italian).....	24
„ Imperfect, Note <i>a</i> .....	16	<b>CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS :</b>	
„ Perfect, Note <i>c</i> ... ..	<i>ib.</i>	Model of 1st Conjugation ...	25
		Formation of Moods, Tenses, and Persons :	
		Plural of Present Indicative, Notes <i>b, c, d</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>



	Page		Page
Formation of the Imperative		<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	40
Mood, Note <i>a</i> .....	26	<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	41
Formation of the Present		<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	42
Subjunctive, Notes <i>b, c, d</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	REFLECTIVE VERBS—Model ...	43
Use of Present Participle and		Use of Reflective and Con-	
Gerund, Note <i>e</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	junctive Pronouns, Note <i>a</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
Observation on Verbs ending		RECIPROCAL VERBS .....	46
in <i>care</i> or <i>gare</i> .....	27	<i>Phrases</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
Observation on Verbs ending		<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	47
in <i>ciare, giare, gliare, chiare,</i>		<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
<i>sciare</i> .....	28	<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	48
Observations on the Verb		PASSIVE VERBS .....	49
<i>sonare, &amp;c.</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	Use of <i>si</i> (one, they, people,	
<i>Phrases</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	<i>we</i> ) .....	<i>ib.</i>
<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	IMPERSONAL VERBS .....	50
<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	29	Observations on the Use of	
<i>Questions</i> (to be answered in		<i>Essere</i> and <i>Avere</i> .....	51
Italian) .....	31	<i>Phrases</i> .....	52
Model of 2nd Conjugation .....	32	<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
Formation of 3rd pers. plural		<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	53
Present Indic. of Verbs of		Verbs that take no preposi-	
2nd and 3rd Conjugations,		tion after them when fol-	
Note <i>c</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	lowed by an infinitive,	
Formation of the Imperative		Note <i>c</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
Mood of Verbs of 2nd and		<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	54
3rd Conjugations, Note <i>e</i> ...	<i>ib.</i>	Observations on Irreg. Verbs ...	<i>ib.</i>
Formation of Singular of		Formation of Regular Tenses ...	<i>ib.</i>
Present Subj. of Verbs of		„ „ Perfect of Irre-	
2nd and 3rd Conjugations,		gular Verbs .....	56
Note <i>a</i> .....	33	IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE 1ST	
Observation on Verbs ending		CONJUGATION :—	
in <i>cere</i> and <i>scere</i> .....	34	<i>Andare</i> .....	57
Verbs requiring to be in the		<i>Dare</i> .....	58
Subjunctive Mood with		<i>Fare</i> .....	59
<i>che</i> , Note <i>b</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	<i>Stare</i> .....	60
<i>Phrases</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	Observation on Compounds	
<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	of the above Verbs, N.B. ...	61
<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	35	<i>Phrases</i> .....	62
<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	37	<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
Model of 3rd Conjugation like		Verbs requiring <i>a</i> before an In-	
<i>sentire</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	finite coming after them,	
List of Verbs conjugated like		Note <i>c</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
<i>sentire</i> .....	39	<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	63
Model of 3rd Conjugation like		<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	64
<i>finire</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>		
<i>Phrases</i> .....	40		

# CONTENTS.

ix

	Page		Page
<b>IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE 2ND CONJUGATION:</b>		<b>Verbs in ere (short) irregular only in the Perfect and Past Participle</b>	97
Irregular Verbs in ere (long)...	64	Table of the above verbs ...	98
Conjugation of <i>Potere</i> .....	65	Phrases .....	100
" <i>Volere</i> .....	66	Reading Exercise .....	ib.
" <i>Dovere</i> .....	67	Translation Exercise.....	101
" <i>Sapere</i> .....	68	Questions, &c.....	103
Phrases .....	69	<b>List of Irregular Verbs in ere (short) with two forms in Perfect or Past Participle, or in both.....</b>	104
Reading Exercise .....	ib.	Phrases .....	105
Translation Exercise.....	70	Reading Exercise .....	106
Conjunctions and Pronouns requiring the Subjunctive after them, Note c .....	ib.	Translation Exercise.....	ib.
Questions, &c.....	71	Questions, &c.....	107
Other Verbs in ere (long) .....	72	<b>IRREGULAR VERBS OF 3RD CONJUGATION</b>	108
Phrases .....	76	Phrases .....	119
Reading Exercise .....	ib.	Reading Exercise .....	120
Verbs requiring <i>di</i> before the Infinitive coming after them, Note b.....	ib.	Translation Exercise.....	ib.
Translation Exercise.....	77	Questions, &c.....	122
Questions, &c.....	78	<b>DEFECTIVE VERBS</b>	ib.
Other Verbs in ere (long) .....	ib.	Observations on the Orthography of Verbs .....	126
Phrases .....	83	Phrases .....	127
Reading Exercise .....	84	Reading Exercise .....	128
Translation Exercise .....	ib.	Translation Exercise .....	ib.
Questions, &c.....	86	Questions, &c.....	129
Irregular Verbs in ere (short)...	ib.	Poetical forms of certain Verbs	ib.
Verbs in ere (short) irregular in five Tenses.....	87	Obsolete forms of certain Verbs	131
Phrases .....	95		
Reading Exercise .....	ib.		
Translation Exercise .....	96		
Questions, &c.....	97		

## CHAPTER III.

### NOUNS.

Gender .....	132	Rules for determining the Gender of Nouns of <i>things</i> destitute of life .....	134
Rules for determining the Gender of Nouns of <i>beings</i> possessing animal life .....	ib.	Nouns ending in <i>a</i> .....	ib.
Distinction of Gender of the above Nouns .....	133	Exceptions .....	ib.
Questions, &c.....	134	Nouns ending in <i>o</i> .....	135
		Exceptions .....	ib.

	Page		Page
Nouns ending in <i>u</i> .....	135	Observations on the Euphonic	
Exceptions .....	<i>ib.</i>	Modification of Plural	
Nouns ending in <i>e</i> and <i>i</i> .....	136	Nouns .....	139
Observations on the Gender of		Nouns ending in <i>ca, ga, cia,</i>	
Nouns of <i>things destitute of</i>		<i>gia, io, co, go, &amp;c.</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
<i>life</i> .....	137	Irregular Plurals.....	141
<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	138	Defective Nouns .....	143
NUMBER .....	138	Plural of Compound Nouns ...	<i>ib.</i>
Formation of the Plural.....	138	<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	144
		Case .....	<i>ib.</i>

## CHAPTER IV

### ARTICLES.

Rules for the use of the Definite		Exceptions .....	149
Article .....	145	Rules for determining when the	
Exceptions .....	<i>ib.</i>	Definite Article is not used	
Orthography of the Definite		in Italian, though required	
Article .....	146	in English .....	151
Observations .....	<i>ib.</i>	Observations on the use of the	
Rules for the use of the In-		Definite Article .....	<i>ib.</i>
definite Article.....	147	Rules for determining when the	
Exceptions .....	<i>ib.</i>	Indefinite Article is not	
<i>Exercise</i> .....	148	required in Italian, though	
Rules for determining the use		used in English .....	152
of the Definite Article ...	<i>ib.</i>	<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
Rules for determining when the		<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	153
Definite Article is required		<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	154
in Italian, though not used			
in English .....	<i>ib.</i>		

## CHAPTER V.

### ADJECTIVES.

Rules on Concord of Adjectives	155	On Comparatives of Equality...	161
Rules on Position of Adjectives	156	"    of Superiority	162
Exceptions .....	<i>ib.</i>	"    of Inferiority	<i>ib.</i>
Observations on the Ortho-		On Superlatives—Absolute ...	164
graphy of Adjectives .....	157	"    Relative ...	165
<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	158	Comparatives and Superlatives	
<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	159	with particular forms .....	166
<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	160	<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	167
Degrees of Adjectives.....	161	<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	168
		<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	170

## CHAPTER VI.

	Page
AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES .....	170

## CHAPTER VII.

NUMERALS .....	173	Idioms .....	176
Cardinal .....	<i>ib.</i>	<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	179
Ordinal .....	174	<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
Distributive and Collective .....	175	<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	181

## CHAPTER VIII.

## PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS .....	181	<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	205
Table of Personal Pronouns, Disjunctive and Conjun- ctive .....	182	<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	206
Rules for the Use of Personal Pronouns .....	184	<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	208
„ Disjunctive Pronouns ..	<i>ib.</i>	DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS ...	<i>ib.</i>
„ Conjunctive Pronouns ...	185	Rules on the use of De- monstrative Pronouns for things .....	209
<i>Exercise</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>	Rules on Demonstrative Pro- nouns used Substantively for persons .....	210
Rules for the use of double Con- junctive Pronouns .....	186	<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	211
Observations on Orthography of Conjunctive Pronouns ..	<i>ib.</i>	<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	212
<i>Exercise</i> .....	187	<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	213
Orthography of Conjunctive Pronouns when joined to the Verb or the word <i>ecco</i> ..	<i>ib.</i>	RELATIVE PRONOUNS .....	<i>ib.</i>
Uses of Personal Pronouns, and the words <i>ci, vi, ne</i> .....	188	Rules on Relative Pronouns ...	214
Concord of Personal Pronouns	191	Observations on <i>onde, dove</i> or <i>ove, donde</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
Poetical and popular licences in the use of Personal Pronouns .....	192	Various meanings of <i>che</i> and <i>quale</i> .....	215
<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	193	Meanings of Pronoun <i>che</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	195	Meanings of Conjunction <i>che</i>	216
<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	198	INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.....	217
POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS .....	<i>ib.</i>	Observations on the Ortho- graphy of the words <i>che,</i> <i>quale, quali, dove, onde</i> .....	218
Idiomatic Expressions .....	200	<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
Modes of Address .....	203	<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	219
		<i>Questions</i> .....	220

	Page		Page
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS .....	220	Class IV.—Indefinite Pro-	
Class I.—Used substantively		nouns used for persons	
for persons .....	ib.	and things .....	223
Class II.—Used substantively		Orthography of Indefinite Pro-	
ly for things.....	221	nouns .....	225
Class III.—Used substantively		<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	ib.
for persons and		<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	ib.
things .....	222	<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	227

## CHAPTER IX.

## ADVERBS.

Different Classes of Adverbs...	228	<i>Exercise</i> .....	230
Adverbs of Place.....	ib.	Adjectives used as Adverbs ...	ib.
<i>Exercise</i> .....	229	Degrees of Adverbs.....	231
Adverbs of Time.....	ib.	Orthography of Adverbs .....	232
<i>Exercise</i> .....	ib.	Adverbial Expressions .....	ib.
Adverbs of Quantity and Qua-		<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	234
lity .....	ib.	<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	235
<i>Exercise</i> .....	230	<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	236
Adverbs of Affirmation, Nega-			
tion, Doubt, Choice, and			
Interrogative Adverbs ...	230		

## CHAPTER X.

## PREPOSITIONS.

Of Place .....	236	<i>Exercise</i> .....	240
<i>Exercise</i> .....	238	Orthography of Prepositions...	240
Of Time .....	ib.	Government of Prepositions ...	ib.
Of Agency, End, Manner, Se-		<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	242
paration, and Exclusion...	ib.	<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	243
Inclination, Conformity, and		<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	244
Substitution.....	239		

## CHAPTER XI.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

Copulative, Augmentative, Ne-		Observations on the Ortho-	
gative, Alternative .....	245	graphy of Conjunctions ...	248
Conditional, Arrestive, Excep-		<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	ib.
tive .....	246	<i>Translation Exercise</i> .....	ib.
Causal .....	247	<i>Questions, &amp;c.</i> .....	250

# CONTENTS.

xiii

## CHAPTER XII.

### INTERJECTIONS.

	Page
Of Grief .....	250
Of Joy, &c. ....	251

## CHAPTER XIII.

EXPLETIVES, ELLIPSIS, COLLOCATION OF WORDS .....	252
<i>Reading Exercise</i> .....	253

## CHAPTER XIV.

MAXIMS AND FIGURES OF SPEECH .....	254
------------------------------------	-----

---

TABLE SHOWING THE CONJUGATION OF ALL VERBS BOTH REGULAR AND IRREGULAR .....	to face page 253
--	------------------

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS (with references).....	259
---	-----

VOCABULARY:—I. English-Italian .....	268
II. Italian-English .....	284

*List of the Abbreviated Names of Authors and Works  
quoted in this book.*

ALB., Alberto.	G. VIL., Giovanni Villani.
ARI., Ariosto.	LEOP., Leopardi.
BEM., Bembo.	MAC., Machiavelli.
BEN. C., Bentivoglio, Cardinale.	MAF., Maffei.
BOC., Boccaccio.	MANZ., Manzoni.
BUONAR., Buonarrotti.	MET., Metastasio.
CAS., Della Casa.	PET., Petrarca.
CES., Cesari.	PROV., Proverbio.
DAN., Dante.	SAC., Sacchetti.
DA RIP., Da Ripalta.	S. CONC., San Concordio.
FIOR., Fiorentino.	S. GREG., San Gregorio.
GUA., Guarini.	SEGN., Segneri.
GUL., Guicciardini.	TAS., Tasso.

*List of Abbreviations.*

Abl., Ablative.	M. or Masc., Masculine.
Acc., Accusative.	Nom., Nominative.
Adj., Adjective.	No., Number.
Cond., Conditional.	Obs., Observation.
Dat., Dative.	P., Page.
Dem. or Demons., Demonstrative.	Perf., Perfect.
Ex., Example.	Pers., Person.
Excep., Exception.	Pers. Pron., Personal Pronoun.
F. or Fem., Feminine.	Pl. or Plur., Plural.
Fut., Future.	Poss., Possessive.
Gen., Genitive.	Pres., Present.
Imp. or Imperf., Imperfect.	Pron., Pronoun.
Indef., Indefinite.	Relat., Relative.
Indic., Indicative.	Sg. or Sing., Singular.
Inter., Interrogative.	Subj., Subjunctive.
	Voc. or Vocab., Vocabulary.

*Explanation of the Marks employed in the Exercises.*

1. A word within parentheses ( ) is not to be translated.
2. An Italian word placed under a dash — shows that the word is wanting in English.
3. English words between brackets [ ] indicate the literal translation of the Italian words to be used.
4. The small figures affixed to English words denote the order of the words in Italian.
5. A figure under an English word refers to a corresponding sentence in the same Exercise.
6. The numbers which follow some of the questions refer to sentences in the Reading and Translation Exercises immediately preceding.

# Italian Conversational Course.

## CHAPTER I.

### PRONUNCIATION.

#### THE ALPHABET.

THE Italian Alphabet consists of twenty-two letters, which are pronounced as follows :—

A	B	C	D <sup>a</sup>	E	F	G	H	I
ah	bee	chee	dee	ay	ef-fay	jee	ak-kah	ee
J <sup>b</sup>	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	
ee loon-go	el-lay	em-may	en-nay	o	pee	koo	er-ray	
S	T	U	V	Z <sup>c</sup>				
es-say	tee	oo	vee	dsay-tah.				

Of these letters, *a, e, i, o, u* are vowels, and the rest, consonants.

#### VOWELS.

*A* has only one sound in Italian—that of the English *a* in 'father'; as, *fato*, fate.

---

<sup>a</sup> It should be observed that it is in Tuscany that the letters *b, c, d* are pronounced *bee, chee, dee*; in other parts of Italy they are sounded *bay, chay, day*.

<sup>b</sup> *j*, called in Italian *i-lungo*, having the same sound as *i*, is by modern grammarians no longer reckoned among the letters of the Italian alphabet. But as in books we occasionally meet with words in which *j* is used instead of *i* or *ii*; as, in *jeri*, for *ieri*, yesterday; in *noja*, for *noia*, vexation; and in *tempi*, for *tempii*, temples, &c., it was thought necessary to give it in this work.

<sup>c</sup> The student will observe that *K, W, X, Y* are not found in the Italian alphabet.



*E* has two sounds, the *open* and the *close*. The *open* is that of the English *ai* in 'fair'; as, *erba*, grass; and the *close* is that of the English *a* in 'fate'; as, *bene*, well.

*I* is always pronounced like *e* in 'be'; as, *vino*, wine.

*O*, like *e*, has two sounds, one *open*, the other *close*. The first is that heard in the English word 'not'; as *notte*, night; and the second is that of the *o* in the word 'note'; as, *pomo*, apple.

*U* has invariably the sound of *oo* in the English word 'root'; as, *uno*, one.

## CONSONANTS.

The Italian consonants are pronounced like the English, except the following: *c*, *g*, *h*, *q*, *r*, *s*, *z*.

*H* in Italian is never sounded. (1.) It is used at the beginning of the following words to distinguish them from others:—

<i>ho</i> , I have.	<i>o</i> , or.
<i>hai</i> , thou hast.	<i>ai</i> , to the.
<i>ha</i> , he has.	<i>a</i> , to.
<i>hanno</i> , they have.	<i>anno</i> , year.

(2.) It prolongs the sound of the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, in the interjections *ah*, *ah*; *deh*, *alas*; *ih* (interjection of abhorrence), *shame*; *oh*, *oh*; *uh* (interjection of pain), *oh*.

(3.) It is also used to harden the sound of *c* or *g* before the vowels *e*, *i*.

The following arrangement will show the pronunciation of *c*, *g*, *q*, *r*, *s*, *z*, in combination with other letters\*:—

*C* soft before *e*, *i*, like *ch* in 'cherry,' 'chilly.'

COMBINATION.	PRONUNCIATION.	EXAMPLES.
<i>ce</i>	<i>chay</i>	<i>céna</i> , supper
<i>ci</i>	<i>chee</i>	<i>cíbo</i> , food
<i>cia</i>	<i>chee-ah</i>	<i>ciálda</i> , wafer
<i>cie</i>	<i>chee-ay</i>	<i>ciélo</i> , heaven
<i>cio</i>	<i>chee-o</i>	<i>cióttolo</i> , pebble
<i>ciu</i>	<i>chee-oo</i>	<i>ciúffo</i> , forelock

\* In the examples which follow, the accent has been given merely as a guide to their correct pronunciation.

**SC** soft before *e, i*, like *sh* in 'shell,' 'ship.'

COMBINATION.	PRONUNCIATION.	EXAMPLES.
<i>scē</i>	<i>shay</i>	<i>scēna</i> , scene
<i>sci</i>	<i>shee</i>	<i>scīmīa</i> , monkey
<i>scia</i>	<i>she-ah</i>	<i>sciālle</i> , shawl
<i>scie</i>	<i>she-ay</i>	<i>sciēnza</i> , science
<i>scio</i>	<i>shee-o</i>	<i>sciōne</i> , whirlwind
<i>sciū</i>	<i>shee-oo</i>	<i>sciupōne</i> , spendthrift

**CC** like *t-ch* in 'hatchet.'

<i>cce</i>	<i>t-chay</i>	<i>accēto</i> , accent
<i>cci</i>	<i>t-chee</i>	<i>lāccio</i> , tie
<i>ccia</i>	<i>t-chee-ah</i>	<i>fāccia</i> , face
<i>ccio</i>	<i>t-chee-o</i>	<i>lūccio</i> , pike
<i>cciū</i>	<i>t-chee-oo</i>	<i>paccūme</i> , sweepings

**C** hard before *a, o, u*, like *k*.

<i>ca</i>	<i>kah</i>	<i>cāsa</i> , house
<i>co</i>	<i>ko</i>	<i>cōllo</i> , neck
<i>cu</i>	<i>koo</i>	<i>cūna</i> , cradle

**CH** hard, like *k*.

<i>che<sup>a</sup></i>	<i>kay</i>	<i>chéto</i> , quiet
<i>chi</i>	<i>kee</i>	<i>chīno</i> , bent

**G** soft before *e, i*, like *j* in 'jest,' 'jig.'

<i>ge</i>	<i>jay</i>	<i>gēlo</i> , frost
<i>gi</i>	<i>jee</i>	<i>gīro</i> , turn
<i>gia</i>	<i>jee-ah</i>	<i>giāllo</i> , yellow
<i>gio</i>	<i>jee-o</i>	<i>giorno</i> , day
<i>giu</i>	<i>jee-oo</i>	<i>giudice</i> , judge

**GG** like *d-j* in 'adjust.'

<i>gge</i>	<i>d-jay</i>	<i>légge</i> , law
<i>ggi</i>	<i>d-jee</i>	<i>óggi</i> , to-day
<i>ggia</i>	<i>d-jee-ah</i>	<i>pióggia</i> , rain
<i>ggio</i>	<i>d-jee-o</i>	<i>fággio</i> , beech-tree
<i>ggiu</i>	<i>d-jee-oo</i>	<i>aggiunta</i> , addition

**G** hard before *a, o, u*, as in English.

<i>ga</i>	<i>gah</i>	<i>gátto</i> , cat
<i>go</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>góla</i> , throat
<i>gu</i>	<i>goo</i>	<i>gústo</i> , taste

<sup>a</sup> See 3, p. 2.

*GH* hard before *e, i*, like *g* in 'gamut.'

COMBINATION.	PRONUNCIATION.	EXAMPLES.
<i>ghe</i> <sup>a</sup>	<i>gay</i>	<i>sghémbō</i> , crooked
<i>ghi</i>	<i>ghee</i>	<i>ghíro</i> , dormouse

*GL* before *i*, liquid sound, like *ll* in 'million.'

<i>gli</i>	<i>l-yee</i>	<i>égli</i> , he
<i>glia</i>	<i>l-yah</i>	<i>fóglia</i> , leaf
<i>glie</i>	<i>l-yay</i>	<i>móglie</i> , wife
<i>glio</i>	<i>l-yo</i>	<i>cíglío</i> , eye-brow
<i>gliu</i>	<i>l-yoo</i>	<i>figliuólo</i> , child

*GN* like *ni* in 'companion.'

<i>gna</i>	<i>n-yah</i>	<i>magágnā</i> , <sup>b</sup> blemish
<i>gne</i>	<i>n-yay</i>	<i>agnéllō</i> , lamb
<i>gni</i>	<i>n-yee</i>	<i>incógnito</i> , unknown
<i>gno</i>	<i>n-yo</i>	<i>bisogno</i> , need
<i>gnu</i>	<i>n-yoo</i>	<i>cagnúccio</i> , little dog

*Q* (which is always accompanied by *u*) like *qu* in 'question.'

<i>qua</i>	<i>qu-ah</i>	<i>quánto</i> , how much
<i>que</i>	<i>qu-ay</i>	<i>quéllo</i> , that
<i>qui</i>	<i>qu-ee</i>	<i>quí</i> , here
<i>quo</i>	<i>qu-o</i>	<i>quóta</i> , share

*R* a rolling sound.

<i>ere</i>	<i>ayr-ray</i>	<i>áere</i> , air
<i>ori</i>	<i>or-ree</i>	<i>oriuólo</i> , watch
<i>oro</i>	<i>or-ro</i>	<i>óro</i> , gold
<i>uro</i>	<i>oor-ro</i>	<i>futúro</i> , future

*S* sibilant (sharp) at the beginning of a word or syllable, like *s* in 'saint.'

<i>sa</i>	<i>sah</i>	<i>sála</i> , hall
<i>se</i>	<i>say</i>	<i>sénso</i> , sense
<i>si</i>	<i>see</i>	<i>sídno</i> , cider
<i>so</i>	<i>so</i>	<i>rósso</i> , red
<i>su</i>	<i>soo</i>	<i>súgo</i> , juice

<sup>a</sup> See 3, p. 2.

<sup>b</sup> *g* does not form one syllable with the letter preceding it, except in a word where there is a double *g*; *magagna*, e.g. = *ma-ga-gna*.

*S* flat between vowels, like *z* in 'doze,' or *s* in 'easy.'<sup>a</sup>

COMBINATION.	PRONUNCIATION.	EXAMPLES.
<i>ese</i>	<i>ay-zay</i>	<i>inglése</i> , English
<i>iso</i>	<i>ee-zo</i>	<i>viso</i> , visage
<i>osa</i>	<i>o-zah</i>	<i>rosa</i> , rose

*Z* sharp, like *ts* in 'benefits,' before *i* followed by a vowel.

<i>zi</i>	<i>tsee</i>	{ <i>zio</i> , uncle <i>grázia</i> , grace
-----------	-------------	---

*Z* flat, like *ds* in 'Windsor,' generally at the beginning of a word, or after a consonant.

<i>za</i>	<i>dsah</i>	<i>sénza</i> , without
<i>zo</i>	<i>dso</i>	<i>zóna</i> , zone

*ZZ* sometimes like *ts*, and sometimes like *ds*.

<i>zza</i>	<i>tsah</i>	<i>bellézza</i> , beauty
<i>zzo</i>	<i>dso</i>	<i>rózzo</i> , rough

OBSERVATIONS. — 1. In Italian every letter is pronounced. Two or more vowels coming together in a word are articulated separately, even when two or three form but one syllable; as, *ciò*, that; *miei*, my.

2. Double consonants are pronounced with double emphasis. The mute consonants *b*, *p*, *d*, *t*, *v* with two distinct and somewhat separate sounds; as, *babbo*, papa; *addio*, good-bye; *zappa*, hoe; *atto*, act; *avventura*, adventure. The liquids *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and the *f* and *s*, are pronounced with a continued sound; as, *fallo*, fault; *mamma*, mamma; *canna*, reed; *serra*, hot-house; *offesa*, offence; *osso*, bone.<sup>b</sup>

#### ACCENTS.

There are two accents in Italian, the *grave* (') and the *acute* (^). The *grave accent* is placed over the final vowel of such words as have the accent on the last syllable; as, *sarò*, I shall be; *bella*, beauty; and is also used as a sign of distinction between certain words spelt alike, but differing in signification; as, *dì*, day—*dì*, of; *sì*, yes, so—*sì*, one's self; *è*, is—*e*, and; *là*, there—

<sup>a</sup> In the reflective form of the verb, the *s* of the *si* is always sibilant.

<sup>b</sup> See double *c* and *g*, p. 3, and double *z* above.

*la*, the, her; *lì*, there—*li*, the, them; *dà*, he gives, give thou—*da*, from; *però*, therefore—*pero*, a pear tree; *nè*, neither, nor—*ne*, of it, us; *testè*, just now—*teste*, heads; *costà*, there—*costa*, shore; *tè*, tea—*te*, thee.

The *acute accent* is only placed over the vowel *i* in the terminations *ia*, *io*, when the two vowels are to be pronounced in two distinct syllables; as, *magia*, magic; *desio*, desire.

OBS.—Although every Italian word bears an accent, it is only in cases like the above that it is written. The position of the accent must therefore be learned by practice. The greater number of Italian words have the accent on the penultimate, or last syllable but one; fewer on the antepenultimate, or last syllable but two; and very few on the last but three. Peculiar stress is laid on the accented vowel; as, *párlo*, I speak; *párlano*, they speak.

For the convenience of the student, the accent has been given throughout the conjugations of verbs in this book.

#### THE APOSTROPHE.

In Italian the apostrophe (') is frequently used to mark the elision of a vowel or syllable; thus, *la*, the, or her; *il*, the, or him; *egli*, he; *poco*, little; are often written *l'*, *'l*, *e'*, *po'*. But some words are shortened without requiring the apostrophe; as, *bel*, for *bello*, fine.

N.B.—In the course of the work, rules will be given for determining when this elision should take place, and the apostrophe be used.

#### USE OF CAPITALS.

Capital letters are not so frequently employed in Italian as in English. Their use is restricted to the following cases:—

1. The first word of a sentence.
2. The first word of every line in poetry.
3. All proper names, and names of rank and dignity, but not the adjectives derived from proper names; as, *Alessandria è così chiamata da Alessandro, Pontefice romano*, Alexander is so named from Alexander, a Roman Pontiff.

## TABLES OF INFLECTIONS, &amp;c., FOR REFERENCE.

## INFLECTIONS OF NOUNS.

TERMINATIONS.		EXAMPLES.	
Singular.	Plural.	Sing.	Plural.
<i>a</i> {fem.	<i>e</i>	f. <i>sorella</i> , sister,	<i>sorelle</i> .
{masc.	<i>i</i>	m. <i>poeta</i> , poet,	<i>poeti</i> .
<i>o</i> masc. or fem.	<i>i</i>	{ m. <i>libro</i> , book,	<i>libri</i> .
<i>e</i> "	<i>i</i>	{ f. <i>mano</i> , hand,	<i>mani</i> .
		{ m. <i>padre</i> , father,	<i>padri</i> .
		{ f. <i>madre</i> , mother,	<i>madri</i> .
<i>i</i> "	Invariable.	m. <i>lunedì</i> , Monday,	<i>lunedì</i> .
" "		f. <i>crisi</i> , crisis,	<i>crisi</i> .
" "		m. <i>bambù</i> , bamboo,	<i>bambù</i> .
" "		f. <i>virtù</i> , virtue,	<i>virtù</i> .
mono-syllables } "		m. <i>treppì</i> , tripod,	<i>treppì</i> .
accented } "		f. <i>effigie</i> , image,	<i>effigie</i> .
vowels } "		m. <i>Re</i> , king,	<i>Re</i> .
		f. <i>gru</i> , crane,	<i>gru</i> .
		m. <i>falò</i> , bonfire,	<i>falò</i> .
		f. <i>carità</i> , charity,	<i>carità</i> .

## EUPHONIC MODIFICATIONS OF PLURAL NOUNS.

TERMINATIONS.		EXAMPLES.	
Singular.	Plural.	Sing.	Plural.
<i>ca</i> {fem.	<i>che</i>	f. <i>monaca</i> , nun,	<i>monache</i> .
{masc.	<i>chi</i>	m. <i>monarca</i> , monarch,	<i>monarchi</i> .
<i>ga</i> {fem.	<i>gha</i>	f. <i>bottega</i> , shop,	<i>botteghe</i> .
{masc.	<i>ghi</i>	m. <i>collega</i> , colleague,	<i>colleghi</i> .
<i>co</i> masc.	<i>chi</i> and <i>ci</i>	{ m. <i>tedesco</i> , German,	<i>tedeschi</i> . <sup>a</sup>
		{ m. <i>amico</i> , friend,	<i>amici</i> .
<i>go</i> masc.	<i>ghi</i> and <i>gi</i>	{ m. <i>asparago</i> , asparagus,	<i>asparagi</i> .
		{ m. <i>lago</i> , lake,	<i>laghi</i> .
<i>cia</i> {fem. } with <i>i</i>	<i>ce</i>	f. <i>faccia</i> , face,	<i>facce</i> .
<i>gia</i> {fem. } not ac-	<i>ge</i>	f. <i>frangia</i> , fringe,	<i>frange</i> .
<i>io</i> masc. } cented.	<i>i</i>	m. <i>specchio</i> , mirror,	<i>specchi</i> .

## IRREGULAR PLURALS.

m. <i>dio</i> , god,	<i>dei</i> .	f. <i>moglie</i> , wife,	<i>mogli</i> .
m. <i>uomo</i> , man,	<i>uomini</i> .	m. <i>bue</i> , ox,	<i>buoi</i> .

Also several nouns ending with the masculine termination *o*, of which some form their plural in *a*, and become feminine; as, *paio*, pair, *paia*; and others which have two terminations in the plural, one in *i* regular masculine, the other irregular in *a* feminine; as, *dito*, finger, *diti* and *dita*.

<sup>a</sup> See No. 3, page 6.

## INFLECTIONS OF ARTICLES.

	DEFINITE ARTICLE.					INDEFINITE.	
	Masculine. Sing. Plur.		Feminine. Sing. Plur.			Masc.	Fem.
Before a consonant	<i>il</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>le</i>		<i>un</i>	<i>una</i>
Before <i>s</i> followed by a consonant }	<i>lo</i>	<i>gli</i>	-	-	the	<i>uno</i>	-
Before a vowel	<i>l'</i>	<i>gli</i>	<i>l'</i>	<i>le</i>		<i>un</i>	<i>un'</i>

## PREPOSITIONS IN COMBINATION WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	with <i>il</i> .	with <i>i</i> .	with <i>lo</i> .	with <i>gli</i> .	with <i>la</i> .	with <i>le</i> .	with <i>l'</i> .
<i>di</i> = of	<i>del</i>	<i>dei</i> or <i>de'</i>	<i>dello</i>	<i>degli</i>	<i>della</i>	<i>delle</i>	<i>dell'</i>
<i>a</i> = to	<i>al</i>	<i>ai</i> or <i>a'</i>	<i>allo</i>	<i>agli</i>	<i>alla</i>	<i>alle</i>	<i>all'</i>
<i>da</i> = from	<i>dai</i>	<i>dai</i> or <i>da'</i>	<i>dallo</i>	<i>dagli</i>	<i>dalla</i>	<i>dalle</i>	<i>dall'</i>
<i>in</i> = in	<i>nel</i>	<i>nei</i> or <i>ne'</i>	<i>nello</i>	<i>negli</i>	<i>nella</i>	<i>nelle</i>	<i>nell'</i>
<i>con</i> = with	<i>col</i>	<i>coi</i> or <i>co'</i>	<i>collo</i>	<i>cogli</i>	<i>colla</i>	<i>colle</i>	<i>coll'</i>
<i>su</i> = on	<i>sul</i>	<i>sui</i> or <i>su'</i>	<i>sullo</i>	<i>sugli</i>	<i>sulla</i>	<i>sulle</i>	<i>sull'</i>
<i>per</i> = for	<i>pel</i>	<i>pei</i> or <i>pe'</i>	<i>per lo</i>	<i>per gli</i>	<i>per la</i>	<i>per le</i>	<i>per l'</i>
<i>tra</i> = among	<i>tra l'</i>	<i>tra i</i> or <i>tra'</i>	<i>tra lo</i>	<i>tra gli</i>	<i>tra la</i>	<i>tra le</i>	<i>tra l'</i>

## INFLECTIONS OF ADJECTIVES.

	Sing.	Plur.	EXAMPLES.		
Masculine	<i>o</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>antico</i> ,	ancient,	<i>antichi</i> . <sup>a</sup>
Feminine	<i>a</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>buona</i> ,	good,	<i>buone</i> .
Both genders	<i>e</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>felice</i> ,	happy,	<i>felici</i> .
	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>pari</i> ,	equal,	<i>pari</i> .

## INFLECTIONS OF PRONOUNS.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

	Singular.	Plural.
	<i>io</i> , I; <i>me</i> , <i>mi</i> , me.	<i>noi</i> , we; <i>ci</i> , <i>ne</i> , us.
	<i>tu</i> , thou; <i>te</i> , <i>ti</i> , thee.	<i>voi</i> , you; <i>vi</i> , you.
masc.	<i>egli</i> or <i>esso</i> , he it; <i>lui</i> , <i>ne</i> , <i>gli</i> , <i>lo</i> , <i>il</i> , him, it.	<i>egli</i> or <i>essi</i> , they; <i>loro</i> , <i>ne</i> , <i>li</i> , <i>gli</i> , them.
fem.	<i>ella</i> or <i>essa</i> , she, it; <i>lei</i> , <i>ne</i> , <i>le</i> , <i>la</i> , her, it.	<i>elleno</i> or <i>esse</i> , they; <i>loro</i> , <i>ne</i> , <i>le</i> , them.
reflective:	<i>se</i> , <i>si</i> , himself, herself, itself, oneself.	<i>se</i> , <i>si</i> , themselves.

<sup>a</sup> The plurals of adjectives are subject to the same euphonic modifications as the plurals of nouns, see p. 7.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	
<i>mio</i>	<i>mia</i>	<i>miei</i>	<i>mie</i>	my, mine.
<i>tuo</i>	<i>tua</i>	<i>tui</i>	<i>tue</i>	thy, thine.
<i>suo</i>	<i>sua</i>	<i>sui</i>	<i>sue</i>	his, her, hers, its.
<i>nostro</i>	<i>nostra</i>	<i>nostri</i>	<i>nostre</i>	our, ours.
<i>vostro</i>	<i>vostra</i>	<i>ostri</i>	<i>ostre</i>	your, yours.
<i>loro</i>	<i>loro</i>	<i>loro</i>	<i>loro</i>	their, theirs.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.		(For Things.)	Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.	
<i>questo</i>	<i>questa</i>	this.	<i>questi</i>	<i>queste</i>	these.
<i>cotesto</i>	<i>cotesta</i>		<i>cotesti</i>	<i>coteste</i>	
<i>quello, quell',</i> or <i>quel</i>	<i>quella, or</i> <i>quell'</i>	} that.	<i>quelli, quegli,</i> or <i>quei</i>	<i>quelle, or</i> <i>quell'</i>	} those.
<i>ciò</i> (invariable), this, that.					

## (For Persons.)

Singular.			Plural.	
Masc.	Fem.		Masc. & Fem.	
<i>questi</i>		} this man.	<i>costoro</i>	{ these men.
<i>costui</i>				
<i>cotesti</i>		} that man.	<i>cotestoro</i>	{ those men.
<i>cotestui</i>				
<i>quegli</i>		} that man.	<i>coloro</i>	{ those men.
<i>colui</i>				
	<i>costei</i>	} this woman.		
	<i>cotestei</i>	} that woman.		
	<i>colei</i>	} that woman.		

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

For Persons or Things.			
Invariable.	Singular.	Plural.	
<i>che, cui,</i>	m. <i>il quale,</i> f. <i>la quale,</i>	<i>i quali,</i> <i>le quali,</i>	} who, that, which.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Invariable.		For Persons or Things.	
For Persons.	For Things.	Sing.	Plural.
<i>chi?</i> who?	<i>che?</i> what?	<i>quale?</i>	<i>quali?</i> which?





## CHAPTER II.

## VERBS.

PREVIOUSLY to entering upon the conjugation of the Verb, it is necessary to mention that the personal pronouns, which are the subjects of the verb, are—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1st pers.	<i>io</i> , I.	1st pers.	<i>noi</i> , we.
2nd „	<i>tu</i> , thou.	2nd „	<i>voi</i> , you.
3rd „	<i>egli</i> } (m.), he, it.	3rd „	<i>eglino</i> } (m.), they.
	<i>esso</i> }		<i>essi</i> }
	<i>ella</i> } (f.), she, it. <sup>a</sup>		<i>elleno</i> } (f.), they.
	<i>essa</i> }		<i>esse</i> <sup>a</sup> }

These pronouns are only expressed in Italian—(i.) when they are necessary for the perspicuity of the sentence; (ii.) when a particular stress is laid on the pronouns; and (iii.) when two nominative pronouns are placed in contrast.

In all other cases, they are generally understood, the termination of the verb being sufficient to indicate the person and number of the subject of the sentence. For this reason, the verbs are to be conjugated without them.

## AUXILIARY VERBS.

The Auxiliaries are — *essere*, to be, and *avere*, to have.<sup>b</sup>

<sup>a</sup> *esso, essa, essi, esse*, may be used for beings both animate and inanimate; but *egli, ella*, &c. only for animate beings.

<sup>b</sup> The compound tenses of all verbs (whether regular or irregular) must be conjugated with the help either of *essere*, to be, or *avere*, to have, which are therefore called *auxiliaries*, and it is for this reason they precede the regular conjugations.

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *ESSERE*.<sup>a</sup>Infinitive—*essere*, to be.

## Indicative Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>sòno,</i>	I am.	<i>siàmo,</i>	we are.
<i>sei,</i>	thou art.	<i>siète,</i>	you are.
<i>è,</i>	he, she, or it is.	<i>sòno,</i>	they are.

## IMPERFECT.

<i>era</i> or <i>éro</i> , <sup>b</sup>	I was, or used to be.	<i>eravamo,</i>	we were.
<i>eri,</i>	thou wast.	<i>eravate,</i>	you were.
<i>era,</i>	he was.	<i>erano,</i>	they were.

## PERFECT or PAST.

<i>fui,</i>	I was.	<i>fuiamo,</i>	we were.
<i>fosti,</i>	thou wast.	<i>foste,</i>	you were.
<i>fu,</i>	he was.	<i>furono,</i>	they were.

## FUTURE.

<i>sarò,</i>	I shall be.	<i>sarémo,</i>	we shall be.
<i>sarai,</i>	thou wilt be.	<i>sarète,</i>	you will be.
<i>sarà,</i>	he will be.	<i>saranno,</i>	they will be.

## Conditional Mood.

<i>sarei,</i>	I should be. <sup>c</sup>	<i>saremmo,</i>	we should be.
<i>saresti,</i>	thou wouldst be.	<i>sarète,</i>	you would be.
<i>sarebbe,</i>	he would be.	<i>sarebbero,</i>	they would be.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>siàmo,</i>	let us be.
<i>sii</i> or <i>sia,</i> be (thou).	<i>siète,</i>	be (you).
<i>sia,</i> let him be	<i>siano,</i>	let them be.

<sup>a</sup> *Essere* being used to form its own compound tenses, is the first auxiliary to be learnt. The English student will thus practically appreciate the difference between the Italian *essere* and the verb *to be*. *Avere* is never used as an auxiliary to *essere*.

<sup>b</sup> The termination *o* is used in common conversation, but in composition *a* should be employed.

<sup>c</sup> Also, 'I could or might be,' &c.

## Subjunctive Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>ch' io sia,</i> <sup>a</sup>	that I may be. <sup>b</sup>	<i>che siamo,</i>	that we may be.
<i>che tu sia</i>	that thou mayest	<i>che siate,</i>	that you may be.
or <i>sii,</i>	[be.	<i>che siano,</i>	that they may be.
<i>ch' egli sia,</i>	that he may be.		

## IMPERFECT.

<i>s' io fossi,</i>	if I might be. <sup>d</sup>	<i>se fossimo,</i>	if we might be.
<i>se tu fossi,</i>	if thou mightest be.	<i>se foste,</i>	if you might be.
<i>se fosse,</i>	if he might be.	<i>se fossero,</i>	if they might be.

Present Participle—*essendo*, being.

Past Participle—*stato*, been.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*essere stato*,<sup>e</sup> to have been.

## Indicative Present.

<i>sono stato</i> , or <i>stata</i> , I have	} <i>being</i>	<i>siamo stati</i> , or <i>state</i> , <sup>f</sup> we have	} <i>being</i>
<i>sei stato</i> „ thou hast		<i>siete stati</i> „ you have	
<i>è stato</i> „ he or she has		<i>sono stati</i> „ they have	

<sup>a</sup> As, from a similarity in the verb-forms, some ambiguity might arise, it is often better to employ the personal pronouns in the three persons singular of the present tense of the subjunctive, and in the first and second persons singular of the imperfect of the same mood.

<sup>b</sup> Also, 'if I be,' &c.

<sup>c</sup> *che*, that, and *se*, if, drop the final *e* before *e* and *i*, the elision being marked by an apostrophe.

<sup>d</sup> Also, 'if I were,' or 'were I,' &c.

<sup>e</sup> The reader will observe that the compound tenses of the auxiliary *essere* are not formed, as in English, by the help of *avere*, to have, but of *essere* itself; so that, instead of saying *I have been*, *I had been*, &c., the Italians say, *sono stato*, *era stato*, &c.; literally, *I am been*, *I was been*, &c.

<sup>f</sup> The past participle of any verb conjugated with the auxiliary *essere* (see Note *b*, p. 11) agrees always, like an adjective, in gender and number with the subject of the verb, so that for the first person masculine singular of the compound Ind. Pres. of *essere* we must say *sono stato*; feminine, *sono stata*; for the first person masculine plural, *siamo stati*; feminine, *siamo state*, and so for the remaining persons, singular and plural. The same of course takes place in the other compound tenses.

Indicative Imperfect .....	<i>era stato</i> , I had been.
„ Perfect or Past...	<i>fui stato</i> , I had been.
„ Future .....	<i>sarò stato</i> , I shall have been.
Conditional .....	<i>sarei stato</i> , I should have been.
Subjunctive Present .....	<i>ch' io sia stato</i> , that I may have been.
„ Imperfect .....	<i>s' io fossi stato</i> , if I might have been.
Participle— <i>essendo stato</i> , having been.	

### CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE:—

#### Interrogatively.

<i>sono</i> ? <sup>a</sup>	am I ?	<i>siamo</i> ?	are we ?
<i>sei</i> ?	art thou ?	<i>siete</i> ?	are you ?
<i>è</i> ?	is he ?	<i>sono</i> ?	are they ?

#### Negatively.

<i>non sono</i> , <sup>b</sup>	I am not.	<i>non siamo</i> ,	we are not.
<i>non sei</i> ,	thou art not.	<i>non siete</i> ,	you are not.
<i>non è</i> ,	he is not.	<i>non sono</i> ,	they are not.

#### Interrogatively and Negatively.

<i>non sono</i> ?	am I not ?	<i>non siamo</i> ?	are we not ?
<i>non sei</i> ?	art thou not ?	<i>non siete</i> ?	are you not ?
<i>non è</i> ?	is he not ?	<i>non sono</i> ?	are they not ?

N.B.—All the other moods and tenses are to be conjugated in the same way, except the *imperative*<sup>c</sup> and *subjunctive*, which take the negative, but do not admit the interrogative forms.

<sup>a</sup> A verb is conjugated *interrogatively*, both in English and Italian, by placing its subject after it; but as the Italians generally omit the pronoun (p. 11) when speaking, the inflection of the voice ought to indicate whether it be an affirmation or a question which is expressed.

<sup>b</sup> When a verb is conjugated *negatively*, the negative particle is in English placed after the verb, but in Italian it always precedes the verb.

<sup>c</sup> After a negative particle, the infinitive mood is substituted for the second person singular of the imperative; as, *non essere*, be not (thou).

## PHRASES.

<i>essere vispo,</i>	to be lively.	<i>essere sano,</i>	to be healthy.
„ <i>diligente,</i>	„ diligent.	„ <i>ghiotto,</i>	„ greedy.
„ <i>mesto,</i>	„ sad.	„ <i>sobrio,</i>	„ sober.
„ <i>allegro,</i>	„ merry.	„ <i>lieto,</i>	„ glad.
„ <i>laborioso,</i>	„ industrious.	„ <i>solo,</i>	„ alone.
„ <i>sgarbatto,</i>	„ rude.	„ <i>meschino,</i>	„ miserable.
„ <i>sdegnato,</i>	„ angry.		

## VOCABULARY.

<i>Roma,</i> Rome.	<i>tutto,</i> all.	<i>vero,</i> true.
<i>ora,</i> now.	<i>tempo,</i> time.	<i>ieri,</i> yesterday.
<i>capitale</i> (f.), capital.	<i>in,</i> in.	<i>oggi,</i> to-day.
<i>Italia,</i> Italy.	<i>che,</i> that.	<i>domani,</i> to-morrow.
<i>quando,</i> when.	<i>campagna,</i> country.	<i>domenica,</i> Sunday.
<i>ragazzo,</i> boy.	<i>perchè,</i> because.	<i>lunedì,</i> Monday.
<i>a,</i> at, or to.	<i>madre,</i> mother.	<i>martedì,</i> Tuesday.
<i>scuola,</i> school.	<i>appena che,</i> as soon as.	<i>mercoledì,</i> Wednesday.
<i>ogni,</i> every.	<i>qui,</i> here.	<i>giovedì,</i> Thursday.
<i>giorno,</i> day.	<i>ma,</i> but.	<i>venerdì,</i> Friday.
<i>mattina,</i> morning.	<i>e,</i> and.	<i>sabbato,</i> Saturday.
<i>sera,</i> evening.		

## READING EXERCISE.

[N.B.—At the end of the book will be found a Vocabulary of all the words contained in the Exercises.]

1. Roma è ora la capitale d' Italia. 2. Quando egli<sup>c</sup> era ragazzo, era<sup>d</sup> vispo. 3. A scuola noi eravamo<sup>d</sup> diligent<sup>e</sup> ogni giorno. 4. Ieri fui<sup>e</sup> mesto dalla mattina alla sera. 5. Tutto il tempo che<sup>e</sup> noi fummo in campagna fummo<sup>f</sup> allegri<sup>e</sup>. 6. Oggi sono stato<sup>h</sup> laborioso.

<sup>a</sup> See Table of Articles, p. 8.

<sup>b</sup> The preposition *di*, of, drops the *i* before words beginning with a vowel.

<sup>c</sup> See p. 11.

<sup>d</sup> The *Imperfect Indicative* points to a state or action present in relation to another which is past. It is also used in speaking of a continuous state or action, without fixing the time of its duration, as in the case of an habitual or repeated action. (Compare Nos. 2 and 3 above.)

<sup>e</sup> See Adj., p. 8.

<sup>f</sup> The *Perfect* is an historic tense, i.e. the tense in which events or experiences are related. It points to a fact which has happened at a certain definite or limited time, and completely over at the time it is related. (Compare Nos. 4 and 5 above.)

<sup>g</sup> See Relative Pronouns, p. 9.

<sup>h</sup> The *Compound Present* denotes a fact which has happened at a time past not specified, or in a time specified but not completely past.

7. Perchè egli era stato<sup>a</sup> sgarbato, sua<sup>b</sup> madre fu sdegnata. 8. Appena ch' io fui stato<sup>c</sup> in campagna, fui sano. 9. Sarò quì domani. 10. Non essere<sup>d</sup> ghiotto, ma sii sobrio e sarai sano. 11. Non è vero ch' io sia<sup>e</sup> lieto. 12. S' io fossi solo, sarei meschino.

## VOCABULARY.

Italian, <i>italiano</i> .	France, <i>Francia</i> .	one, <i>uno</i> .
English, <i>inglese</i> .	Rome, <i>Roma</i> .	two, <i>due</i> .
German, <i>tedesco</i> .	Germany, <i>Germania</i> .	three, <i>tre</i> .
French, <i>francese</i> .	hour, <i>ora</i> .	four, <i>quattro</i> .
a long time, <i>un pezzo</i> .	or, <i>o</i> .	five, <i>cinque</i> .
that, <i>che</i> .	how much { <i>quanto</i> .	six, <i>sei</i> .
in or into, <i>in</i> .	{ <i>quanta</i> .	seven, <i>sette</i> .
Italy, <i>Italia</i> .	how many { <i>quanti</i> .	eight, <i>otto</i> .
year, <i>anno</i> .	{ <i>quante</i> .	nine, <i>nove</i> .
here, <i>qui</i> .		ten, <i>dieci</i> .
where, <i>dove</i> .		eleven, <i>undici</i> .
England, <i>Inghilterra</i> .		twelve, <i>dodici</i> .

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. Are<sup>s</sup> you<sup>h</sup> (a)<sup>i</sup> native of Italy? 2. No; I am not  
[Italian] No

<sup>a</sup> The *Compound Imperfect* denotes that a fact was already past when another fact, also past, was taking place.

<sup>b</sup> See Poss. Pron., p. 9.

<sup>c</sup> The *Compound Perfect* denotes a fact which took place prior to another fact also past. It is used chiefly after such expressions as *appena che*, or *tosto che*, or *subito che*, as soon as; *dopo che*, or *posciachè*, after that.

<sup>d</sup> Note c, p. 14.

<sup>e</sup> When the verb of a dependent sentence does not express a certainty, it must be in the subjunctive mood, with the conjunction *che*, after all verbs used negatively.

<sup>f</sup> *Se*, if, when used in a doubtful sense, and pointing to a supposed fact which will not take place, requires the Imperfect of the subjunctive mood after it, the dependent verb being in the Conditional.

<sup>g</sup> There are three modes of address in Italian:—the 2nd person singular, the 3rd person singular, and the 2nd person plural. The latter, which agrees with the English mode, will be used for the present. When the student has learnt all the personal and possessive pronouns, and the rules which will be found in this book for addressing persons in these different modes, he may practise them by changing the first one through all the translation exercises.

<sup>h</sup> See p. 11.

<sup>i</sup> See explanation of the marks and abbreviations employed in this work, facing p. 1.

- (an) Italian ; I am (a) native of England. 3. Of what  
[English] *Di che*  
country is your uncle ? 4. He is (a) German, and  
*paese vostro zio e*  
my grandfather is (a) Frenchman. 5. How long  
*mio nonno* [French] [Is (it) a long  
have you been in Italy ? 6. I have been here two years.  
time that you are<sup>a</sup>] [They are two years<sup>b</sup> that  
7. Where were<sup>c</sup> you two years<sup>b</sup> ago ?  
I am here.] [they are]  
8. I was<sup>c</sup> in England. 9. Were you in that  
[Have<sup>d</sup> you been<sup>e</sup>] *quel*<sup>f</sup>  
country a long time ? 10. Not long, as I was<sup>e</sup>  
*lungo tempo siccome*  
five years<sup>b</sup> in France with my brother. 11. Has he been<sup>a</sup>  
*con mio fratello*  
in Italy ? 12. Yes ; he and our<sup>1</sup> grandmother have<sup>2</sup> been<sup>3</sup>  
*sì egli la nonna*  
here<sup>1</sup> three times. 13. My uncle will be in Rome during  
*ci tre volte Mio zio durante*  
the seasons of — spring and — summer. 14. I  
*le stagioni della primavera della state*  
shall be in Germany next<sup>4</sup> — autumn<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> — winter<sup>3</sup>.  
*prossimi l' autunno e l' inverno*  
Is (it) true that — your parents are in (the) country ?  
*vero che i vostri genitori campagna*

<sup>a</sup> In speaking of a state or action which has not yet ceased, the present tense, and not the past, is used in Italian.

<sup>b</sup> See Pl. of Nouns, p. 7.

<sup>c</sup> Note *d*, p. 15.

<sup>d</sup> Notes *e* and *f*, p. 13.

<sup>e</sup> The verb which has for its subject the pronoun *you*, expressed or understood, addressing one person only, is to be in the second person plural, but the past participle preceded by *essere* must be in the singular, and agree with the person represented by the same pronoun. See Note *f*, p. 13.

<sup>f</sup> See Demons. Pron., p. 9.

<sup>1</sup> Note *f*, p. 15.

<sup>2</sup> Note *h*, p. 15, and Note *f*, p. 13.

<sup>3</sup> The definite article is substituted for the possessive pronoun, when the noun which follows refers to the subject of the sentence,



15. It is not true that they are<sup>a</sup> in (the) country. They were<sup>2b</sup> there<sup>1</sup> — last<sup>2</sup> month<sup>1</sup>, and will be<sup>2</sup> there<sup>1</sup> —  
*vi il passato mese vi la*  
 next<sup>2</sup> week<sup>1</sup>, but now they are in town. 16. I  
*prossima settimana, adesso città*  
 should be happy, if<sup>c</sup> I were now in Naples with my aunt.  
*felice Napoli con mia zia*  
 17. Naples is at-present the largest city in Italy.  
*[now] la più grande città d'*  
 18. What o'clock is (it)? 19. It is — ten (o'clock).  
*[what<sup>d</sup> hour] sono<sup>e</sup> le*  
 20. I shall be late home.  
*in ritardo a casa*

QUESTIONS.<sup>f</sup>

[N.B.—The numbers which follow some of the questions refer to sentences in the Reading and Translation Exercises *immediately preceding*.—Numbers referring to the *Reading Exercise* are distinguished by an asterisk attached to the number.]

Di che paese siete? 3.—È vostro nonno francese o tedesco? 4.—Dove eravate otto anni sono? 7.—Quante volte siete stato (*or* stata) in Francia? 12.—Vi siete stato (*or* stata) un pezzo? 5.—Quando sarete a casa?—Quali sono le stagioni dell'anno? 13 & 14.—Qual<sup>s</sup> è la più grande città d' Italia? 17.—Che ora è? 19.—Quanti giorni vi sono in una settimana?—Quanti mesi vi sono in un anno?—Qual<sup>s</sup> è la capitale d' Italia? 1\*.—Quando sarete qui? 9\*.—Che giorno è oggi?—Che giorno era ieri?—Che giorno sarà domani?

<sup>a</sup> Note *c*, p. 16.

<sup>b</sup> Note *d*, p. 15.

<sup>c</sup> Note *f*, p. 16.

<sup>d</sup> See Inter. Pron., p. 9.

<sup>e</sup> Observe that the verb must be in the plural number with a plural subject, whether that subject precede the verb or follow it. In the above instance, the word *ore*, hours, is understood with *sono*.

<sup>f</sup> The above questions must be answered by the student in Italian, taking care to answer with a full sentence.

<sup>g</sup> *Quale* is not used with an apostrophe, but it may be contracted into *qual* before vowels and consonants, except *s* followed by a consonant.

# CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *VERE*.

Infinitive—*avére*, to have.

## Indicative Mood.

### PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>ho,</i> <sup>a</sup>	I have.	<i>abbiamo,</i>	we have.
<i>hai,</i>	thou hast.	<i>avete,</i>	you have.
<i>ha,</i>	he, she, or it has.	<i>hanno,</i>	they have.

### IMPERFECT.

<i>aveva,</i> <sup>b</sup>	I had.	<i>avevamo,</i>	we had.
<i>avevi,</i>	thou hadst.	<i>avevate,</i>	you had.
<i>aveva,</i>	he had.	<i>avevano,</i>	they had.

### PERFECT OR PAST.

<i>ebbi,</i>	I had.	<i>avemmo,</i>	we had.
<i>avesti,</i>	thou hadst.	<i>aveste,</i>	you had.
<i>ebbe,</i>	he had.	<i>ebbero,</i>	they had.

### FUTURE.

<i>avrò,</i>	I shall have.	<i>avremo,</i>	we shall have.
<i>avrà,</i>	thou wilt have.	<i>avrete,</i>	you will have.
<i>avrà,</i>	he will have.	<i>avranno,</i>	they will have.

## Conditional Mood.

<i>avrei,</i>	I should have. <sup>c</sup>	<i>avremmo,</i>	we should have.
<i>avresti,</i>	thou wouldst have.	<i>avreste,</i>	you would have.
<i>avrebbe,</i>	he would have.	<i>avrebbero,</i>	they would have.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>abbiamo,</i>	let us have.
<i>abbi,</i> have (thou).	<i>abbiate,</i>	have (you).
<i>abbia,</i> let him have.	<i>abbiano,</i>	let them have.

## Subjunctive Mood.

### PRESENT TENSE.

<i>ch' io abbia,</i> <sup>d</sup>	that I may have.	<i>che abbiamo,</i>	that we may have.
<i>che tu abbi,</i>	that thou mayest	<i>che abbiate,</i>	that you may have.
or <i>abbia,</i>	have.	<i>che abbiano,</i>	that they may
<i>ch' egli abbia,</i>	that he may have.		[have.

<sup>a</sup> See, concerning *h*, p. 2.

<sup>b</sup> Or *avevo*. See Note *b*, p. 12.

<sup>c</sup> Also, 'I would, could, or might have,' 'thou couldst have,' &c.

<sup>d</sup> Note *a*, p. 13.

## IMPERFECT.

<i>s' io avéssi,</i>	if I might have. <sup>a</sup>	<i>se avéssimo,</i>	if we might have.
<i>se tu avéssi,</i>	if thou mightest	<i>se avéste,</i>	if you might have.
	[have.	<i>se avéssero,</i>	if they might have.
<i>se avésse,</i>	if he might have.		

Present Participle { *avéndo* } having.<sup>b</sup>  
                               { *avénte* }

Past Participle—*avúto*, had.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere avuto*, to have had.

## Indicative Present.

<i>ho avuto</i> , I have had.	<i>abbiamo avuto</i> , <sup>c</sup> we have had.
<i>hai avuto</i> , thou hast had.	<i>avete avuto</i> , you have had.
<i>ha avuto</i> , he has had.	<i>hanno avuto</i> , they have had.

Indicative Imperfect, *aveva avuto*, I had had.

„ Perfect, *ebbi avuto*, I had had.

„ Future, *avrò avuto*, I shall have had.

Conditional ..... *avrei avuto*, I should have had.

Subjunctive Present, *ch' io abbia avuto*, that I may have had

„ Imperfect, *s' io avessi avuto*, if I might have had.

Participle—*avendo avuto*, having had.

All verbs are conjugated *interrogatively* and *negatively* in the same way.<sup>d</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Also, If I should have, had I, &c.

<sup>b</sup> Note *e*, p. 26.

<sup>c</sup> The *Past Participle* of any verb conjugated with the auxiliary *avere* (see Note *b*, p. 11) does not agree with the subject of the verb, but it agrees in certain cases with the object:—(i.) It remains invariable in its masculine termination *o* when it is a neuter verb, or is followed by an Infinitive. (ii.) It agrees in gender and number with the object when preceded by it, or when used absolutely, *i.e.*, without the Auxiliary. (iii.) It may either remain invariable, or agree with the object (by changing its final vowel *o* into *a*, *i*, or *e*), when the object follows the verb; as,

*Ho avuto (or avuta) una serva in casa.*

I have had a maid-servant in the house.

*Ho avuto (or avute) delle serve in casa.*

I have had some maid-servants in the house.

<sup>d</sup> Notes *a*, *b*, and *c*, p. 14.

## CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE :—

## Interrogatively.

<i>ho ?</i>	have I ?	<i>abbiamo ?</i>	have we ?
<i>hai ?</i>	hast thou ?	<i>avete ?</i>	have you ?
<i>ha ?</i>	has he ?	<i>hanno ?</i>	have they ?

## Negatively.

<i>non ho,</i>	I have not.	<i>non abbiamo,</i>	we have not.
<i>non hai,</i>	thou hast not.	<i>non avete,</i>	you have not.
<i>non ha,</i>	he has not.	<i>non hanno,</i>	they have not.

## Interrogatively and Negatively.

<i>non ho ?</i>	have I not ?	<i>non abbiamo ?</i>	have we not ?
<i>non hai ?</i>	hast thou not ?	<i>non avete ?</i>	have you not ?
<i>non ha ?</i>	has he not ?	<i>non hanno ?</i>	have they not ?

## PHRASES.

<i>avere cura,</i> to take care.	<i>avere premio,</i> to obtain a reward.
„ <i>lettera,</i> to receive a letter.	„ <i>pena,</i> to incur punishment.
„ <i>nuove,</i> to receive news.	„ <i>animo,</i> to have courage.
„ <i>danaro,</i> to receive money.	„ <i>agio,</i> to be comfortable.
„ <i>visite,</i> to receive visits.	„ <i>compagnia,</i> to have company.
„ <i>grandi pretese,</i> to have great expectations.	

## VOCABULARY.

<i>bambinaia,</i> nursemaid.	<i>tredici,</i> thirteen.	<i>gennaio,</i> January.
<i>bambino,</i> child.	<i>quattordici,</i> fourteen.	<i>febbraio,</i> February.
<i>babbo,</i> papa.	<i>quindici,</i> fifteen.	<i>marzo,</i> March.
<i>zia,</i> aunt.	<i>sedici,</i> sixteen.	<i>aprile,</i> April.
<i>perchè,</i> because.	<i>diciasette,</i> seventeen.	<i>maggio,</i> May.
<i>buono,</i> good.	<i>diciotto,</i> eighteen.	<i>giugno,</i> June.
<i>cattivo,</i> bad.	<i>diciannove,</i> nineteen.	<i>luglio,</i> July.
<i>più,</i> more.	<i>venti,</i> twenty.	<i>agosto,</i> August.
<i>bramoso,</i> desirous.	<i>vent' uno,</i> twenty-one.	<i>settembre,</i> September.
<i>pericolo,</i> danger.	<i>venti due,</i> twenty-two.	<i>ottobre,</i> October.
<i>faccenda,</i> business.	<i>trenta,</i> thirty.	<i>novembre,</i> November.
	<i>trent' uno,</i> thirty-one.	<i>dicembre,</i> December.
	<i>trenta due,</i> thirty-two.	

## READING EXERCISE.

1. La<sup>a</sup> bambinaia ha cura dei<sup>a</sup> bambini<sup>b</sup>. 2. Dove

<sup>a</sup> See Table of Articles, p. 8.

<sup>b</sup> See Pl. of Nouns, p. 7.

eravate<sup>a</sup> due anni sono<sup>b</sup>? 3. Ieri ebbi<sup>c</sup> lettera dal<sup>d</sup> babbo. 4. Io non ho avuto mai<sup>e</sup> buone nuove dalla<sup>d</sup> zia. 5. Egli fu allegro, perchè aveva avuto<sup>f</sup> del<sup>d</sup> danaro. 6. Tosto ch' ebbe avuto<sup>g</sup> grandi pretese, fu meschino. 7. Avrò premio se sarò buono, e pena se sarò cattivo. 8. Abbi animo nei<sup>d</sup> pericoli. 9. Se<sup>h</sup> avessimo più agio, saremmo più lieti. 10. È vero che avete avuto molte visite oggi? 11. Non sarei stato in casa, se non avessi avuto molte visite; sono bramoso d'<sup>i</sup> avere<sup>j</sup> compagnia perchè non ho nessuna<sup>e</sup> faccenda.

## VOCABULARY.

what? <i>che?</i> or <i>che cosa?</i>	Albert, <i>Alberto</i> .	need, <i>bisogno</i> .
name, <i>nome</i> (m.)	street, <i>via</i> .	pen, <i>penna</i> .
John, <i>Giovanni</i> .	cold, <i>freddo</i> .	paper, <i>carta</i> .
looks, <i>cera</i> (sing. only)	warm, <i>caldo</i> .	inkstand, <i>calamaio</i> .
fear, <i>paura</i> .	hunger, <i>fame</i> (f.)	right, <i>ragione</i> (f.)
cold, <i>infreddatura</i> .	thirst, <i>sete</i> (f.)	wrong, <i>torto</i> .
air, <i>signore</i> .	sleep, <i>sonno</i> .	wisdom, <i>giudizio</i> .
toothache, <i>mal di denti</i>	lesson, <i>lezione</i> (f.)	happy, <i>felice</i> .
headache, <i>mal di capo</i> .	shame, <i>vergogna</i> .	

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. What is your name? [What have you name?]
2. My name is John. [I have name John.]
3. How old are you? [How many<sup>k</sup> years<sup>l</sup> have you?]
4. I am ten years old. [I have ten years.]
5. You do not look well; I am afraid you have [You have not good<sup>m</sup> looks; I have fear that you may have]

<sup>a</sup> Note *d*, p. 15.

<sup>b</sup> See No. 7, p. 17.

<sup>c</sup> Note *f*, p. 15.

<sup>d</sup> See Table of Articles, p. 8.

<sup>e</sup> When *mai*, never, *nulla* or *niente*, nothing, *niuno*, *nessuno*, *veruno*, no one, nobody, come after the verb, the negative *non* must be put before the verb. When the above words precede the verb, they are generally used without the negative; as, *Nessuno era in casa*, nobody was at home.

<sup>f</sup> Note *a*, p. 16.

<sup>g</sup> Note *c*, p. 16.

<sup>h</sup> Note *f*, p. 16.

<sup>i</sup> Note *b*, p. 15.

<sup>j</sup> After a preposition, the infinitive mood is always used in Italian.

<sup>k</sup> See Vocab., p. 16.

<sup>l</sup> See Pl. Nouns, p. 7.

<sup>m</sup> *cera* being feminine, the adjective must end in *a*. See Adj., p. 8.

a cold. 6. No, Sir; but I have the toothache and the  
*un'* *No* *il* *il*

headache. 7. Albert, what was the matter with that boy  
 [ — what had — ]<sup>a</sup> *quel*  
*che*

— in the street? Was he cold or warm? 8. He was  
*ch' era per la* [had] [He had<sup>a</sup>

hungry, thirsty, and sleepy. 9. Where will you have  
 hunger, thirst, and sleep.] (fut. of *avere*)

your<sup>b</sup> lesson to-day? 10. I and my brother will have  
*la* *mio*

our Italian lesson in the dining-room; and — my  
*la lezione d'italiano nella stanza da mangiare* *le mie*

sisters will have their music-lesson in the ante-room.  
*sorelle* *la lezione di musica nell' anticamera*

11. How many<sup>c</sup> lessons<sup>d</sup> have you had,<sup>e</sup> John? 12. I  
 have already had twenty lessons. 13. Have you been<sup>e</sup>  
*già*

to school? 14. Yes; but I was late.<sup>f</sup> 15. I should be  
 [I should have

ashamed of being<sup>g</sup> late at — school. 16. Do you want  
 shame] *alla* [Have you need of

pen, ink, and paper? 17. We do not want anything.  
 pen, paper, and inkstand?] [We have not need of nothing<sup>h</sup>,]

18. What day is to-day? 19. It is Monday. 20. No;  
 it is Tuesday. 21. Yes; you are right, and I am wrong.  
 [you<sup>i</sup> have right, and I have wrong]

22. Be wise and you will be happy.  
 [Have wisdom]

<sup>a</sup> Note *d*, p. 15.

<sup>c</sup> See Vocab., p. 16.

<sup>e</sup> Note *h*, p. 15.

<sup>g</sup> Note *j*, p. 22.

<sup>i</sup> See iii., p. 11.

<sup>b</sup> Note *i*, p. 17.

<sup>d</sup> See Pl. of Nouns, p. 7.

<sup>f</sup> See No. 20, p. 18.

<sup>h</sup> Note *e*, p. 22.

QUESTIONS.<sup>a</sup>

Che ha nome vostro fratello? 1.—Quanti anni ha? 3. Che avete? 7.—Che aveva quel ragazzo ch' era per la via? 7.—Dove avrete la lezione d' italiano? 10.—Quante lezioni avete avute<sup>b</sup>?—Ho io ragione o torto? 21.—In che giorno avrete lezione di musica? 10.—Di che avete bisogno? 16.—Da chi avete avuto lettera ieri? 3\*.—Quanti giorni ha febbraio?—Quali mesi hanno trenta giorni?—Chi ha cura dei bambini? 1\*.—Da chi avete avuto nuove? 4\*.—Avevate caldo o freddo ieri? 7.

## REGULAR VERBS.

All Italian verbs end in the Infinitive in one or other of the terminations, *are*, *ere*, *ire*, and are divided into three conjugations. Verbs ending in *are*, as *parlare*, to speak, belong to the 1st conjugation; those ending in *ere*, as *credere*, to believe, to the 2nd; and those ending in *ire*, as *sentire*, to feel, to the 3rd.

The verb *parl-are*,<sup>c</sup> to speak, will serve as a model for the 1st conjugation.

<sup>a</sup> Note *f*, p. 18.

<sup>b</sup> Note *c*, p. 20.

<sup>c</sup> In every Italian verb a distinction must be made between the *root* and the *termination*. That part of the verb which is before the *termination* (*are*, *ere*, or *ire*) of the Infinitive, is called the *root*, and in regular verbs it remains unchanged throughout the conjugation. The *termination* changes for every *mood*, *tense*, *number*, and *person*.

Infinitive—*parlâre*, to speak.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

*parl-o*, I speak.<sup>a</sup>  
*parl-i*, thou speakest.  
*parl-a*, he speaks.

*Plural.*

*parl-iâmo*,<sup>b</sup> we speak.  
*parl-âte*,<sup>c</sup> you speak.  
*parl-ano*,<sup>d</sup> they speak.

IMPERFECT.

*parl-âva*,<sup>e</sup> I was speaking.<sup>f</sup>  
*parl-âvi*, thou wast speaking.  
*parl-âva*, he was speaking.

*parl-avâmo*, we were speaking.  
*parl-avâte*, you were speaking.  
*parl-avano*, they were speaking.

PERFECT or PAST.

*parl-di*, I spoke.  
*parl-âsti*, thou spokest.  
*parl-ò*, he spoke.

*parl-âmmo*, we spoke.  
*parl-âte*, you spoke.  
*parl-ârôno*, they spoke.

FUTURE.

*parl-erò*, I shall speak.  
*parl-erâi*, thou wilt speak.  
*parl-erà*, he will speak.

*parl-erêmo*, we shall speak.  
*parl-erête*, you will speak.  
*parl-erânno*, they will speak.

Conditional Mood.

*parl-erêi*, I should speak.  
*parl-erêsti*, thou wouldst speak.  
*parl-erêbbe*, he would speak.

*parl-erêmmo*, we should speak.  
*parl-erêste*, you would speak.  
*parl-erêbbero*, they would speak.

<sup>a</sup> Also, 'I do speak,' or 'am speaking,' &c. Simple tenses are always formed in Italian by inflections, therefore the English *to do*, *to be*, *will*, *shall*, *may*, &c., are never to be translated in Italian when used to form simple tenses.

<sup>b</sup> The 1st person plural of the Present Indicative of all verbs ends in *iamo*, and is used also for the first person plural of the Imperative and of the Present Subjunctive. (See *essere* and *avere*.)

<sup>c</sup> The 2nd person plural of the Present Indicative of all verbs, except *essere*, is formed by changing the Infinitive terminations *are*, *ere*, *ire* respectively into *âte*, *ete*, *ite*.

<sup>d</sup> The 3rd person plural of the Present Indicative of all verbs of the 1st conjugation is formed by adding *no* to the 3rd singular of the same tense. The *n* must be doubled when the singular is a monosyllable, or has the final vowel *a* accented.

<sup>e</sup> The termination *vo*, instead of *ra*, may be used in conversational language, in the 1st pers. sing. of the Imperfect of all verbs.

<sup>f</sup> Or, 'I used to speak'; also sometimes 'I spoke,' or 'did speak,' &c.



## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.  
*parl-a*, speak (thou).  
*parl-i*, let him speak.

*parl-íamo*, let us speak.  
*parl-áte*, speak (you).  
*parl-ino*,<sup>a</sup> let them speak.

## Subjunctive Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>ch' io parl-i</i> , that I may	} speak	<i>che parl-íamo</i> , that we may	} speak
<i>che tu parl-i</i> , that thou mayest		<i>che parl-íate</i> , <sup>c</sup> that you may	
<i>ch' egli parl-i</i> , <sup>b</sup> that he may		<i>che parl-ino</i> , <sup>a</sup> that they may	

## IMPERFECT.

<i>s' io parl-ássi</i> , if I might speak.	<i>se parl-ássimo</i> , if we might speak.
<i>se tu parl-ássi</i> , if thou mightest	<i>se parl-áste</i> , if you might speak.
[speak.	<i>se parl-ássero</i> , if they might
<i>se parl-ásse</i> , if he might speak.	[speak.

Present Participle { *parl-ándo*<sup>e</sup>  
*parl-ánte* } speaking.

Past Participle, *parl-áto*, spoken.

<sup>a</sup> The Imperative mood of all verbs is taken from the Present Indicative and the Present Subjunctive. In the 1st conjugation, for the 2nd pers. sing. and 1st and 2nd pers. plur. we take the 3rd sing. and 1st and 2nd plur. of the Indicative; for the 3rd sing. and plur., the same persons of the Subjunctive.

<sup>b</sup> The termination of the singular of the Present Subjunctive is the same for all the three persons. In the 1st conjugation it is *i* for all regular verbs, and is the 2nd sing. of the Present Indicative.

<sup>c</sup> All verbs have the termination *iate* in the 2nd pers. plur. of the present subjunctive. (See *essere* and *avere*.)

<sup>d</sup> The 3rd pers. plur. of the Present Subjunctive of all verbs is formed by adding *no* to the singular of the same tense.

<sup>e</sup> In this work the name of *Present Participle* is given to both the real Present Participle and to what is in Italian generally called the *Gerund*, and this is done in order that the pupil may not be embarrassed with the latter grammatical term. It is, however, to be observed that, of these two participles, the one in *ndo* is always used in a verbal capacity, and the other in *nte* in that of an adjective and a noun, but very seldom in that of a verb; in the latter case, the pronoun *che* with the *Present Indicative* being generally substituted. Notice the following examples:—

<i>essendo il re buono</i> ,	the king being good,
<i>un animale parlante</i> ,	a talking animal.
<i>un amante</i> ,	a lover (one who loves).
<i>guardo un fanciullo che balla</i> ,	I look at a child dancing.

It is further to be remarked that the Participle in *nte* is wanting in

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere parlato*,<sup>a</sup> to have spoken.

Indicative Present... *ho parlato*, I have spoken.

„ Imperfect, *aveva parlato*, I had spoken.

„ Perfect, *ebbi parlato*, I had spoken.

„ Future, *avrò parlato*, I shall have spoken.

Conditional..... *avrei parlato*, I should have spoken.

Subjunctive Present, *ch' io abbia parlato*, that I may have spoken.

„ Imperfect, *s' io avessi parlato*, if I might have spoken.

Participle—*avendo parlato*, having spoken.

## CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE :—

## Interrogatively.

*parlo* ? do I speak ?

*parli* ? dost thou speak ?

*parla* ? does he speak ?

*parliamo* ? do we speak ?

*parlate* ? do you speak ?

*parlano* ? do they speak ?

## Negatively.

*non parlo*, I do not speak.

*non parli*, thou dost not speak.

*non parla*, he does not speak.

*non parliamo*, we do not speak.

*non parlate*, you do not speak.

*non parlano*, they do not speak.

## Interrogatively and Negatively.

*non parlo* ? do I not speak ?

*non parli* ? dost thou not speak ?

*non parla* ? does he not speak ?

*non parliamo* ? do we not speak ?

*non parlate* ? do you not speak ?

*non parlano* ? do they not speak ?

Obs. 1.—Verbs ending in the Infinitive in *care* or *gare*, take *h* after *c* or *g*, when those letters are followed by *e* or *i*, in order to

many verbs (see *essere*); but when used, it must always agree in gender and number with the person or thing to which it relates;

as, *due animali parlanti*, two talking animals.

*due amanti*, two lovers (two who love).

The Participle in *ndo* is invariable, ending always in *o*. It is never used with a preposition or article, the Infinitive being usually substituted; as,

*Gli scolari studiando imparano*, or } Scholars learn by studying.  
*Gli scolari collo studiare imparano*, }

<sup>a</sup> Note c, p. 20.

preserve the hard sound; as, *cerchi*, thou searchest, from *cercare*, to search; *pagherò*, I will pay, from *pagare*, to pay.

Obs. 2.—Verbs ending in *ciare* or *giare*, drop the *i* before another *i* or *e*, for the sake of euphony; as, *mangi*, thou eatest, from *mangiare*, to eat; *ciancerò*, I will chat, from *cianciare*, to chat.

Obs. 3.—Verbs ending in *gliare*, *chiare*, or *sciare*, drop the *i* only before another *i*; as, *pigliamo*, we take, from *pigliare*, to take; *invecchi*, thou growest old, from *invecchiare*, to grow old; *lasci*, thou leavest, from *lasciare*, to leave.

Obs. 4.—The verbs *giocare*, to play (game), *sonare*, to play (music), *rinnovare*, to renew, *rotare*, to wheel, and a few others, take *u* before *o* when the accent falls upon the *o* of the root; that is, in the singular and 3rd person plural of the Present Indicative and Present Subjunctive, and in the singular and 3rd person plural of the Imperative; as, *giuóco*, I play (game); *suónano*, they play (music), &c.

## PHRASES.

*giocare agli scacchi*, to play chess.  
*legare l' involto*, to tie a parcel.  
*sonare il pianoforte*, to play upon the piano.  
*fabbricare una casa*, to build a house.  
*viaggiare di giorno (di notte)*, to travel by day (by night).

*trovare una cosa*, to find a thing.  
*girare attorno a*, to revolve round.  
*bramare una cosa*, to wish for a thing.  
*sprecare il tempo*, to waste one's time.  
*pigliare degli uccelli*, to catch (some) birds.

## VOCABULARY.

*spago*, cord.  
*muratore*, mason.  
*Copernico*, Copernicus.  
*terra*, earth.  
*sole (m.)*, sun.  
*divertimento*, amusement.  
*rete (f.)*, net.  
*quaranta*, forty.  
*cinquanta*, fifty.

*sessanta*, sixty.  
*settanta*, seventy.  
*ottanta*, eighty.  
*novanta*, ninety.  
*cento*, a hundred.  
*Londra*, London.  
*Parigi*, Paris.  
*Firenze*, Florence.  
*Venezia*, Venice.  
*Genova*, Genoa.

*Milano*, Milan.  
*Livorno*, Leghorn.  
*Edimburgo*, Edinburgh.  
*Pietroburgo*, St. Petersburg.  
*Madrid*, Madrid.  
*Berlino*, Berlin.  
*Vienna*, Vienna.

## READING EXERCISE.

1. Io giuoco<sup>a</sup> agli<sup>b</sup> scacchi. 2. Tu legghi<sup>c</sup> l' involto collo<sup>b</sup> spago. 3. Quando io era in campagna sonava<sup>d</sup> il pianoforte ogni mattina. 4. I<sup>b</sup> muratori<sup>c</sup> fabbricheranno<sup>d</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 4, above.

<sup>b</sup> See Table of Articles, p. 8.

<sup>c</sup> See Plural of Nouns, p. 7.

<sup>c</sup> Obs. 1, p. 27.

<sup>d</sup> Note *d*, p. 15.



English two months now. 7. Did you study<sup>a</sup> much now that I study the English.]

when you were learning<sup>b</sup> – French? 8. I used to study<sup>c</sup>  
*il*

two hours a day. 9. Did you find<sup>a</sup> – German difficult?  
*il* *il* *difficile*

10. Yes; I found<sup>a</sup> – German more difficult than  
*il* *più* *di*

any other language. 11. My nephew and —  
*qualunque altra* *Mio nipote* *mia*

niece have found<sup>c</sup> – Italian easy. 12. Where have you  
*nipote* *l'* *facile*

learnt the French<sup>2</sup> language<sup>1</sup>? 13. I learnt<sup>d</sup> – French  
*la francese* *lingua* *il*

in Paris, and – German in Berlin. 14. Will you sing  
*il*

to-night? 15. I would sing with pleasure, but I have  
*stasera*<sup>a</sup> *volentieri*

a cold. 16. Perhaps your sister will sing a song.  
*vostra sorella* *una canzone*

17. She is not at home, and she never<sup>f</sup> sings, because she has not (a) good voice. 18. Have you dined<sup>a</sup>? 19. I  
*buona voce*

have<sup>2</sup> not<sup>1</sup> eaten<sup>4</sup> anything<sup>5</sup> yet<sup>3</sup>. 20. You shall dine  
[nothing] *ancora*

with-me: Albert, call John, to<sup>e</sup> ask if – dinner is  
*meco* *il pranzo*

<sup>a</sup> Note *h*, p. 15, and Note *b*, p. 29.

<sup>b</sup> Note *d*, p. 15.

<sup>c</sup> Note *d*, p. 15, and Note *f*, p. 25.

<sup>d</sup> Note *h*, p. 15.

<sup>e</sup> The pronoun *questa*, this, is generally abridged before the words *notte*, night, *mane* or *mattina*, morning, and *sera*, evening, and united with them, as follows: *stanotte*, this night, *stamane* or *stamattina*, this morning, *stasera*, this evening.

<sup>f</sup> Note *e*, p. 22.

<sup>g</sup> *to*, before an Infinitive, in the sense of *in order to*, or *with the design of*, is rendered in Italian by *per*.

ready. 21. Do not order — dinner for me, because  
*pronto* *il* *per me*

I have been invited elsewhere. 22. The servant is laying<sup>b</sup>  
 [I am<sup>a</sup> invited] *altrove*

the cloth, and in two minutes dinner will be on table.  
*fra minuti* [they will bring in table]

23. Had I not been invited elsewhere, I would dine with  
 [If<sup>c</sup> I were not invited] 21 *con*

you with pleasure, but to-day (I) wish<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup> a good  
*voi* 15 *vi<sup>d</sup> un buon*

appetite, and take my leave.  
*appetito* [(I) salute<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>]

### QUESTIONS.

Perchè<sup>e</sup> non cantate? 15.—Quante lingue parla vostra zia?—È un pezzo (*or* quanto tempo è) che studiate l'italiano? 5.—Quante ore il giorno studiavate quando eravate in campagna? 8.—Imparerete la vostra canzone domani o lunedì?—A che ora pranzerà vostro fratello martedì prossimo?—Trovate il tedesco difficile?—Chi porterà la lettera alla posta?—Perchè chiamate Giovanni?—Chi ha apparecchiato la tavola?—A che ora porteranno in tavola? 22.—Con chi giocherete agli scacchi? 1\*.—Chi fabbrica le case? 4\*.—Quando viaggerete? 5\*.—Che ha trovato Copernico? 6\*.—Che cosa legherete collo spago? 2\*.—In quali città siete stato (*or* stata)?

The verb *credere*, to believe, will serve as a model for the 2nd Conjugation.

<sup>a</sup> *Essere* is employed as an auxiliary with *passive verbs*.

<sup>b</sup> Note *a*, p. 25.

<sup>c</sup> Note *f*, p. 16.

<sup>d</sup> See Personal Pronouns, p. 8.

Observe that *perchè* has both the meaning of *because* and *why*.

Infinitive—*credere*, to believe.

## Indicative Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## Singular.

*cred-o*, I believe.  
*cred-i*, thou believest.  
*cred-e*, he believes.

## Plural.

*cred-iámo*,<sup>a</sup> we believe.  
*cred-éte*,<sup>b</sup> you believe.  
*cred-ono*,<sup>c</sup> they believe.

## IMPERFECT.

*cred-éva*, I was believing.  
*cred-évi*, thou wast believing.  
*cred-éva*, he was believing.

*cred-evámo*, we were believing.  
*cred-eváte*, you were believing.  
*cred-evano*, they were believing.

## PERFECT or PAST.

*cred-éi*, (or *cred-étti*), I believed.  
*cred-ésti*, thou believedst.  
*cred-è* (or *cred-étte*), he believed.

*cred-émmo*, we believed.  
*cred-éste*, you believed.  
*cred-érono* (or *cred-éttero*<sup>d</sup>), they  
 [believed.]

## FUTURE.

*cred-erò*, I shall believe.  
*cred-erái*, thou wilt believe.  
*cred-erà*, he will believe.

*cred-erémo*, we shall believe.  
*cred-eréte*, you will believe.  
*cred-eránno*, they will believe.

## Conditional Mood.

*cred-eréi*, I should believe.  
*cred-erésti*, thou wouldst believe.  
*cred-erébbe*, he would believe.

*cred-erémmo*, we should believe.  
*cred-eréste*, you would believe.  
*cred-erébbero*, they would believe.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.  
*cred-i*, believe (thou).  
*cred-a*, let him believe.

*cred-iámo*, let us believe.  
*cred-éte*, believe (you).  
*cred-ano*,<sup>e</sup> let them believe.

<sup>a</sup> Note *b*, p. 25.

<sup>b</sup> Note *c*, p. 25.

<sup>c</sup> The 3rd person plural of the Present Indicative of verbs of the 2nd and 3rd conjugations is formed by adding *no* to the 1st person singular of the same tense. *Essere*, to be, *avere*, to have, and *sapere*, to know, are the only verbs that do not follow this rule.

<sup>d</sup> *Dipendere*, to depend on, *fremere*, to fret, *gemere*, to groan, *godere*, to enjoy, *pendere*, or *impendere*, to hang, *perdere*, to lose, *premere*, to press, *propendere*, to incline, *ricevere*, to receive, *risplendere* or *splendere*, to shine, *stridere*, to scream, *temere*, to fear, and *vendere*, to sell, have the double terminations shown in the 1st and 3rd singular, and 3rd person plural of the Perfect tense. All other regular verbs of the 2nd conjugation have only the first of these two terminations.

<sup>e</sup> The Imperative mood is taken from the Present Indicative and

## Subjunctive Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*ch' io cred-a*, that I may believe.      *che cred-iàmo*, that we may be-  
*che tu cred-a*, that thou mayest &c.      *che cred-idàte*, that you &c. [lieve.  
*ch' egli cred-a*,<sup>a</sup> that he may &c.      *che cred-ano*,<sup>b</sup> that they &c.

## IMPERFECT.

*s' io cred-éssi*, if I might believe.      *se cred-éssimo*, if we might believe.  
*se tu cred-éssi*, if thou mightest &c.      *se cred-éste*, if you &c.  
*se cred-ésse*, if he might &c.      *se cred-éssero*, if they &c.

Present Participle { *cred-éndo* } believing.\*  
                                  { *cred-énte* }

Past Participle, *cred-úto*, believed.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere creduto*, to have believed.

Indicative Present... *ho creduto*, I have believed.  
       " Imperfect *aveva creduto*, I had believed.  
       " Perfect... *ebbi creduto*, I had believed.  
       " Future... *avrò creduto*, I shall have believed.  
 Conditional..... *avrei creduto*, I should have believed.  
 Subjunctive Present *ch' io abbia creduto*, that I may have believed.  
       " Imperfect *s' io avessi creduto*, if I might have believed.  
       Participle—*avendo creduto*, having believed.

## CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE:—

## Interrogatively.

*credo?* do I believe?      *crediamo?* do we believe?  
*credi?* dost thou believe?      *credete?* do you believe?  
*crede?* does he believe?      *credono?* do they believe?

Present Subjunctive (see Note a, p. 26). In the 2nd and 3rd conjugations, for the 2nd singular and 1st and 2nd persons plural, we take the same persons of the Indicative; and for the 3rd persons, those of the Subjunctive. Only *essere*, to be, *avere*, to have, *sapere*, to know, and *volere*, to be willing, have the 2nd person Imperative, both singular and plural, different from the same persons of the Present Indicative. *Dire*, to say, is contracted in the 2nd singular of the Imperative *dì*.

\* The singular of the Present Subjunctive of all verbs of the 2nd and 3rd conjugations is formed by changing the final *o* of the 1st person singular of the Present Indicative into *a*; *essere*, *avere*, and *sapere* being the only exceptions to this rule. (See Note b, p. 26.)

<sup>b</sup> Note d, p. 26.

\* Note c, p. 26.



## Negatively.

<i>non credo</i> , I do not believe.	<i>non crediamo</i> , we do not believe.
<i>non credi</i> , thou dost not believe.	<i>non credete</i> , you do not believe.
<i>non crede</i> , he does not believe.	<i>non credono</i> , they do not believe.

## Interrogatively and Negatively.

<i>non credo?</i> do I not believe?	<i>non crediamo?</i> do we not believe?
<i>non credi?</i> dost thou not believe?	<i>non credete?</i> do you not believe?
<i>non crede?</i> does he not believe?	<i>non credono?</i> do they not believe?

Obs.—Verbs ending in *cere* and *scere*, that have the Past Participle regular in *uto*, take *i* between *e* and *u* for the sake of preserving the root-sound; as, *taciuto*, from *tacere*, to be silent; *pasciuto*, from *pascere*, to feed, &c.

## PHRASES.

<i>vendere</i> }	to sell	}	a thing.
<i>credere</i> }	<i>una cosa</i> , to believe	}	
<i>combattere in una battaglia</i> , to fight in a battle.			
<i>pascere alcuno</i> , to feed any one.			
<i>mietere il grano</i> , to reap the corn.			
<i>cominciare a piovere</i> , to commence raining.			
<i>ricevere con bella grazia uno</i> , to receive a person kindly.			
<i>perdere il tempo in inezie</i> , to lose one's time in trifling.			
<i>ripetere una cosa</i> , to say a thing again.			
<i>narrare una cosa</i> , to relate a thing.			

## VOCABULARY.

<i>fornaio</i> , baker.	<i>pastore</i> , shepherd.	<i>qualunque</i> , any.
<i>pane</i> (m.), bread.	<i>pecora</i> , sheep.	<i>persona</i> , person.
<i>erba</i> , grass.	<i>contadino</i> , countryman.	<i>per favore</i> , if you
<i>antico</i> , ancient.		[please.

## READING EXERCISE.

1. Il fornaio vende il pane. 2. Gli antichi<sup>a</sup> credevano che il sole girasse<sup>b</sup> attorno alla terra. 3. Dante Alli-

<sup>a</sup> Note a, p. 8.

<sup>b</sup> When the verb of a dependent sentence does not express a certainty, it is put in the Subjunctive mood, with the conjunction *che* expressed or understood, after all verbs that denote *asking*, as *chiedere*, to ask; *entreating*, as *pregare*, to pray; *suspecting*, as *sospettare*, to suspect; *wondering*, as *maravigliarsi*, to wonder; *rejoicing*, as *rallegrarsi*, to rejoice; *grudging*, as *rifutare*, to refuse; *supposing*, as *supporre*, to suppose; *hoping*, as *sperare*, to hope; *imagining*, as *figurarsi*, to imagine; *conjecturing*, as *conghietturare*, to conjecture; *intimating*, as *intimare*, to intimate; as well as after all verbs expressing *desire*, as *bramare*, to long for; *fear*, as *temere*, to fear; *belief*,

ghieri combattè<sup>a</sup> in due battaglie. 4. Il pastore ha pasciuto<sup>b</sup> d' erba le sue pecore. 5. Subito che i contadini ebbero mietuto<sup>c</sup> il grano, cominciò a piovere. 6. Ricevete con bella grazia qualunque persona. 7. Se aveste più giudizio, non perdereste il tempo in inezie. 8. Per favore, ripetete quel che<sup>d</sup> avete narrato.

## VOCABULARY.

to knock at the door, <i>battere alla porta.</i>	to prolong, <i>prolungare.</i>
to ring, <i>sonare.</i>	to enjoy, <i>godere.</i>
to think (believe), <i>credere.</i>	to feed (neut.), <i>pascolare.</i>
to receive, <i>ricevere.</i>	to sell, <i>vendere.</i>
to write, <i>scrivere.</i>	to beat, <i>battere.</i>
to hope, <i>sperare.</i>	to yield, <i>cedere.</i>
to tap at a door, <i>bussare all'uscio.</i>	to leave, abandon, <i>abbandonare.</i>
to be afraid, <i>temere.</i>	to gain, <i>guadagnare.</i>
to arrive, <i>arrivare.</i>	to pour out (wine into a glass), <i>mescolare.</i>
to shine, <i>splendere.</i>	to pour out (anything), <i>versare.</i>

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. Somebody knocks<sup>e</sup> at the door. 2. They are *alcuno* knocking<sup>f</sup> and ringing.<sup>g</sup> 3. John, who has knocked and rung<sup>e</sup>? 4. I believe (it) is<sup>h</sup> Mr.<sup>i</sup> Bianchi. 5. Certainly I received<sup>j</sup> (a) letter from his brother *Certamente da suo* yesterday in which<sup>k</sup> he writes that he hoped<sup>l</sup> to dine *in cui che di* with us to-day. 6. Somebody taps at the door. *con noi* 1

as *credere*, to believe; *will*, as *volere*, to wish; *command*, as *ordinare*, to order; *permission*, as *permettere*, to allow; *prohibition*, as *proibire*, to forbid; *doubt*, as *dubitare*, to doubt; and *ignorance*, as *ignorare*, to ignore. (See also Note *e*, p. 16.)

<sup>a</sup> Note *f*, p. 15.

<sup>b</sup> Obs., p. 34.

<sup>c</sup> Note *c*, p. 16.

<sup>d</sup> *che*, preceded by the demonstrative pronouns *quello*, or *quel*, or *ciò*, that, has the meaning of the English *what* or *that*, in the sense of *that which*.

<sup>e</sup> Attention must be paid not to confound conjugations 1 and 2.

<sup>f</sup> Note *a*, p. 25.

<sup>g</sup> Obs. 4, p. 28.

<sup>h</sup> Note *b*, p. 34.

<sup>i</sup> Note *f*, p. 29.

<sup>j</sup> Note *f*, p. 15.

<sup>k</sup> See Relat. Pron., p. 9.

<sup>l</sup> Note *d*, p. 15.

7. Come-in. 8. Madam, your<sup>2</sup> servant<sup>1</sup>.  
*Avanti (literally, forward). Signora vostro*

9. I was afraid you would not arrive<sup>a</sup> in time for –  
*a tempo per il*

dinner. 10. Madam, the sun was shining<sup>b</sup> so  
*il sole così*

beautifully this morning,<sup>c</sup> that I prolonged<sup>d</sup> – my  
*a maraviglia la mia*

walk (too far). 11. You have,<sup>2</sup> no doubt,<sup>1</sup> enjoyed<sup>e</sup>  
*passeggiata senza dubbio*

– your walk. 12. Yes, very much; the country is  
*la vostra moltissimo là* [has

now looking very beautiful, and there are many sheep  
 now an aspect] *bellissimo molte pecore*  
*un aspetto*

feeding<sup>f</sup> in the meadows. 13. Have you sold<sup>e</sup> –  
 [which feed] *nei prati la*

your country-house? 14. I have not yet sold<sup>e</sup> – my  
*vostra casa di campagna ancora la mia*

country-house. 15. Have you received any news  
*delle nuove*

about the war? 16. Yes; the enemy have been  
*intorno alla guerra i nemici*

beaten,<sup>g</sup> and the general yielded disgracefully, aban-  
*il generale vergognosamente*

doning all – his troops. 17. Then we have gained  
*tutti i suoi soldati Allora*

a decisive<sup>2</sup> victory<sup>1</sup>. 18. Yes, Madam, the enemy  
*una assoluta vittoria* 16

have lost all. 19. The<sup>2</sup> dinner<sup>3</sup> is<sup>4</sup> now<sup>1</sup> ready, so  
*tutto il così*

let us begin. 20. I have a good appetite after – my  
*un buon appetito dopo la mia*

<sup>a</sup> Note b, p. 34.

<sup>b</sup> Note a, p. 25.

<sup>c</sup> Note e, p. 30.

<sup>d</sup> Note f, p. 15.

<sup>e</sup> Note h, p. 15.

<sup>f</sup> Note e, p. 26.

<sup>g</sup> Note a, p. 31, and Note f, p. 13.

long walk. 21. Charles, have you poured out<sup>a</sup> (a glass  
*lunga* 10 *Carlo*  
 of wine) for Mr.<sup>b</sup> Bianchi? 22. Yes; and I shall pour  
 out a glass of port wine for you.  
*un bicchiere di vino d'Oporto per voi*

## QUESTIONS.

Chi vende il pane? 1\*.—Che cosa credevano gli<sup>c</sup> antichi  
 del<sup>e</sup> sole e della<sup>e</sup> terra? 2\*.—In quante battaglie ha com-  
 battuto Dante Allighieri?—Dove pascoleranno le pe-  
 core? 12.—Da chi avete avuto lettera ieri? 5.—In che  
 mese dell' anno mietono il grano in Inghilterra? 5\*.—  
 Perché non mescete? 21.—Avete goduto la vostra  
 passeggiata? 11.—Quando avete cominciato a studiare la  
 musica? 5\*.—Avete battuto o sonato quando siete arri-  
 vato a casa? 3.

The verb *sentire*, to feel, to hear, will serve as a model  
 for the 3rd Conjugation.

Infinitive—*sentire*, to feel.

Indicative Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>sént-o</i> , I feel.	<i>sént-iámo</i> , <sup>d</sup> we feel.
<i>sént-i</i> , thou feelest.	<i>sént-ite</i> , <sup>e</sup> you feel.
<i>sént-e</i> , he feels.	<i>sént-ono</i> , <sup>f</sup> they feel.

## IMPERFECT.

<i>sént-íva</i> , I felt.	<i>sént-ívámo</i> , we felt.
<i>sént-ívi</i> , thou feltest.	<i>sént-íváte</i> , you felt.
<i>sént-íva</i> , he felt.	<i>sént-ívano</i> , they felt.

## PERFECT OR PAST.

<i>sént-íi</i> , I felt.	<i>sént-immo</i> , we felt.
<i>sént-ísti</i> , thou feltest.	<i>sént-íste</i> , you felt.
<i>sént-i</i> , he felt.	<i>sént-írono</i> , they felt.

<sup>a</sup> Obs., p. 34.

<sup>d</sup> Note *b*, p. 25.

<sup>b</sup> Note *f*, p. 29.

<sup>e</sup> Note *c*, p. 25.

<sup>c</sup> See Articles, p. 8.

<sup>f</sup> Note *a*, p. 32.

## FUTURE.

*sent-irò*, I shall feel.  
*sent-irai*, thou wilt feel.  
*sent-irà*, he will feel.

*sent-irémo*, we shall feel.  
*sent-iréte*, you will feel.  
*sent-iranno*, they will feel.

## Conditional Mood.

*sent-iréi*, I should feel.  
*sent-irésti*, thou wouldst feel.  
*sent-irébbe*, he would feel.

*sent-irémmo*, we should feel.  
*sent-iréste*, you would feel.  
*sent-irébbero*, they would feel.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.  
*sént-i*, feel (thou).  
*sént-a*, let him feel.

*sent-iamo*, let us feel.  
*sent-ite*, feel (you).  
*sént-ano*,<sup>a</sup> let them feel.

## Subjunctive Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*ch' io sént-a*, that I may feel.  
*che tu sént-a*, that thou mayest  
     [feel].  
*ch' egli sént-a*,<sup>b</sup> that he may feel.

*che sent-iamo*, that we may feel.  
*che sent-iate*, that you may feel.  
*che sént-ano*,<sup>c</sup> that they may feel.

## IMPERFECT.

*s' io sent-issi*, if I might feel.  
*se tu sent-issi*, if thou mightest  
     [feel].  
*se sent-isse*, if he might feel.

*se sent-issimo*, if we might feel.  
*se sent-iste*, if you might feel.  
*se sent-issero*, if they might feel.

Present Participle { *sent-éndo*<sup>d</sup>  
                           *sent-énte*<sup>e</sup> } feeling.

Past Participle, *sent-íto*, felt.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere sentito*, to have felt.

Indicative Present... *ho sentito*, I have felt.

„ Imperfect *aveva sentito*, I had felt.

„ Perfect... *ebbi sentito*, I had felt.

„ Future... *avrò sentito*, I shall have felt.

Conditional..... *avrei sentito*, I should have felt.

Subjunctive Present *ch' io abbia sentito*, that I may have felt.

„ Imperfect *s' io avessi sentito*, if I might have felt.

Participle—*avendo sentito*, having felt.

<sup>a</sup> Note *e*, p. 32.

<sup>b</sup> Note *d*, p. 26.

<sup>c</sup> Note *a*, p. 33.

<sup>d</sup> Note *e*, p. 26.

<sup>e</sup> Some verbs of the 3rd conjugation have the termination *iente* instead of *ente*, in the Present Participle; as, *finire*, to finish, *finiente*; others have both terminations; as, *dormire*, to sleep, *dormente* and *dormiente*, &c.

## CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE:—

## Interrogatively.

*sento* ? do I feel ?  
*senti* ? dost thou feel ?  
*sente* ? does he feel ?

*sentiamo* ? do we feel ?  
*sentite* ? do you feel ?  
*sentono* ? do they feel ?

## Negatively.

*non sento*, I do not feel.  
*non senti*, thou dost not feel.  
*non sente*, he does not feel.

*non sentiamo*, we do not feel.  
*non sentite*, you do not feel.  
*non sentono*, they do not feel.

## Interrogatively and Negatively.

*non sento* ? do I not feel ?  
*non senti* ? dost thou not feel ?  
*non sente* ? does he not feel ?

*non sentiamo* ? do we not feel ?  
*non sentite* ? do you not feel ?  
*non sentono* ? do they not feel ?

OBS.—The most regular form of the 3rd Conjugation, in its analogy with the other two conjugations, is that of *sentire*; but the only verbs which are always completely conjugated like *sentire* are—

*bollire*, to boil.  
*divertire*, to divert.  
*dormire*, to sleep.  
*fuggire*, to flee.  
*partire*, to depart, start.  
*pentire*, to repent.

*pervertire*, to pervert.  
*servire*, to serve.  
*sortire*, to sally out.  
*sovvertire*, to subvert.  
*vestire*, to clothe, dress.

—and their derivatives. All the other verbs in *ire*, with the exception of some which will be found in the table of the irregular verbs of the 3rd conjugation, take *isc* before the person-ending, throughout the singular number, and in the 3rd person plural of the Present Indicative, Present Subjunctive, and Imperative.

## MODEL.

Infinitive—*finire*, to finish.

## Indicative Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*fin-isco*, I finish.  
*fin-isci*, thou finishest.  
*fin-isce*, he finishes.

*fin-iámo*,<sup>a</sup> we finish.  
*fin-ite*,<sup>b</sup> you finish.  
*fin-iscono*,<sup>c</sup> they finish.

<sup>a</sup> Note *b*, p. 25.

<sup>b</sup> Note *c*, p. 25.

<sup>c</sup> Note *c*, p. 32.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.

*fin-isci*, finish (thou).*fin-isca*, let him finish.*fin-iámo*, let us finish.*fin-ite*, finish (you).*fin-iscano*,<sup>a</sup> let them finish.

## Subjunctive Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*ch' io fin-isca*, that I may*che tu fin-isca*, that thou mayest*ch' egli fin-isca*,<sup>b</sup> that he may

} finish

*che fin-iámo*, that we may*che fin-iáte*, that you may*che fin-iscano*,<sup>c</sup> that they may

} finish

All the other moods and tenses not given in the above Model are conjugated like *sentire*.

N.B.—The following verbs in *ire* are conjugated indifferently either like *sentire*<sup>d</sup> or like *finire* :—

*abborrire*, to abhor.*applaudire*, to applaud.*avvertire*, to warn.*inghiottire*, to swallow.*mentire*, to lie.*muggire*, to bellow.*nutrire*, to nourish.*ruggire*, to roar.

## PHRASES.

*florire nella primavera*, to flower in spring.*inacidire per mancanza di pioggia*, to wither for want of rain.*finire il lavoro*, to finish one's work.*guarire l'ammalato*, to cure the patient.*inghiottire la medicina*, to swallow the medicine.*guarire da una malattia*, to recover from an illness.*fuggire i cattivi compagni*, to shun bad companions.*pulire lo spazio della camera*, to clean (sweep up) the floor of the*obbedire gli ordini*, to obey orders.

[room.]

*adempire i suoi doveri*, to fulfil one's duties.

## VOCABULARY.

*margheritina*, daisy.*state* (f.), summer.*padrone*, master.*passato*, last.*fiore* (m.), flower.*esattezza*, precision.*tutti*, all.*medico*, doctor.

## READING EXERCISE.

1. La *margheritina* *florisce*<sup>e</sup> nella primavera. 2. La *state* *passata* i fiori *inacidivano* per mancanza di pioggia.  
3. Ieri non *finii*<sup>f</sup> il mio lavoro. 4. Il medico non ha

<sup>a</sup> Note c, p. 32.<sup>b</sup> Note a, p. 33.<sup>c</sup> Note d, p. 26.

<sup>d</sup> A few verbs are inflected like *sentire* only in poetry; as, *assorbire*, to absorb, *languire*, to languish, &c.

<sup>e</sup> Obs., p. 39.<sup>f</sup> Note f, p. 15.

guarito l' ammalato. 5. S' egli avesse inghiottito la medicina, sarebbe guarito della sua malattia. 6. Fuggiamo i cattivi compagni. 7. Desidero che la serva pulisca<sup>a</sup> lo spazzo della mia camera. 8. Obbedite gli ordini dei padroni. 9. Adempirò con esattezza tutti i miei doveri.

## VOCABULARY.

to understand, *capire*.  
to prefer, *preferire*.  
to sleep, *dormire*.  
to suffer, *soffrire*.  
to want, *avere bisogno di*.  
to boil, *bollire*.

to take, *prendere*.  
to leave, depart from, *partire da*  
or *di*.  
to serve, *servire*.  
to hear of, *sentire parlare di*.  
to take place, *avere luogo*.

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. Good morning, Sir; do<sup>b</sup> you understand – English?  
*Buon giorno* *l'*
2. A little; but I prefer<sup>c</sup> speaking Italian. 3. How did  
*Un poco* [to speak] *Come*
- you sleep<sup>d</sup> – last<sup>2</sup> night<sup>1</sup>? 4. Not well, for I suffered<sup>e</sup>  
*la passata notte* *perchè*
- from toothache the<sup>3</sup> whole<sup>1</sup> night. 5. Do<sup>b</sup> you want a  
*del* *la tutta notte* *una*
- cup of coffee? 6. Thank you, I do not want  
*chicchera di caffè* *Grazie*
- anything<sup>f</sup>. 7. The water boils, and in ten minutes the  
[nothing] *L' acqua* *fra minuti il*
- coffee will be ready. 8. Indeed I should not sleep if I  
*Davvero*
- took<sup>g</sup> a cup of coffee now. 9. When do you leave  
*5* [shall you leave<sup>h</sup>]

<sup>a</sup> Note *b*, p. 34.

<sup>b</sup> Note *a*, p. 25.

<sup>c</sup> Obs., p. 39.

<sup>d</sup> Note *h*, p. 15.

<sup>e</sup> Note *f*, p. 15.

<sup>f</sup> Note *e*, p. 22.

<sup>g</sup> Note *f*, p. 16.

<sup>h</sup> In Italian the *Future* is generally employed instead of the English *Present* when speaking of a future time; even when two or three verbs are used, they must all be in the future; as, *meglio diventerai se alla morte PENSERAI* (Prov.), thou wilt become better if thou thinkest of death



England? 10. I shall leave — England to-morrow.  
 11. Have you had good attendance during — your  
     [Have you been well served?] *durante il vostro*  
 residence in this country? 12. In England there are  
*soggiorno questo*  
 good hotels. 13. Have you heard of the death of—  
*buoni alberghi della morte del*  
 Mr. B.? 14. Yes; I have heard of — his death, which  
     *della sua*  
 took place yesterday at two (o'clock).  
     *alle*

## QUESTIONS.

Che lingua preferite parlare? 2.—Quando fioriscono  
 le margherite? 1\*.—Quando partirete da Londra? 9.—  
 Prendete una chicchera di caffè la mattina o la sera? 8.  
 —Chi ha pulito lo spazzo della camera? 7\*.—Perchè  
 inaridiscono i fiori? 2\*.—Quali ordini obbedisce il  
 servo? 8\*.—Chi ha guarito l'ammalato? 4\*.—Di che  
 avete bisogno? 5.—Capisce vostra zia l'italiano?

## REFLECTIVE VERBS.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. In conjugating *reflective* verbs, the Italians employ  
 the conjunctive pronouns—

*mi*,<sup>b</sup> me, or to me;

*ci*, us, or to us;

*ti*, thee, or to thee;

*vi*, you, or to you;

answering to the English myself, thyself, ourselves,  
 yourselves;

and *si*, himself, herself, itself, oneself, themselves.

\* Note a, p. 31.

<sup>b</sup> See Table of Pers. Pron., p. 8.

2. The above Italian pronouns either follow or precede the verb.

(i.) They follow the verb and are united to it—

In the Infinitive used affirmatively, its final *e* being dropped; as, *scaldarsi*, to warm one's self.

In the Present Participle; as, *scaldandosi*, warming one's self.

In the Past Participle, when elliptically used with the auxiliary verb understood; as, *vestitosi*, i.e. *essendosi vestito*, having dressed himself.

In the second person singular and first and second persons plural of the Imperative used affirmatively.

(ii.) In the Infinitive and Imperative used negatively, and in all other persons and tenses, both simple and compound, the above pronouns generally precede the verb<sup>a</sup>; as may be seen from the following model of a reflexive verb:—

#### MODEL.

Infinitive—*scaldarsi*, to warm one's self.

#### Indicative Mood.

##### PRESENT TENSE.

##### Singular.

*mi scaldo*,<sup>b</sup> I warm myself.  
*ti scaldi*, thou warmest thyself.  
*si scalda*, he warms himself.

##### Plural.

*ci scaldiamo*, we warm ourselves.  
*vi scaldate*, you warm &c.  
*si scaldano*, they warm &c.

<sup>a</sup> It may be useful to add here,—(1) That the above rules respecting the placing of the pronouns are to be applied, not only in conjugating reflexive verbs, but also, generally, with any other verb; and that what has been said in respect of *mi*, *ti*, *ci*, *vi*, *si*, is likewise applicable to the other conjunctive pronouns, *lo*, *li*, *la*, *le*, *gli*, and *ne* (see Pers. Pron., p. 8). (2) That the pronouns *lo*, *la*, *gli*, *le*, are subject to the same elisions as the same words when articles (see Articles, p. 8). (3) That *mi*, *ti*, *si*, *vi*, *ne* may suffer elision before any vowel; *ci* only before *e* and *i*.

<sup>b</sup> The words *stesso* or *medesimo*, plural *stessi* and *medesimi*, (see Indef. Pron., p. 10,) which have the meaning of *self* or *selves*, are sometimes used in Italian with the reflexive verb, but this is done only in cases where the English *self* or *selves* is intended to be emphatic; as, *Non vedo voi, vedo me stesso*, or *me medesimo*, I do not see you, I see myself. The other persons would, in such cases, be formed as follows: *te stesso*, thyself; *sè stesso*, himself, herself, itself; *noi stessi*, ourselves; *voi stessi*, yourselves; *sè stessi*, themselves.

## IMPERFECT.

<i>mi scaldáva</i> , I warmed myself.	<i>ci scaldávamo</i> , we warmed our-
<i>ti scaldávi</i> , thou warmedst thyself.	<i>vi scaldaváte</i> , you &c. [selves.
<i>si scaldáva</i> , he warmed himself.	<i>si scaldávano</i> , they &c.

## PERFECT or PAST.

<i>mi scaldá</i> , I warmed myself.	<i>ci scaldámmo</i> , we warmed our-
<i>ti scaldásti</i> , thou warmedst thyself.	<i>vi scaldáste</i> , you &c. [selves.
<i>si scaldò</i> , he warmed himself.	<i>si scaldárono</i> , they &c.

## FUTURE.

<i>mi scaldaré</i> , I shall warm myself.	<i>ci scaldarémo</i> , we shall warm our-
<i>ti scaldarái</i> , thou wilt &c.	<i>vi scaldaréte</i> , you will &c. [selves.
<i>si scaldará</i> , he will &c.	<i>si scaldaránno</i> , they will &c.

## Conditional Mood.

<i>mi scalderei</i> , I should warm	<i>ci scaldarémmo</i> , we should warm
[myself.	[ourselves.
<i>ti scalderésti</i> , thou wouldst &c.	<i>vi scalderéste</i> , you would &c.
<i>si scalderebbe</i> , he would &c.	<i>si scalderebbero</i> , they would &c.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>scaldámmoci</i> , let us warm our-
<i>scaldati</i> , warm thyself.	<i>scaldátevi</i> , warm &c. [selves.
<i>si scaldi</i> , let him warm himself.	<i>si scaldino</i> , let them &c.

## Subjunctive Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>ch' io mi scaldi</i> , that I may warm	<i>che ci scaldámo</i> , that we may
[myself.	[warm ourselves.
<i>che tu ti scaldi</i> , that thou &c.	<i>che vi scaldáte</i> , that you &c.
<i>ch' egli si scaldi</i> , that he &c.	<i>che si scaldino</i> , that they &c.

## IMPERFECT.

<i>s' io mi scaldassi</i> , if I might	<i>se ci scaldássimo</i> , if we might
[warm myself.	[warm ourselves.
<i>se tu ti scaldassi</i> , if thou &c.	<i>se vi scaldásti</i> , if you &c.
<i>se si scaldásse</i> , if he &c.	<i>se si scaldássero</i> , if they &c.

Present Participle { *scaldándosi* } warming one's self.  
                               { *scaldántesi* }

Past Participle, *scaldátosi*, warmed one's self.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

**Infinitive**—*essersi<sup>a</sup> scaldato*, to have warmed one's self.

**Indicative Present**... *mi sono scaldato* or *scaldato*,<sup>b</sup> I have warmed myself.

„ **Imperfect** *mi era scaldato*, I had warmed myself.

„ **Perfect**... *mi fui scaldato*, I had warmed myself.

„ **Future**... *mi sarò scaldato*, I shall have warmed myself.

**Conditional**..... *mi sarei scaldato*, I should have warmed myself.

**Subjunctive Present** *ch' io mi sia scaldato*, that I may have warmed myself.

„ **Imperfect** *s' io mi fossi scaldato*, if I might have warmed myself.

**Participle**—*essendosi<sup>c</sup> scaldato*, having warmed himself.

## CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE :—

## Interrogatively.

*mi scaldo ?* do I warm myself?

*ti scaldi ?* dost thou &c.

*si scalda ?* does he &c.

*ci scaldiamo ?* do we warm our-

*vi scaldate ?* do you &c. [selves?

*si scaldano ?* do they &c.

## Negatively.

*non mi scaldo*, I do not warm  
[myself.

*non ti scaldi*, thou dost not &c.

*non si scalda*, he does not &c.

*non ci scaldiamo*, we do not  
[warm ourselves.

*non vi scaldate*, you do not &c.

*non si scaldano*, they do not &c.

## Interrogatively and Negatively.

*non mi scaldo ?* do I not warm  
[myself?

*non ti scaldi ?* dost thou not &c.

*non si scalda ?* does he not &c.

*non ci scaldiamo ?* do we not  
[warm ourselves?

*non vi scaldate ?* do you not &c.

*non si scaldano ?* do they not &c.

**OBS.**—*Reflective verbs* are conjugated in the same way

<sup>a</sup> *Essere* is always used to conjugate the compound tenses of reflexive verbs.

<sup>b</sup> The past participle of a reflexive verb agrees with the subject, when *mi*, *ti*, *si*, &c. are direct objects, or are used with a neuter verb (see Note *i*, p. 47). It may remain invariable in its masculine termination *o*, or agree with the object of the sentence, when *mi*, *ti*, &c., are indirect objects, that is, have the signification of *a me*, to me, *a te*, to thee, &c. (see Obs. 1, p. 42); as,

*Quel uomo si è conservato* (or *conservata*) *la sanità*,  
That man has preserved his health.

<sup>c</sup> When, in the compound tenses, the Auxiliary is in the Infinitive or Participle, the conjunctive pronoun follows the Auxiliary, and is united to it.

as other verbs, so far as regards their terminations; that is, those ending in *are*, like *parlare*; those in *ere*, like *credere*; those in *ire*, like *sentire* or *finire*.

The student should now, therefore, conjugate *credersi*, to believe one's self; and *divertirsi*, to amuse one's self, in order to become well acquainted with the reflective forms.

## RECIPROCAL VERBS.

OBS.—These are conjugated in the same way as Reflectives, but only in the *plural* of their tenses, both simple and compound; as,

*ci parliamo*, we speak to one another.<sup>a</sup>

*vi parlate*, you speak to one another.

*si parlano*, they speak to one another, &c.

## PHRASES.

*vestirsi alla moda*, to dress (one's self) after the fashion.

*adattarsi a tutto*, to accommodate one's self to everything.

*accompagnarsi<sup>b</sup> colla chitarra*, to accompany one's self on the guitar.

*cavarsi i guanti, il cappello, &c.*, to take off one's gloves, one's hat, &c.

*allungarsi la vita*, to lengthen one's life.

*ridersi<sup>d</sup> di uno*, to laugh at one.

<sup>a</sup> The English *one another* or *each other*, in cases similar to those above, is sometimes expressed in Italian by *uno* and *altro*, accompanied by the definite article, or by such words as *scambievolmente*, mutually; *reciprocamente*, reciprocally; as,

*noi ci amiamo l' un l' altro*, or  
*noi ci amiamo scambievolmente* } we love one another.

<sup>b</sup> An Italian reflective verb is rendered in English by another reflective verb, when the words *mi*, *ti*, &c. are direct objects, and have in Italian the meaning of *me*, *me*, *te*, *thee*, &c. (Obs. 1, p. 42); as,  
*L' uomo vano si loda*, a vain man PRAISES HIMSELF.

<sup>c</sup> An Italian reflective verb is rendered in English by an active verb and a possessive pronoun before the object of the sentence, when *mi*, *ti*, &c. are indirect objects, and have in Italian the meaning of *a me*, to me, *a te*, to thee, &c.; as,

*Io mi allaccio le scarpe*, I LACE MY shoes.

<sup>d</sup> By a divergence of English and Italian idiom, an Italian reflective verb is often Englished by a neuter verb; as,

*Io mi pento del passato*, I REPENT of the past.

*abusarsi della bontà di uno*, to take advantage of any one's kindness.  
*alterarsi facilmente*, to get easily excited.  
*pentirsi d'aver parlato*, to repent of having spoken.  
*ferirsi in un duello*, to wound one another in a duel.

## VOCABULARY.

*sempre*, always. *quanto*, glove.  
*ieri sera*, last night. *ragazza*, girl.  
*nessuno*, no one.

## READING EXERCISE.

1. La Signora B. si veste sempre alla moda. 2. Quando io era ragazza, mi adattava a tutto. 3. Ieri sera Mongini cantò una canzone, e s' accompagnò colla chitarra. 4. Ella s' è cavati i guanti<sup>b</sup> per sonare il pianoforte. 5. Vi allungherete<sup>c</sup> la vita se sarete<sup>d</sup> sobrii. 6. Non vi ridete<sup>e</sup> mai di nessuno. 7. Sperava ch' egli non s' abusasse<sup>f</sup> della mia bontà. 8. Non ti alterare<sup>g</sup> facilmente. 9. Ti sei pentito d' avere parlato? 10. Si sono feriti<sup>h</sup> in un duello.

## VOCABULARY.

to wonder, <i>maravigliarsi</i> .	to fall asleep, <i>addormentarsi</i> .
to be ashamed, <i>vergognarsi di</i> .	to get ill, <i>ammalarsi</i> .
to rise, get up { <i>alzarsi</i> , <i>levarsi</i> .	to rest, <i>riposarsi</i> .
to feel { <i>well</i> , } <i>sentirsi</i> { <i>bene</i> , <i>unwell</i> , } <i>male</i> .	to get angry { <i>adirarsi</i> , <i>arrabbiarsi</i> .
to awake { <i>svegliarsi</i> , <i>destarsi</i> .	to remember, <i>ricordarsi di</i> .
to go to rest, <i>coricarsi</i> .	to be glad, <i>rallegrarsi di</i> .
to enjoy one's self, <i>divertirsi</i> .	to behave well, <i>diportarsi bene</i> .
to get tired, <i>stancarsi</i> .	to forget { <i>dimenticarsi di</i> , <i>scordarsi di</i> .

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. I wonder<sup>1</sup> — my son is not ashamed<sup>j</sup> to get up  
*che mio figlio*

<sup>a</sup> Note *b*, p. 46; and Note *a* (3), p. 43.

<sup>b</sup> Note *c*, p. 46.

<sup>c</sup> Note *d*, p. 46.

<sup>d</sup> Note *h*, p. 41.

<sup>e</sup> Obs. ii., p. 43.

<sup>f</sup> Note *b*, p. 34.

<sup>g</sup> Note *c*, p. 14.

<sup>h</sup> Obs., p. 46.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that many *neuter verbs* are conjugated in the *reflective* way in Italian, though they are not so in English. The pronoun *si* suffixed to the Infinitive in the vocabulary will indicate to the student that the verb is *reflective*. (See Note *d*, p. 46.)

<sup>j</sup> Note *b*, p. 34.

so late. 2. Sir, he felt<sup>a</sup> unwell last night, but he will  
*così tardi* *ieri sera*

be here immediately. 3. Why<sup>b</sup> did you awake<sup>c</sup> so late  
*subito* *1*

this morning? 4. Because I went to rest late last  
night. 5. Did you enjoy yourself<sup>e</sup> at the concert?  
*al concerto*

6. On-the-contrary; I got tired<sup>e</sup>, and did not fall asleep  
*Anzi*

till this morning. 7. You will get ill<sup>d</sup> if you do not rest  
*che*

enough. 8. Do not get angry,<sup>e</sup> and I will remember  
*abbastanza*

your advice. 9. I am glad<sup>d</sup> to hear that you will  
*del vostro avviso*

behave well in future, and I hope you will not forget  
*futuro*

— your promise.  
*della vostra promessa*

#### QUESTIONS.

Che s' allunga l' uomo sobrio? 5\*.—Chi s' ammala? 7.  
—A che ora v' alzavate quando eravate in campagna? 1.  
—Che vi siete cavato per sonare il pianoforte? 4\*.—Con  
che s' è accompagnata quella signora che cantò ieri  
sera? 3\*.—Quando si coricheranno i fanciulli? 4.—Vi  
siete divertito più in città o in campagna? 5.—Vi ri-  
cordate in che giorno siete arrivato a Londra? 9.—Vi  
sentite bene o male? 2.

<sup>a</sup> Note *d*, p. 15.

<sup>c</sup> Note *h*, p. 15; and Note *i*, p. 47.

<sup>e</sup> Obs. (ii.), p. 43.

<sup>b</sup> Note *e*, p. 31.

<sup>d</sup> Note *i*, p. 47.

<sup>f</sup> Note *a* (3), p. 43.

## PASSIVE VERBS.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. An *active verb* is rendered *passive* in Italian in the same way as in English, that is, by a combination of the verb *essere*, in all its moods, tenses, and persons, and the Past Participle of the active verb; as,

(Active.) *Il padre PUNISCE il figlio*, the father punishes the son.

(Passive.) *Il figlio È PUNITO<sup>a</sup> dal<sup>b</sup> padre*, the son is punished by the father.

2. In Italian, however, the passive meaning is very often, in the 3rd person of both numbers, obtained by the reflective construction; *i.e.*, by employing *si*<sup>c</sup> in all moods and tenses, using the auxiliary *essere* for the compound tenses. In this case, the verb must be in the *singular* or *plural* number, according to the number of the noun with which the *si* is employed; as,

*Lo scolare si castiga*, the pupil is punished (*literally*, the pupil punishes himself).

*Le perle si trovano nel mare*, pearls are found in the sea (*literally*, pearls find themselves in the sea).

3. There is another manner of using the active verb reflective along with the little word *si*, which is very remarkable. This word *si*, which, as above noticed, represents all the English pronouns *oneself*, *himself*, *her-*

<sup>a</sup> *Venire*, to come, is frequently used instead of *essere*, to form the simple tenses of *passive* verbs. Thus, we may say, *Il figlio viene punito*, instead of *è punito*; but in compound tenses, *essere* only can be used; as, *Il figlio è stato punito*, the son has been punished.

<sup>b</sup> The preposition which follows the Passive Past Participle is *da*, and sometimes *per*.

<sup>c</sup> The passive meaning is generally obtained by the reflective construction with *si*, when we wish to point to the action received by the object in an indeterminate manner, without reference to the subject; as,

*Nelle scuole si ammaestra la gioventù*, youth is taught in schools. To use *essere* in such a case, and say, *Nelle scuole la gioventù è ammaestrata*, would denote merely an accomplished fact, and not a subsisting state.



*self, itself, themselves*, is constantly used with the reflective verb in the third person of both numbers to express the meaning of the English words *one, you, they, people*<sup>a</sup> (in the sense of *the world in general*); as,

<i>one</i> praises virtue	} <i>si loda la virtù.</i>
<i>they</i> praise virtue	
<i>people</i> praise virtue	
<i>we</i> praise virtue	

<i>one</i> loves one's friends	} <i>si amano gli amici.</i>
<i>we</i> love our friends	
<i>people</i> love their friends	
<i>they</i> love their friends	

That is, literally, *virtue praises itself; friends love themselves*.

4. This idiomatic use of *si* with the *reflective verb* is of the most constant occurrence in Italian. It must however be observed, that the words *we* and *they*, as used in the above examples, may also be turned into Italian by employing the verb in the 1st and 3rd persons plural; as,

*Amiamo gli amici*, *we* (*indef.*) love our friends.

*Lozano la virtù*, *they* (*indef.*) praise virtue.

5. Sometimes also the pronoun *uno*, or the word *uomo*, man, may be used to represent the English *one*, as above employed; as,

*Uno* (or *l'uomo*) *si avvezza facilmente alla vita oziosa*,

One easily accustoms one's self to an idle life;

but these forms are very seldom employed.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

### OBSERVATIONS.

There are in Italian two classes of impersonal verbs,—

(1.) The true impersonals, which have no subject, and only the forms of the 3rd person singular in all tenses, as

<sup>a</sup> As *si* may have different meanings, the student must pay attention in future not to mistake one for the other. (See also Obs. 2 and 3, and Note c, p. 49.)

in English, with this difference, that in Italian they are generally used without a pronoun; as, *piove*, it rains, from *piovvere*; *gelerà*, it will freeze, from *gelare*.

(2.) Quasi-impersonal verbs, which are used in the 3rd person, both singular and plural,\* and may have a subject expressed. Such verbs, though not properly impersonals, may, in certain cases, be used impersonally. Thus *importare*, to import, concern, is used impersonally in the following sentence:—

*Quelle cose nè a me nè a voi importano,*  
Those things concern neither me nor you.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON THE USE OF THE AUXILIARIES *Avere* AND *Essere* IN THE CONJUGATION OF OTHER VERBS.

1. It has been already said that *avere* is used to form the compound tenses of all *active* verbs, and that *essere* is employed as an auxiliary with *reflective* and *passive* verbs. It remains, therefore, to speak only of *neuter* and *impersonal* verbs.

2. *Neuter* and *impersonal* verbs are conjugated, some of them with *avere*, and some with *essere*; but no certain rules can be given.

3. However, special attention must be paid to the following verbs, which in Italian are conjugated with *essere*, whereas in English they are generally conjugated with 'to have' (*avere*):—

<i>accadere</i> ,	to happen.	<i>partire</i> ,	to set out, depart,
<i>accorrere</i> ,	to run up to.		start.
<i>andare</i> ,	to go.	<i>passare</i> ,	to pass.
<i>arrivare</i> ,	to arrive.	<i>pervenire</i> ,	to arrive.
<i>avvenire</i> ,	to happen.	<i>restare</i> ,	to remain, stay.
<i>cadere</i> ,	to fall.	<i>rimanere</i> ,	
<i>discendere</i> ,	to come down.	<i>riuscire</i> ,	to succeed.
<i>divenire</i> ,	to become.	<i>salire</i> ,	to come up, go up.
<i>diventare</i> ,		<i>stare</i> ,	to stay, stand.
<i>entrare</i> ,	to enter, walk in.	<i>tornare</i> ,	to return.
<i>giungere</i> ,	to reach, arrive at.	<i>uscire</i> ,	to go out.
<i>morire</i> ,	to die.	<i>venire</i> ,	to come.

\* *Ricordarsi*, *rimembrarsi*, and *sovvenirsi*, to recollect, are sometimes used impersonally in the singular; as,

*Ancor mi ricorda essere in Pisa una torre pendente,*  
I still remember that there is a leaning tower in Pisa.

Notice the following examples :—

*Io SONO andato, I have gone.*

*Egli È arrivato, He has arrived.*

4. There is also a distinction to be made with respect to the use of *avere* and *essere*, when the verb is one of those which may, according to the sense in which it is employed, be either a verb *neuter* or *active*; for then in the first instance *essere* is employed, but in the second *avere*; as,—

*Sono fuggito dai miei nemici,*

*I have fled from my enemies.*

*Ho fuggito i miei nemici,*

*I have escaped my enemies.*

*Egli È morto,*

*He is dead.*

*Egli HA morto il nemico,*

*He has killed his enemy.*

5. The verbs *potere*, to be able, *volere*, to be willing, *dovere*, to be obliged, followed by another verb in the Infinitive, may take before them the auxiliary of the second verb; as,

*Non mi son potuto ritenere,*

*I have not been able to restrain myself.*

#### PHRASES.

*combattere di notte*, to fight by night.

*esser<sup>a</sup> abbagliato dalla luce del sole*, to be dazzled by the light of the sun.

*esser battuto col coreggiato*, to be threshed with the flail.

*esser divorato dal lupo*, to be devoured by the wolf.

*esser allagato dalle piogge*, to be inundated by the rains.

*toccare ad uno* (used impersonally), to be one's turn, one's duty, one's business; or, to fall to one's lot.

*accadere una disgrazia* (used impersonally), to happen a misfortune.

*annottare ad un' ora*, to become night at the same time.

#### VOCABULARY.

*occhio*, eye.

*agnello*, lamb.

*una volta*, once.

*campo*, field.

*grano*, corn.

*continuo*, continual.

*generalmente*, generally.

*mondo*, world.

#### READING EXERCISE.

1. Di notte non si combatte. 2. I nostri occhi sono abbagliati dalla luce del sole. 3. Una volta il grano si batteva più generalmente col coreggiato. 4. Ieri

---

\* The Infinitive of all Italian verbs may drop the final vowel *e* before all words, excepting those beginning with *e* followed by a consonant.

l'agnello fu divorato dal lupo. 5. I campi sono stati allagati dalle continue pioggie. 6. Quando toccherà a me, comincerò a parlare. 7. Si crede che sia accaduta una disgrazia al Signor P. 8. Mai non annotta in tutto il mondo ad<sup>a</sup> un' ora.

## VOCABULARY.

to wear, *portare*.  
to found, *fondare*.  
to be necessary, *bisognare*.  
to thunder, *tuonare*.  
to rain, *piovare*.  
to snow, *nevicare*.

to freeze, *gelare*.  
to thaw, *digelare*.  
to hail, *grandinare*.  
to be enough, *bastare*.  
to mind, *badare*.  
to drop, *cadere*.

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. Where is — coral found<sup>b</sup>? 2. In the Mediterranean<sup>2</sup>  
*il corallo* *Nel mediterraneo*  
Sea<sup>1</sup>, and many ornaments of coral were formerly  
*mare molti ornamenti altre volte*  
worn<sup>b</sup> by Italian<sup>2</sup> ladies<sup>1</sup>. 3. By whom was Rome  
*dalle italiane Signore Da chi*  
founded? 4. It is generally believed that it was  
founded<sup>c</sup> by<sup>d</sup> Romulus. 5. What language was spoken  
*Romolo*  
by the ancient Romans? 6. — Latin. 7. Would it be  
*dagli antichi Romani Il latino*  
necessary<sup>e</sup> to study much to learn — Italian? 8. One  
*per l'italiano*  
learns<sup>f</sup> Italian more quickly than — German. 9. It  
*più presto del*

<sup>a</sup> The preposition *a*, to, and the conjunctions *o*, or, *e*, and, generally, though not necessarily, take a *d* after them when followed by a word beginning with a vowel.

<sup>b</sup> Obs. 2, p. 49.

<sup>c</sup> Note *b*, p. 34.

<sup>d</sup> Note *b*, p. 49.

<sup>e</sup> The verbs *bastare*, to be enough; *bisognare* or *convenire*, to be necessary; *desiderare*, to wish; *dovere*, to be obliged; *fare*, to do, make; *lasciare*, to leave, allow; *parere*, to seem, appear; *potere*, to be able; *sapere*, to know; *sentire*, to feel, hear; *solere*, to be accustomed; *udire*, to hear; *vedere*, to see; when followed by an Infinitive, take no preposition after them; as, *Bisogna studiare tutti i giorni*, it is necessary to study every day.

<sup>f</sup> Obs. 3, p. 49.

- thunders,<sup>a</sup> perhaps it will rain. 10. It snowed last night.  
*ieri sera*  
 11. Yes, and this morning<sup>b</sup> it froze<sup>a</sup>. 12. But it has  
 thawed already. 13. Does it rain often in Italy?  
*già spesso*  
 14. In Italy it does not rain so often, but it hails more  
*così*  
 often than in England. 15. This is enough for to-day;  
*che Questo*  
 we shall speak more<sup>2</sup> Italian<sup>1</sup> to-morrow. 16. Mind,  
*di più*  
 you have dropped some papers.  
 [to you are dropped<sup>c</sup>] *delle carte*

## QUESTIONS.

Da che sono abbagliati i nostri occhi? 2\*.—Con che si batteva generalmente il grano? 3\*.—Da chi fu divorato l'agnello? 4\*.—Dove si trova il corallo? 2.—Da chi si crede che sia stata fondata Roma? 4.—Che lingua si parla in Germania? 5.—Pioveva ieri?—È nevicato molto l'inverno passato?—In che stagione gela?—Che vi è caduto? 16.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

## OBSERVATIONS ON IRREGULAR VERBS.

1. Italian verbs are always *regular*<sup>a</sup> in the following five tenses, which are thus formed:—

The IMPERFECT INDICATIVE, by changing the Infinitive terminations—

*are* into *ava* or *avo*, *avi*, *ava*; *avamo*, *avate*, *avano*.  
*ere* „ *eva* or *evo*, *evi*, *eva*; *evamo*, *evate*, *evano*<sup>o</sup>.  
*ire* „ *iva* or *ivo*, *ivi*, *iva*; *ivamo*, *ivate*, *ivano*<sup>f</sup>.

<sup>a</sup> Obs (1), p. 50.

<sup>b</sup> Note c, p. 30.

<sup>c</sup> See Obs. (2) and Obs. 3, p. 51.

<sup>d</sup> Note c, p. 24.

<sup>e</sup> Except *essere*. The forms of *essere* are not reducible to rule; and it must be regarded as an exception to the scheme here given.

<sup>f</sup> The first vowel of the Infinitive termination, *a* for the 1st

The FUTURE, by changing the Infinitive terminations—

<i>are</i> into	<i>erò, erai,erà ;</i>	<i>eremo, erete, eranno<sup>a</sup>.</i>
<i>ere</i> „	<i>erò, erai,erà ;</i>	<i>eremo, ereto, eranno.</i>
<i>ire</i> „	<i>irò, irai,irà ;</i>	<i>iremo, irete, iranno.</i>

The CONDITIONAL, by changing the Infinitive terminations—

<i>are</i> into	<i>erei, eresti, erebbe ;</i>	<i>eremmo, ereste, erebbero<sup>a</sup>.</i>
<i>ere</i> „	<i>erei, eresti, erebbe ;</i>	<i>eremmo, ereste, erebbero.</i>
<i>ire</i> „	<i>irei, iresti, irebbe ;</i>	<i>iremmo, ireste, irebbero.</i>

The IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, by changing the Infinitive terminations—

<i>are</i> into	<i>assi, assi, asse ;</i>	<i>assimo, aste, assero<sup>b</sup>.</i>
<i>ere</i> „	<i>essi, essi, esse ;</i>	<i>essimo, este, essero.</i>
<i>ire</i> „	<i>issi, issi, isse ;</i>	<i>issimo, iste, issero.</i>

The PRESENT PARTICIPLE, by changing the Infinitive terminations—

<i>are</i> into	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{ando}^c \\ \textit{ante} \end{array} \right.$	<i>ere</i> into	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{endo} \\ \textit{ente} \end{array} \right.$	<i>ire</i> into	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{endo}^d \\ \textit{ente}^e \end{array} \right.$
-----------------	---	-----------------	---	-----------------	---

2. All the irregularities of verbs, therefore, are confined to the Present and Perfect of the Indicative, the Imperative, the Present Subjunctive, and the Past Participle. But a verb may be irregular in only one, two, or

conjugation, *e* for the 2nd, and *i* for the 3rd, is called the *characteristic*. It generally constitutes the only difference between the conjugations in the terminations of all those tenses and persons which are always regular. In the 1st conjugation, *e* is substituted instead of the characteristic *a* throughout the Future and Conditional; and in the 3rd, *e* instead of *i* is used in the Present Participle.

<sup>a</sup> The Future of all verbs has invariably the terminations *rò, rai, &c.*; and the Conditional *rei, resti, &c.* We shall, however, find, in the irregular verbs, that these two tenses are subject to contraction.

<sup>b</sup> Except *dare*, to give, and *stare*, to stand, which make *dessi, &c.*, and *stessi, &c.*

<sup>c</sup> Note *a*, p. 26.

<sup>d</sup> Note *f*, p. 54.

<sup>e</sup> Note *e*, p. 38.

three of these tenses ; and even when it is so in all, the irregularities do not extend to all the persons.

3. When a verb is irregular in the Perfect tense, it is so in three persons only, the other three being always regular.

The three irregular persons are the 1st and 3rd persons singular and the 3rd person plural. The two last are invariably formed in the following manner: the 1st person singular always ends in *i*, as, *lessi*, I read ; by changing this *i* into *e* we have the 3rd person singular, *lesse*, he or she read ; and by adding *ro* to the 3rd person singular, we have the 3rd person plural, *lessero*, they read.

The three persons which are always regular, therefore, are the 2nd singular, which is formed from the Infinitive by changing *are* into *asti*<sup>a</sup>, *ere* into *esti*, and *ire* into *isti* ; the 1st plural, which is formed by changing *are* into *ammo*<sup>b</sup>, *ere* into *emmo*, *ire* into *immo* ; and the 2nd plural, which is formed by changing *are* into *aste*<sup>c</sup>, *ere* into *este*, and *ire* into *iste*<sup>d</sup>. Thus, from *leggere*, to read, which has *lessi* in the Perfect, we shall have—

Singular.	Plural.
<i>lessi</i> , I read.	<i>leggemmo</i> , we read.
<i>leggesti</i> , thou didst read.	<i>leggeste</i> , you read.
<i>lesse</i> , he read.	<i>lessero</i> , they read.

N.B.—These observations are of great utility in conjugating irregular verbs ; for, having learnt the 1st person singular of the Perfect, the Past Participle, and the singular and 1st person plural of the Present Indicative of any verb, the student will be able to conjugate all the other tenses and persons, by referring to Notes *b*, *c*, *d*, p. 25, and *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, p. 26, for the 1st conjugation ; and to Notes *c*, *e*, p. 32, and *a*, p. 33, for the 2nd and 3rd conjugations.

<sup>a</sup> Except *dare*, to give, and *stare*, to stand, which make *desti* and *stesti*.

<sup>b</sup> Except *dare* and *stare*, which make *demmo* and *stemmo*.

<sup>c</sup> Except *dare* and *stare*, which make *deste* and *steste*.

<sup>d</sup> Note *f*, p. 54.

Obs.—The irregular verbs of the 1st conjugation are : *andare*, to go; *dare*, to give; *fare*<sup>a</sup>, to do, make; *stare*, to stand, stay; and some of their derivatives, which are conjugated like them.

## IRREGULAR VERBS—FIRST CONJUGATION.

### CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *ANDARE*.

Infinitive—*andare*, to go.

Indicative Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>eo</i> or <i>vado</i> , <sup>b</sup> I go.	<i>andiamo</i> , <sup>c</sup> we go.
<i>vai</i> , thou goest.	<i>andate</i> , you go.
<i>va</i> , he goes.	<i>vanno</i> , <sup>d</sup> they go.
Indicative Imperfect... <i>andava</i> , <sup>e</sup> I was going.	
„ Perfect..... <i>andai</i> , I went.	
„ Future..... <i>andrò</i> , <sup>f</sup> I shall go.	
Conditional— <i>andrei</i> , I should go.	

Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>andiamo</i> , let us go.
<i>va'</i> , go (thou).	<i>andate</i> , go (you).
<i>vada</i> , let him go.	<i>vadano</i> , let them go.

Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io vada</i> , that I may go.	<i>che andiamo</i> , that we may go.
<i>che tu vada</i> , that thou mayest go.	<i>che andiate</i> , that you may go.
<i>ch' egli vada</i> , that he may go.	<i>che vadano</i> , that they may go.

<sup>a</sup> *Fare* is in many grammars classed with the verbs of the 2nd conjugation, because it is contracted from *facere*, which is now obsolete. On account of its similarity in the terminations with the other three irregular verbs above mentioned, it is here considered as belonging to the 1st conjugation. The Imperfect Indicative and Subjunctive, as well as the Present Participle and the regular persons of the Perfect of this verb, are conjugated regularly, like *facere*. Some persons also of the Present Indicative and Subjunctive, and of the Imperative, are formed according to *facere*.

<sup>b</sup> *Vado* comes from the Latin verb *vadere*, to go; and this form is used in forming the Imperative and the Present Subjunctive, according to the rules given for the 2nd conjugation.

<sup>c</sup> See N.B., p. 56.

<sup>d</sup> The singular and 3rd person plural of the Present Indicative of *andare*, *dare*, *fare*, and *stare*, are all identical with the same persons of the verb *avere*, except that the first letter *h* is changed respectively into *v*, *d*, *f*, or *st*. (See Present Indicative of *avere*, p. 19.)

<sup>e</sup> Obs. 1., p. 54.

<sup>f</sup> Note a, p. 55.





## Imperative.

No first person singular.	<i>diámo</i> , let us give.
<i>da'</i> , give (thou).	<i>dáte</i> , give (you).
<i>día</i> , let him give.	<i>diano</i> or <i>dieno</i> , let them give.

## Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io díá</i> , that I may give.	<i>che diámo</i> , that we may give.
<i>che tu díá</i> , that thou mayest give.	<i>che díáte</i> , that you may give.
<i>ch' egli díá</i> , that he may give.	<i>che diano</i> or <i>dieno</i> , that they may [give.

## Imperfect.

<i>s' io déssi</i> , if I might give.	<i>se déssimo</i> , if we might give.
<i>se tu déssi</i> , if thou mightest give.	<i>se déste</i> , if you might give.
<i>se désse</i> , if he might give.	<i>se déssero</i> , if they might give.

Present Participle { *dándo* } giving.  
 { *dánte* }  
 Past Participle—*dáto*, given.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere dato*, to have given.

Indicative Present—*ho dato*, I have given.

&c. &c. &c.

Obs.—Only *ridare*, to give again, and *addarsi*, to perceive, are conjugated in the same way as *dare*.

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *FARE*.

Infinitive—*fare*<sup>a</sup>, to do, make.

## Indicative Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>fo</i> or <i>faccio</i> , I do.	<i>facciamo</i> , we do.
<i>fái</i> , thou doest or dost.	<i>fáte</i> , you do.
<i>fa</i> , he does.	<i>fanno</i> , they do.

Imperfect—*faceva*, I was doing.

## Perfect or Past.

<i>féci</i> , I did.	<i>facémmo</i> , we did.
<i>facesti</i> , thou didst.	<i>faceste</i> , you did.
<i>féce</i> , he did.	<i>fécero</i> , they did.

Future—*farò*, I shall do.

Conditional—*farei*, I should do.

<sup>a</sup> Note a, p. 57.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>facciamo</i> , let us do.
<i>fa'</i> , do (thou).	<i>fate</i> , do (you).
<i>faccia</i> , let him do.	<i>facciano</i> , let them do.

## Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io faccia</i> , that I may do.	<i>che facciamo</i> , that we may do.
<i>che tu faccia</i> , that thou mayest do.	<i>che facciate</i> , that you may do.
<i>ch' egli faccia</i> , that he may do.	<i>che facciano</i> , that they may do.

Imperfect—*s' io facessi*, if I might do.

Present Participle { *facendo* } doing.

Past Participle—*fatto*, done.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere fatto*, to have done.

Indicative Present—*ho fatto*, I have done.

&c.

&c.

&c.

Obs.—The compounds of *fare*—*affarsi*, to suit; *assuefare*, to accustom; *confarsi*, to agree; *contraffare*, to counterfeit; *disfare*, to undo; *liquefare*, to melt; *misfare*, to do wrong; *rifare*, to do again; *sopraffare*, to overpower; *soddisfare*, to satisfy; *stupefare*, to stupify; *strafare*, to do more than is necessary, &c., are conjugated like *fare*<sup>b</sup>.

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *STARE*<sup>c</sup>.

Infinitive—*stare*, to stand.

Indicative Present.

<i>sto</i> , I stand.	<i>stiamo</i> , we stand.
<i>stai</i> , thou standest.	<i>state</i> , you stand.
<i>sta</i> , he stands.	<i>stanno</i> , they stand.

Imperfect—*stava*, I was standing.

<sup>a</sup> *Fare* and its compounds are the only verbs of the 1st conjugation that are irregular in the Past Participle.

<sup>b</sup> *Fare*, followed by a name of profession or trade, means to 'exercise,' 'practise,' and is rendered in English by the verb *to be*; as, *Io farò il medico*, I shall be a doctor. *Fare*, immediately followed by an Infinitive, has the meaning of the English 'to have,' 'cause,' or 'let,' in phrases like the following:—*Farò fabbricare una casa*, I shall have a house built.

<sup>c</sup> *Stare* is conjugated like *dare*, by simply changing *d* into *st*. *Stare* has but one form in the Perfect, *stetti*, &c.

### Perfect or Past.

*stétti.* I stood.

*stémno.* we stood.

*stésti*, thou stoodest.

*stéste*, you stood.

*stétte*, he stood.

*stéttero*, they stood.

Future—*starò*², I shall stand.

Conditional—*staréi*. I should stand.

**Imperative.**

**No first person singular.**

*stiámo*, let us stand.

*sta'*, stand (thou).

*státe*, stand (you).

*stía*, let him stand.

*stiano*, let them stand.

### Subjunctive Present.

*ch' io stia*, that I may stand.

*che stiámo*, that we may stand.

*che tu stia*, that thou mayest

*che stiate, that you may stand.*

[stand.

*che stiano* or *stieno*, that they

*ch' eqli stía*, that he may stand.

[may stand.

**Imperfect.**

*s' io stéssi*, if I might stand.

*ae stéssimo*, if we might stand.

*se tu stéssi*, if thou mightest stand.

ae stéste. if you might stand.

*se stésse*, if he might stand.

*se stéssero*, if they might stand.

Present Participle { *stándo* } standing.  
                              { *stánte* }

Past Participle—*státo*, stood.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

**Infinitive**—*essere stato*, to have stood.

**Indicative Present**—*sono stato* or *stata*.<sup>b</sup> I have stood.

&c.

**&c.**

&c.

Obs.—*Ristare*, to stop, *distare*, to be distant, *soprastare*, to temporise, *contrastare*, to stand close against, are conjugated like *stare*.<sup>c</sup> *Soprastare* or *sovastare*, to impend, to rule, *contrastare*, to dispute, and all other verbs derived from *stare*, are regular, like *parlare*.

N.B.—All the verbs which are conjugated like *andare, dare, fare,* and *stare*, have their final vowel accented in the first and third

<sup>a</sup> Note e, p. 58.

<sup>b</sup> Observe that the compound tenses of *stare* are identical in form with those of *essere*. The reason of this is, that *essere* having lost its own Past Participle (which was *suto*) has borrowed the Past Participle of *stare*, which likewise forms its own compound tenses with *essere*.

\* *Stare* and *essere*, followed by the preposition *per*, have the meaning of 'to be on the point of'; as,

*Sto* } *per partire*, I am on the point of leaving.  
*Sono* }

persons singular of the Present Indicative; as, *rivò*, I go again; *ridà*, he gives again; *rifà*, he does again; *ristò*, I stop. The compounds of *andare* and *fare*, however, do not require any accent when the forms *vado* and *faccio* are used; as, *rivado*, I go again; *rifaccio*, I am doing again.

## PHRASES.

*andare carponi*, to go on all fours.    *andare a piedi*, to go on foot.  
 „ *in barca*, to go in a boat.    „ *a cavallo*, to go on horseback.  
 „ *a caccia*, to go a-hunting.    „ *per vapore*, to go by steamboat.  
 „ *a pescare*, to go a-fishing.    „ *per strada ferrata*, to go by railway  
*fare una girata in carrozza*, to go out for a drive.  
*andare giù di tavola*, to leave the table.  
*stare composto a tavola*, to sit properly at table.  
*fare colazione*, to breakfast.  
*dare il buon giorno*, to say good morning.  
*andare d'accordo*, to agree.  
*dare retta*, to heed, lend an ear to.  
*andare in collera*, to put one's self in a passion.

## VOCABULARY.

*prima di*, before.  
*camminare*, to walk.  
*ritornare*, to return.

*Carlino*, (little) Charles.  
*suggerimento*, advice.

## READING EXERCISE.

1. I fanciulli prima di camminare vanno carponi.<sup>a</sup>  
 2. In campagna io andava spesso in barca, a caccia ed a pescare. 3. Siete<sup>b</sup> andato in città a piedi od<sup>a</sup> a cavallo? 4. Andai per vapore, e ritornai a casa per strada ferrata. 5. Domani farò una girata per la città in carrozza. 6. Signor Carlino, non andate giù di tavola, state composto, e quando avrete fatto colazione andrete a<sup>c</sup> dare il buon giorno al babbo. 7. Bramo che andiate<sup>d</sup> d'accordo coi fratelli; se deste<sup>e</sup> retta ai miei suggerimenti, non andrete in collera per niente.

<sup>a</sup> Note a, p. 53.

<sup>b</sup> Obs. 3, p. 51.

<sup>c</sup> Verbs denoting *teaching*, as *insegnare*, to teach; *learning*, as *imparare*, to learn; *attaining*, as *pervenire*, to reach; *insisting*, as *insistere*, to insist; *remaining*, as *stare*, to stay; *continuing*, as *seguire*, to follow on; *helping*, as *aiutare*, to help; *engaging*, as *impiegare*, to employ; *accustoming*, as *abituarsi*, to accustom one's self; *encouraging*, as *incoraggiare*, to put in heart; *obliging*, as *costringere*, to compel, as well as all verbs denoting *motion*, require the preposition *a* before the Infinitive coming after them.

<sup>d</sup> Note b, p. 34.

<sup>e</sup> Note c, p. 56.

## VOCABULARY.

to do, make, *fare*.

to get ready, *allestirsi*².

to be right } of a thing done { *andare male,*  
to be wrong } { *andare bene.*

to go for a walk, *andare a spasso*.

to pay a visit, *fare una visita*.

to live, reside, *stare, abitare.*

to be well	} of health	{ <i>stare bene,</i> <i>stare male.</i>
to be unwell		

to intend, *fare conto di*.

to be fine weather, *fare bel tempo*.

to be bad weather, *fare cattivo tempo*.

to start. *partire*.

### TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. What are<sup>b</sup> you doing? 2. I am<sup>a</sup> getting ready  
for a walk. 3. Was -<sup>3</sup> your<sup>4</sup> translation<sup>5</sup> wrong<sup>2</sup>?  
*la la vostra traduzione*
4. No, it was right; I only<sup>2</sup> made<sup>1</sup> two mistakes.  
*sbagli*
5. Has<sup>d</sup> your brother gone for a walk? 6. No, he  
has gone to<sup>e</sup> pay a visit to - Mrs. G., who lives in  
*alla Signora che*  
(the) country. 7. How do you do, my<sup>2</sup> friend<sup>1</sup>?  
*Come [stand] mio amico*
8. I am very well: how have you been?  
[I stand] [have you always been<sup>f</sup> well?]
9. I was unwell yesterday, but to-day I am  
[I stood] [I stand]

<sup>a</sup> Note *i*, p. 47.

<sup>b</sup> Note *a*, p. 25.

\* *Stare* may be used to render the English verb *to be*, used with the Present Participle of another verb, but this can only be done with verbs denoting rest; as, *sto leggendo*, I am reading; *sto pensando*, I am thinking. To use *stare* to translate *to be* in sentences like *I am running*, *I am walking*, would be nonsense, for *stare* means to stay in one spot, and not to move from it while acting. This peculiar construction should be used sparingly by beginners. *Mi allestisco*, I get ready, is simpler than *sto allestendomi*, and is equally correct.

<sup>d</sup> Obs. 3, p. 51

<sup>e</sup> Note c, p. 62.

<sup>1</sup> Note b, p. 61.

better. 10. When do you intend going to Italy?  
*meglio* *in*

11. I intend going to Italy next autumn, should the  
[if it shall

weather be fine. 12. Even should it be bad  
 make<sup>a</sup> fine weather] *Anche* [if it might make]

weather, you would do well to start (all)  
*meglio* (*lit.* better)

the same, because when it is bad weather in  
*lo stesso* [it makes]

England, it is often fine in Italy.  
[makes] *bello*

### QUESTIONS.

Come vanno i fanciulli prima di camminare? 1\*.—  
 Come sta vostra sorella? 7.—Che tempo faceva ieri? 11.  
 —Come andrete a casa? 4\*.—A che ora avete fatto colazione? 6\*.—È andato vostro padre in città a piedi od in carrozza? 3\*.—Dove fate conto d'andare domani? 10.  
 —Quante visite farete?—Che avete fatto, quando eravate in campagna? 2\*.—Come bisogna stare a tavola? 6\*.  
 —Andava bene la vostra traduzione? 4.—Quanti sbagli avete fatti? 4.

### IRREGULAR VERBS—SECOND CONJUGATION.

#### OBSERVATIONS.

1. In order that the irregularity of verbs of the second conjugation may be perfectly understood, it is necessary to observe that they differ in the accenting of their Infinitives, some being pronounced *long*, that is, with the accent on the penultimate, or last syllable but one; as, *temére, godére, &c.*; and others *short*, viz., with the accent on the antepenultimate, or last syllable but two; as, *crédere, véndere, &c.*

2. The following, with their derivatives, are the only verbs which have the Infinitive in *ére* long:—

<sup>a</sup> Note A p. 41.

<i>avére</i> , to have.	<i>potére</i> , to be able.
<i>cadére</i> , to fall.	<i>rimanére</i> , to remain.
<i>calére</i> , to care for.	<i>sapére</i> , to know.
<i>dissuadére</i> , to dissuade.	<i>sedére</i> , to sit.
<i>dolére</i> , to pain, ache.	<i>solére</i> , to be accustomed.
<i>dovére</i> , to owe, be obliged.	<i>tacére</i> , to be silent.
<i>giacére</i> , to lie down.	<i>tenére</i> , to hold, keep.
<i>godére</i> , to enjoy.	<i>temére</i> , to fear.
<i>parére</i> , to appear, seem.	<i>valére</i> , to be worth.
<i>persuadére</i> , to persuade.	<i>vedére</i> , to see.
<i>piacére</i> , to please, like.	<i>volére</i> , to be willing.

3. As the above verbs occur very frequently, both in speaking and writing, and, with the exception of *temére* and *godére* (which are conjugated like *crédere*), are all of them irregular, it is very necessary that the student should begin by learning these practically. We shall therefore give three exercises upon them, and afterwards proceed to explain the irregularities of the verbs in *ère* short.

### I.—CONJUGATION OF IRREGULAR VERBS IN *ÈRE* (long).

[N.B.—We have chosen *potére*, *volére*, *dovére*, and *sapére* for the first Exercise, they being of greater importance than the other verbs in *ère* long.]

*Potére*, to be able.

Infinitive—*potére*, to be able.

Indicative Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>póso</i> , I can, or am able.	<i>possiamo</i> , we can.
<i>puoi</i> , thou canst.	<i>potéte</i> , you can.
<i>può</i> , he can.	<i>póssono</i> , <sup>a</sup> they can.

Indicative Imperfect ... *potéva*, I could, or was able.

„ Perfect ..... *potéi*, I could.

„ Future ..... *potrà*,<sup>b</sup> I shall be able.

<sup>a</sup> Note c, page 32.

<sup>b</sup> The Future and Conditional of *potére* are contracted, in order that they may not be confounded with *poterò* and *poterei*, which are the Future and Conditional of *potare*, to prune. See Note a, p. 55.





## Conditional.

<i>vorrei</i> , I should be willing.	<i>vorremmo</i> , we should be willing.
<i>vorresti</i> , thou wouldst be willing.	<i>vorreste</i> , you would be willing.
<i>vorrebbe</i> , he would be willing.	<i>vorrebbero</i> , they would be willing.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>vogliamo</i> , let us be willing.
<i>vogli</i> , be (thou) willing.	<i>vogliate</i> , be (you) willing.
<i>voglia</i> , let him be willing.	<i>vogliano</i> , let them be willing.

## Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io voglia</i> , that I may be wil-	<i>che vogliamo</i> , that we may be wil-
<i>che tu voglia</i> , that thou &c. [ling.	<i>che vogliate</i> , that you &c. [ling.
<i>ch' egli voglia</i> , that he &c.	<i>che vogliano</i> , that they &c.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io voléssi*, if I might be willing.

Present Participle { *volendo* } being willing.  
                               { *volente* }

Past Participle—*voluto*, been willing.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere voluto*, to have been willing.  
                   &c.                   &c.                   &c.

OBS.—*Disvolere*, to refuse, to say no, and *rivolere*, to wish again, are conjugated like *volere*.

*Dovere*,<sup>a</sup> to owe, to be obliged (ought, must).

Infinitive—*dovere*, to owe.

## Indicative Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>dèvo</i> or <i>dèbbo</i> , I owe.	<i>dobbiamo</i> , we owe.
<i>dèvi</i> , thou owest.	<i>dovete</i> , you owe.
<i>dève</i> or <i>dèbbe</i> , he owes.	<i>dévono</i> or <i>dèbbono</i> , they owe.

Indicative Imperfect... *dovéva*, I owed.

„ Perfect..... *dovéi* or *dovétti*<sup>b</sup>, I did owe.

„ Future..... *dovrà*, I shall owe.

Conditional—*dovréi*, I should owe.

<sup>a</sup> *Dovere* = 'to owe,' in the sense of 'to be indebted,' and 'to be obliged,' when it denotes duty or necessity. *Dovere* may be used in all persons, instead of the impersonal verb *bisognare* = to be necessary.

<sup>b</sup> *Dovere* has two forms in the Perfect, like *credere*. See p. 32.

## No Imperative Mood.

## Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io débba</i> , that I may owe.	<i>che dobbiámo</i> , that we may owe.
<i>che tu débba</i> , that thou &c.	<i>che dobbiáte</i> , that you may owe.
<i>ch' egli débba</i> , that he &c.	<i>che débbero</i> , that they may owe.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io dovessi*, if I might owe.

Present Participle— $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{dovendo} \\ \text{dovente} \end{array} \right\}$  owing.

Past Participle—*dovuto*, owed.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere dovuto*, to have owed.  
&c. &c. &c.

N.B.—The verb *dovere* has, besides the forms above given,—

## In the Indicative Present,

<i>déggio</i> ,	<i>deggiámo</i> ,
<i>dái</i> ,	_____
<i>dée</i> or <i>dé</i> ,	<i>deggiono</i> or <i>déono</i> or <i>dénno</i> .

## And in the Subjunctive Present,

<i>ch' io déggia</i> ,	_____
<i>che tu déggia</i> ,	_____
<i>ch' egli déggia</i> ,	<i>che déggiano</i> .

OBS.—The verb *ridovere*, to be obliged again, is conjugated like *dovere*.

*Sapere*,<sup>a</sup> to know, to be acquainted with.<sup>b</sup>

Infinitive—*sapere*, to know.<sup>c</sup>

## Indicative Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>so</i> , I know.	<i>sappiámo</i> , we know.
<i>sái</i> , thou knowest.	<i>sapíte</i> , you know.
<i>sa</i> , he knows.	<i>sánno</i> , they know.

<sup>a</sup> *Sapere* is conjugated like *avere*, the only change being the substitution of *s* for *h* and *p* for *b* and *v*.

<sup>b</sup> *Sapere* = 'to know' through the mind. When we wish to express 'to know' through the senses, we use *conoscere*. Thus we say, *conoscere una persona*, *una città*, *un fiore*, &c., to know a person, a city, a flower, &c.; and *sapere un verbo*, *una storiella*, *la lezione*, &c., to know a verb, a story, the lesson, &c.

<sup>c</sup> *Sapere* has often the meaning of *to be able*, in expressions like the following :—*Ella sa sonare*, she can play. *Egli non mi ha saputo dire niente*, he could not tell me anything. *Non vi saprei dire come fosse*, I could not possibly tell you how it was.

Indicative Imperfect—*sapeva*, I did know.

Perfect or Past.

*séppi*,<sup>a</sup> I knew.

*sapémmo*, we knew.

*sapésti*, thou knewest.

*sapéste*, you knew.

*séppe*, he knew.

*séppero*, they knew.

Future—*saprò*, I shall know.

Conditional—*sapréi*, I should know.

Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.

*sappiámò*, let us know.

*sáppi*, know (thou).

*sappiáte*, know (you).

*sáppia*, let him know.

*sáppiano*, let them know.

Subjunctive Present.

*ch' io sappia*, that I may know.

*che sappiámò*, that we may know.

*che tu sappia*, that thou &c.

*che sappiáte*, that you &c.

*ch' egli sappia*, that he &c.

*che sappiano*, that they &c.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io sapéssi*, if I might know.

Present Participle—*sapéndo*,<sup>b</sup> knowing.

Past Participle—*sapúto*, known.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere sapúto*, to have known.

&c.

&c.

&c.

Obs.—*Risapere*, to come to know again, is conjugated like *sapere*.

PHRASES.

*potere vedere*, to be able to see.

*volere bene ad uno*, to be fond of a person.

*si vuole<sup>c</sup> che la pace sia fatta*, it is believed that peace is made.

*ci vuole<sup>d</sup> tempo a fare una cosa*, it requires time to do a thing.

VOCABULARY.

*stella*, star.

*prima che*, before.

*a cagione*, in consequence.

*da*, for.

*alcuni*, some.

*un ignorante*, an illiterate man.

READING EXERCISE.

1. Di giorno non si<sup>e</sup> possono vedere le stelle a cagione della luce del sole. 2. Io voglio bene a mia madre.

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 3, p. 56.

<sup>b</sup> No other form.

<sup>c</sup> *volere*, used impersonally with *si*, means 'to be believed'.

<sup>d</sup> *volere*, used impersonally with *ci*, means 'to require'.

<sup>e</sup> Obs. 3, p. 49.

3. Si<sup>a</sup> vuole che la pace sia fatta. 4. Ci vorranno<sup>b</sup> alcuni mesi prima ch'<sup>c</sup> io possa parlare italiano. 5. Che vorreste<sup>d</sup> da colazione? 6. Io non devo<sup>e</sup> niente a mio fratello. 7. Si deve<sup>e</sup> studiare<sup>f</sup> per imparare. 8. Gl' ignoranti non sanno<sup>g</sup> scrivere.

## VOCABULARY.

to make one's self understood, <i>farsi capire.</i>	to have a good smell, <i>sapere di buono.</i>
to forget, <i>dimenticare.</i>	to have no smell, <i>non sapere di niente.</i>
to be able (can), <i>potere.</i>	to be very tired, <i>non ne potere più.</i>
to wish, <i>volere.</i>	to mean, <i>voler dire.</i>
to be obliged (must), <i>dovere.</i>	
to smell, <i>sapere.</i>	

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. Can you speak Italian? 2. I (can) speak it<sup>a</sup> a  
[Do you speak] *lo un*  
little. 3. Once I could make<sup>f</sup> myself understood<sup>f</sup>  
*poco Una volta*

<sup>a</sup> Note c, p. 69.<sup>b</sup> Note d, p. 69.

<sup>c</sup> The following pronouns and conjunctions require the Subjunctive after them:—

<i>ansi che</i>	} before.	<i>purchè</i>	} providing.
<i>avanti che</i>		<i>qualora</i>	
<i>dinanzi che</i>		<i>solo che</i>	
<i>innanzi che</i>		<i>per tema che</i>	
<i>davanti che</i>	} in order that.	<i>ove</i>	} if.
<i>prima che</i>		<i>dove</i>	
<i>acciochè</i>		<i>quando</i>	
<i>affinchè</i>		<i>come</i>	
<i>chè or perchè</i>	} admitting that.	<i>quasi</i>	} as if.
<i>chiunque</i> , whoever.		<i>senza che</i>	
<i>qualunque</i> , whatever.		<i>ovunque</i> , wherever.	
<i>ogniquaivolta</i> , whenever.		<i>ancorchè</i> , although.	
<i>dato che</i>	} if ever.	<i>benchè</i>	} though, although.
<i>caso che</i>		<i>sebbene</i>	
<i>supposto che</i>		<i>quantunque</i>	
<i>posto che</i>		<i>tuttochè</i>	
<i>se mai</i>	} if ever.	<i>come che</i>	} however.
<i>se pure</i>		<i>avvegnachè</i>	

<sup>d</sup> *Volere* alone, in the sense of 'to wish,' is rendered in English by the verb 'to have' with 'will' or 'would.' <sup>e</sup> Note a, p. 67.

<sup>f</sup> The verb that follows *potere*, *volere*, *dovere*, *fare*, and *sapere*, when signifying 'to be able,' is almost always in the Infinitive. See also Note e, p. 53.

<sup>g</sup> Note c, p. 68.<sup>h</sup> Note a (1), p. 43.

in Italian, but now I have forgotten that beautiful  
*quella bella*

language. 4. I am studying — Italian, and hope  
*i'*

to be able to speak it<sup>a</sup> again. 5. Do you know<sup>b</sup>  
[I shall be able] *lo ancora*

Mr.<sup>c</sup> A. by reputation or by sight? 6. I know him<sup>a</sup>  
*di fama di vista*

personally. 7. Do you know<sup>b</sup> the verbs by heart?  
*di persona i verbi a mente*

8. I do not know them<sup>a</sup> now, but I shall know them<sup>a</sup>  
*li*

— next<sup>2</sup> week<sup>1</sup>. 9. Whoever wishes<sup>d</sup> to speak a  
*la Chiunque una*

language fluently, must<sup>e</sup> have the verbs at (his)  
*correntemente [know] a*

fingers' ends. 10. Has<sup>f</sup> the<sup>2</sup> camelia<sup>3</sup> a good smell<sup>1</sup>?  
*mena dito la*

11. It has no smell. 12. I have been to the end of the  
[in] *fondo delle*

Cascine<sup>g</sup>, and I am very tired. 13. What does *specchio*  
*Che*

mean<sup>h</sup>? 14. It means *looking-glass*.

### QUESTIONS.

Perchè di giorno non si possono vedere le stelle? 1\*.—  
Volete bene a vostra madre? 2\*.—Che bisogna fare per  
imparare la lingua italiana? 9\*.—Quanto ci vorrà avanti  
che possiate parlarla? 4\*.—Quanto vi devo? 6\*.—Può  
vostra zia farsi capire in italiano? 3.—Conoscete la Sig-  
nora B. di persona o di fama? 5.—Avete dimenticato i  
verbi? 8.—Che si deve fare per parlare correntemente  
una lingua? 9.—Che vuol<sup>h</sup> dire, non ne posso più? 12 & 14.

<sup>a</sup> Note *a* (1), p. 43.

<sup>b</sup> Note *b*, p. 68.

<sup>c</sup> Note *f*, p. 29.

<sup>d</sup> Note *c*, p. 70.

<sup>e</sup> 3rd pers. sing. Pres. Ind. of *dovere*.

<sup>f</sup> 3rd pers. sing. Pres. Ind. of *sapere*.

<sup>g</sup> *Le Cascine* is a fashionable and picturesque walk near Florence.

<sup>h</sup> All verbs which, in the 3rd pers. sing. Pres. Ind., end in *lo, ne, or re*, may drop their final vowel *e*.

*Giacére*, to lie down. } These three verbs are  
*Piacére*, to please. } conjugated alike.  
*Tacére*, to be silent. }

## Indicative Present.

## Singular.

*giaccio*<sup>b</sup>, I lie down.  
*giaci*, thou liest down.  
*giace*, he lies down.

## Plural.

*giaciamo*, we lie down.  
*giacete*, you lie down.  
*giacciono*, they lie down.

Imperfect—*giacéva*, I lay down.

## Perfect or Past.

*giacqui*, I did lie down.  
*giacésti*, thou didst lie down.  
*giacque*, he did lie down.

*giacémmo*, we did lie down.  
*giacéste*, you did lie down.  
*giacquero*, they did lie down.

Future—*giacerò*, I shall lie down.

Conditional—*giaceréi*, I should lie down.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.  
*giaci*, lie (thou) down.  
*giaccia*, let him lie down.

*giaciamo*, let us lie down.  
*giacete*, lie (you) down.  
*giacciano*, let them lie down.

## Subjunctive Present.

*ch'io giaccia*, that I may lie down.  
*che tu giaccia*, that thou &c.  
*ch'egli giaccia*, that he &c.

*che giacciamo*, that we may lie  
*che giacciate*, that you &c. [down.  
*che giacciano*, that they &c.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s'io giacéssi*, if I might lie down.

Present Participle { *giacéndo* } lying down.  
                               { *giacénte* }

Past Participle—*giaciúto*, lain down.

\* *Piacere* and *dispiacere*, used with a dative of the object, are Englished by 'to like,' 'to be fond of,' &c., and, 'to dislike,' 'to be sorry,' &c., as,

*Mi piace la musica* } I like music.  
 To me pleases (the) music }

*Vi piacciono i fiori?* } Are you fond of flowers?  
 To you please (the) flowers? }

*Mi dispiace il rumore* } I dislike noise.  
 To me displeases noise }

*Mi dispiace di disturbarvi* } I am sorry to trouble you.  
 It displeases me to trouble you }

<sup>b</sup> *Tacere* has only one *c* in the 1st pers. sing. Pres. Ind., where it might otherwise be mistaken for *taccio*, from the verb *tacciare*, to accuse.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere giaciuto*, to have lain down.

&amp;c.

&amp;c.

&amp;c.

Obs.—The verbs *compiacere*, to please, *dispiacere*, to displease, *ripiacere*, to please again, and *soggiacere*, to succumb, are conjugated like *giacere*.

*Cadére*, to fall, to drop.Infinitive—*cadére*, to fall.

## Indicative Present.

## Singular.

*cadó* or *cággio*, I fall.*cadí*, thou fallest.*cadé*, he falls.

## Plural.

*cadíamo* or *caggiámo*, we fall.*cadéte*, you fall.*cadono* or *caggiono*, they fall.Imperfect—*cadéva*, I was falling.

## Perfect or Past.

*cadídi*, I did fall, or I fell.*cadésti*, thou didst fall.*cadde*, he did fall.*cadémmo*, we did fall.*cadéste*, you did fall.*caddero*, they did fall.Future—*cadrò* or *caderò*, I shall fall.Conditional—*cadréi* or *caderéi*, I should fall.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.

*cadí*, fall (thou).*cáda* or *caggia*, let him fall.*cadíamo* or *caggiámo*, let us fall.*cadéte*, fall (you).*cadano* or *caggiano*, let them fall.

## Subjunctive Present.

*ch' io cáda* or *caggia*, that I may  
[fall.]*che cadíamo* or *caggiámo*, that we  
[may fall.]*che tu cáda* „ that thou &c.*che cadíate*, that you &c.*ch' egli cáda* „ that he &c.*che cadano* or *caggiano*, that &c.Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io cadéssi*, if I might fall.Present Participle { *cadéndo* } falling.  
                                  { *cadénte* }Past Participle—*cadúto*, fallen.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*essere*<sup>a</sup> *caduto*, to have fallen.

&amp;c.

&amp;c.

&amp;c.

Obs.—*Accadere*, to happen, *decadere* or *scadere*, to fall off, *ri-*<sup>a</sup> Obs. 3, p. 51.



*cadere*, to fall again, and other compounds of *cadere*, are conjugated in the same way; but in the Present Indicative, the Imperative, and the Present Subjunctive, they generally take only the regular form.

*Dissuadére*, to dissuade.

*Persuadére*, to persuade.

These two verbs are inflected alike, and are only irregular in the Perfect and Past Participle, the other moods and tenses being inflected like *credere*.<sup>a</sup>

Perfect or Past.

*dissuási*, I dissuaded.

*dissuadémmo*, we dissuaded.

*dissuadésti*, thou dissuadedst.

*dissuadéste*, you dissuaded.

*dissuásse*, he dissuaded.

*dissuásero*, they dissuaded.

Past Participle—*dissuáso*, dissuaded.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere dissuaso*, to have dissuaded.

&c.

&c.

&c.

*Sedére*, to sit.

Indicative Present.

Singular.

*siédo* or *séggo*, I sit.

*siédi*, thou sittest.

*siéde*, he sits.

Plural.

*sedíamo* or *seggíamo*, we sit.

*sedéte*, you sit.

*siédono* or *séggono*, they sit.

Indicative Imperfect ... *sedéva*, I was sitting.

„ Perfect ..... *sedéi* or *sedétti*, I did sit, or I sat.

„ Future ..... *sederò*, I shall sit.

Conditional—*sederéi*, I should sit.

Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.

*siédi*, sit (thou).

*siéda* or *ségga*, let him sit.

*sedíamo* or *seggíamo*, let us sit.

*sedéte*, sit (you).

*siédano* or *séggano*, let them sit.

Subjunctive Present.

*ch' io siéda* or *ségga*, that I may sit.

*che tu siéda* „ that thou &c.

*ch' egli siéda* „ that he &c.

*che sedíamo* or *seggíamo*, that we

*che sedíate*, that &c. [may sit.

*che siédano* or *séggano*, that &c.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io sedéssi*, if I might sit.

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 2, p. 55.

Present Participle { *sedendo*  
*sedente* } sitting.

Past Participle—*seduto*, seated.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*essere seduto*, to be seated.

&c.

&c.

&c.

Obs.—*Risedere*, to reside, *presedere*, to preside, *possedere*, to possess, *sopressedere*, to temporize, are conjugated like *sedere*.

*Vedere*, to see.

Infinitive—*vedere*, to see.

Indicative Present.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

*vedo, veggio, or veggio*, I see.

*vediamo or veggiamo*, we see.

*vedi*, thou seest.

*vedete*, you see.

*vede*, he sees.

*vedono, veggono, or veggiono*, they  
[see.]

Imperfect—*vedeva*, I saw.

Perfect or Past.

*vidi*, I saw, or did see.

*vedemmo*, we saw.

*vedesti*, thou sawest.

*vedeste*, you saw.

*vide*, he saw.

*videro*, they saw.

Future—*vedrò*, I shall see.

Conditional—*vedrei*, I should see.

Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.

*vediamo or veggiamo*, let us see.

*vedi*, see (thou).

*vedete*, see (you).

*veda, veggia, or veggia*, let him see.

*vedano, veggano, or veggiano*, let  
[them see.]

Subjunctive Present.

*ch' io veda, veggia, or veggia*, that  
[I may see.]

*che vediamo or veggiamo*, that we  
[may see.]

*che tu veda, veggia, or veggia*, that  
[thou mayest see.]

*che vediate or veggiate*, that you  
[may see.]

*ch' egli veda, veggia, or veggia*, that  
[he may see.]

*che vedano, veggano, or veggiano*,  
[that they may see.]

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io vedessi*, if I might see.

Present Participle { *vedendo*  
*veggendo*  
*veggente* } seeing.

Past Participle—*veduto or visto*, seen.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere veduto*, to have seen.  
 &c. &c. &c.

Obs.—All the compound derivatives of *vedere*—as, *antivedere* or *prevedere*, to foresee *avvedere*, to perceive, *divedere*, to demonstrate, *provvedere*, to provide, *ravedere*, to repent, *rivedere*, to see again, *travedere*, to see indistinctly, &c.—are conjugated in the same way. But *antivedere*, *divedere*, *ravedere*, and *travedere*, have only the Past Participle in *uto*; while *divedere*, *prevedere*, *provvedere*, and *ravedere* are not contracted in the Future and Conditional: *divederò*, *divederei*, not *divedrò*, &c.

## PHRASES.

*giacere in letto*, to lie in bed.  
*soggiacere a disgrazie*, to succumb to misfortunes.  
*compiacersi di fare una cosa*, to be pleased to do a thing.  
*bacchiare le noci*, to bring down nuts with a stick.  
*cadere a terra*, to fall to the ground.  
*persuadere uno a tacere*, to persuade a person to be silent.  
*sedere all' ombra*, to sit in the shade.  
*possedere molto*, to have much property.  
*prevedere una cosa*, to foresee a thing.  
*provvedere quanto occorre*, to provide for contingencies.  
*rivedersi*, to see one another again.

## VOCABULARY.

*tante*, so many.  
*rispondere*, to answer.  
*senza*, without.  
*indugio*, delay.  
*agricoltore*, husbandman.

*sovente*, often.  
*albero*, tree.  
*astronomo*, astronomer.  
*ecclissi* (m. & f.), eclipse.

## READING EXERCISE.

1. Quando sono ammalato, io giaccio in letto. 2. Eglino soggiacquero<sup>a</sup> a tante disgrazie. 3. Ella si compiacque di<sup>b</sup> rispondere senza indugio alla mia lettera. 4. Le

<sup>a</sup> See Obs., p. 73.

<sup>b</sup> Verbs signifying *remembering*, as *ricordarsi*, to remember; *forgetting*, as *dimenticarsi*, to forget; *pleasing*, as *piacere*, to please; *displeasing*, as *dispiacere*, to displease; *rejoicing*, as *rallegrarsi*, to rejoice; *grieving*, as *rammaricarsi*, to grieve; *denying*, as *negare*, to deny; *permitting*, as *permettere*, to allow; *prohibiting*, as *proibire*, to forbid; *telling*, as *dire*, to tell; *declaring*, as *dichiarare*, to declare; *offering*, as *offrire*, to offer; *supposing*, as *supporre*, to suppose; *suspecting*, as *sospettare*, to suspect; *fearing*, as *temere*, to fear; *commanding*, as *comandare*, to order; *asking*, as *domandare*, to ask;

noci, non essendo state bacchiate dall' agricoltore, caddero a terra. 5. Egli m'ha persuaso a tacere. 6. D'estate siedo sovente all' ombra degli alberi. 7. Non credo ch' egli possegga molto. 8. Gli astronomi prevedero l' ora dell' eclissi. 9. Io ho provveduto quanto occorre. 10. Ci<sup>a</sup> rivedremo domani.

## VOCABULARY.

to sit, be seated, <i>sedere</i> .	to burn down the house, <i>abbruciare la casa</i> .
to seat oneself, sit down, <i>sedersi</i> .	to be sorry, <i>dispiacere</i> .
to lie, <i>giacere</i> .	to hear, <i>sentire</i> .
to see, <i>vedere</i> .	to depart, <i>partire</i> .
to happen, <i>accadere</i> (impers.)	to see again, <i>rivedere</i> .

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. What-a-number-of people there are in (the) garden! Some are sitting down, and many are lying on the grass. 2. Let us sit down — also. 3. How did you like<sup>a</sup> — your journey — last<sup>2</sup> autumn<sup>1</sup>? 4. I liked it very much. 5. When did you see<sup>c</sup> your brother? 6. I saw<sup>f</sup> him<sup>s</sup> yesterday; he had [to him<sup>s</sup> happened]
- Quanta gente [there is<sup>b</sup>]*  
*Alcuni<sup>e</sup> molti*  
*sull' erba noi pure*  
*il vostro viaggio l' passato*  
*moltissimo*

*entreating*, as *supplicare*, to supplicate; *doubting*, as *dubitare*, to doubt; *promising*, as *promettere*, to promise; *begging*, as *pregare*, to pray; *finishing*, as *finire*, to finish; *proposing*, as *proporre*, to propose, and verbs implying 'desire' or 'aversion,' as *bramare*, to desire, and *abborrire*, to abhor, require the preposition *di*, of, before the Infinitive coming after them. (See also Note *e*, p. 53, and Note *c*, p. 62.)

<sup>a</sup> Obs., p. 46.

<sup>b</sup> Collective nouns require the verb 'to be' in the singular number.

<sup>c</sup> Indef. Pron., p. 10.

<sup>d</sup> Note *a*, p. 72.

<sup>e</sup> Note *h*, p. 15.

<sup>f</sup> Note *f*, p. 15.

<sup>g</sup> Note *a*, p. 43, and Note *f*, p. 15.

a great misfortune last Monday, a fire  
*una gran disgrazia* *un incendio* [to him<sup>a</sup>

burnt his house down. 7. I am sorry<sup>b</sup> to hear it.  
 has burnt down the house]

8. Who<sup>c</sup> is that officer who<sup>d</sup> sits near — Countess B. ?  
*quel militare* *vicino alla Contessa*

9. It is her uncle — Admiral B. ; he arrived — last  
*suo* *l' Ammiraglio*

week from — India, I saw him at the hotel yester-  
*dall'* *all' albergo*

day. 10. Now I must go. Good-bye, Marquis.  
 [depart] *Addio Marchese*

11. Good-bye, Count, (I hope) soon<sup>3</sup> to<sup>1</sup> see you again<sup>2</sup>.  
*presto a*

### QUESTIONS.

Vi piace più la lingua italiana o la francese?—Chi vi siede vicino a pranzo? 8.—Quando avete visto vostra zia? 9.—Perchè tacque vostro padre tutto il giorno ieri?—Qual paese vi piacerebbe di rivedere? 11.—Quando vi compiacerete di rispondere alla lettera che avete ricevuta? 3\*.—Che cosa prevegono gli astronomi? 8\*.—Perchè sono cadute a terra le noci? 4\*.—Dove vi piace sedere d' estate? 6\*.—Quando ci rivedremo? 10\*.

*Parére*, to appear, seem.

Infinitive—*parére*, to seem.

Indicative Present.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

*páio*, I seem.  
*pári*, thou seemest.  
*páre*, he seems.

*pariámo*, we seem.  
*paréte*, you seem.  
*páiono*, they seem.

Imperfect—*paréva*, I seemed.

<sup>a</sup> Note *a*, p. 43, and Note *h*, p. 15.

<sup>b</sup> Note *a*, p. 72, and Note *b*, p. 76.

<sup>c</sup> Inter. Pron., p. 9.

<sup>d</sup> Relative Pron., p. 9.

## Perfect or Past.

<i>párvì</i> , <sup>a</sup> I did seem, or I seemed.	<i>parémmo</i> , we did seem.
<i>parésti</i> , thou didst seem.	<i>paréste</i> , you did seem.
<i>párve</i> , he did seem.	<i>párvero</i> , they did seem.

Future—*parrò*,<sup>b</sup> I shall seem.Conditional—*parréti*, I should seem.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>pariámo</i> , let us seem.
<i>pári</i> , seem (thou).	<i>paréte</i> , seem (you).
<i>páia</i> , let him seem.	<i>páiano</i> , let them seem.

## Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io páia</i> , that I may seem.	<i>che pariámo</i> , that we may seem.
<i>che tu páia</i> , thou thou &c.	<i>che paiáte</i> , that you may seem.
<i>ch' egli páia</i> , that he &c.	<i>che páiano</i> , that they may seem.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io paréssi*, if I might seem.Present Participle—*paréndo*,<sup>c</sup> seeming.Past Participle—*párso* or *parúto*, seemed.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*essere parso*, to have seemed.

&amp;c.

&amp;c.

&amp;c.

Obs.—*Disparere*, to contest, a verb seldom used, is conjugated like *parere*.<sup>d</sup>

*Dolere* or *dolersi*, to grieve, complain.Infinitive—*dolersi*,<sup>a</sup> to grieve.

Indicative Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>mi dólgo</i> or <i>dóglío</i> , I grieve.	<i>ci dogliámo</i> , we grieve.
<i>ti duóli</i> , thou grieveest.	<i>vi doléte</i> , you grieve.
<i>si duóle</i> , he grieves.	<i>si dólgono</i> or <i>dógliono</i> , they &c.

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 3, p. 56.<sup>b</sup> The Future and Conditional of *parere* are contracted in order that they may not be confounded with *parerò*, &c. and *parerei*, &c., the Future and Conditional of *parare*, to adorn, to ward off.<sup>c</sup> Note e, p. 26.<sup>d</sup> *Parere*, used impersonally with dat. pers. pron., means 'to think, believe'; as, *Mi pare che tu sia un po' focò* (Pulci), I think thy voice is a little weak.<sup>e</sup> *Dolere*, to complain, is always conjugated in the reflective way with *mi*, *ti*, *si*, *ci*, *vi*. In the signification of 'to grieve,' 'to ache,' 'to be ill,' *dolere* takes a dative of the object; as, *mi duole il capo*, I have the headache; *mi dolgono i denti*, I have the toothache; *mi duole di non poter rivedervi*, I am sorry not to be able to see you again. (See Obs. (2.), p. 51.)

Imperfect—*mi doléva*, I grieved.

Perfect or Past.

*mi dólsi*, I did grieve.

*ti dolésti*, thou didst grieve.

*si dólse*, he did grieve.

*ci dolémmo*, we did grieve.

*vi doléste*, you did grieve.

*si dólsero*, they did grieve.

Future—*mi dorrò*,<sup>a</sup> I shall grieve.

Conditional—*mi dorréi*, I should grieve.

Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.

*dubliti*, grieve (thou).

*si dólga* or *dóglia*, let him grieve.

*dogliámoci*, let us grieve.

*dolétevi*, grieve (you).

*si dólgano* or *dógliano*, let them  
[grieve.]

Subjunctive Present.

*ch' io mi dólga* or *dóglia*, that I

[may grieve.

*che tu ti dólga* or *dóglia*, that &c.

*ch' egli si dólga* or *dóglia*, that &c.

*che ci dogliámo*, that we &c.

*che vi dogliáte*, that you &c.

*che si dólgano* or *dógliano*, that

[they may grieve.]

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io mi doléssi*, if I might grieve.

Present Participle { *doléndosi* } feeling.  
                                  { *doléntesi* }

Past Participle—*dolútosi*, grieved.

#### COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*essersi doluto*, to have grieved.

Indicative Present—*mi sono doluto* or *doluta*, I have grieved.

&c.

&c.

&c.

Obs.—*Condolere*, to condole, *ridolersi*, to complain again, and other derivatives of *dolere*, are conjugated in the same way.

*Valére*, to be worth, to cost.

Infinitive—*valére*, to be worth.

Indicative Present.

*Singular.*

*válgo* or *váglio*, I am worth.

*váii*, thou art worth.

*vále*, he is worth.

*Plural.*

*vagliámo*, we are worth.

*valéte*, you are worth.

*válgono* or *vágliono*, they are &c.

Imperfect—*valéva*, I was worth.

<sup>a</sup> Note e, p. 66.







## Perfect or Past.

<i>tónni</i> , I held.	<i>tenémmo</i> , we held.
<i>tenésti</i> , thou heldest.	<i>tenéste</i> , you held.
<i>ténne</i> , he held.	<i>tennero</i> , they held.

Future—*terrò*, I shall hold.Conditional—*terrèi*, I should hold.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>teniámo</i> , let us hold.
<i>tiéni</i> , hold (thou).	<i>tenéte</i> , hold (you).
<i>ténga</i> , let him hold.	<i>téngano</i> , let them hold.

## Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io ténga</i> , that I may hold.	<i>che teniámo</i> , that we may hold.
<i>che tu ténga</i> , that thou &c.	<i>che teniáte</i> , that you may hold.
<i>ch' egli ténga</i> , that he &c.	<i>che téngano</i> , that they may hold.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io tenéssi*, if I might hold.Present Participle { *tenéndo* } holding.  
                                  { *tenénte* }Past Participle—*tenúto*, held.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere tenuto*, to have held.  
&c.                      &c.                      &c.

Obs.—All compounds of *tenere*, as *appartenere*, to belong, *attendere*, to reach, &c., are conjugated like *tenere*.<sup>a</sup>

N.B.—The other irregular verbs in *ére* long are *avere*, to have, *calere*, to care for, and *solere*, to be accustomed. *Avere* has already been given, and its compound *riavere*, to have back, is conjugated like it. *Calere* and *solere* are wanting in certain tenses, and will be found among the Defective Verbs.

## PHRASES.

*parere forestiero*, to seem (look like) a foreigner.  
*dolersi della sua sorte*, to bewail one's lot.  
*condolersi con un amico delle sue sventure*, to condole with a friend on his misfortunes.  
*sostenere le sue perdite con fermezza*, to bear one's losses with firmness.

<sup>a</sup> *Tenere* and *avere*, followed by the preposition *per*, mean 'to consider,' as, *Tenete il Signor D. per uomo dotto?* Do you consider Mr. D. a learned man?

*mantenere la parola*, to keep one's word.

*ottenere più colle buone che colle cattive*, to obtain more with mildness  
than with severity.

*rimanere colla lettura*, or } to leave off reading.  
*tralasciare di leggere*

## VOCABULARY.

*signore*, gentleman.

*lira sterlina*, a pound sterling.

*assai*, much.

*pagina*, page.

*lira italiana*, Italian *lira*.

## READING EXERCISE.

1. Quei<sup>a</sup> Signori mi paiono forestieri. 2. Io non mi dolgo mai<sup>b</sup> della mia sorte. 3. Gli duole<sup>c</sup> assai di non poter rivedervi più spesso. 4. Ieri vidi l' amico mio, e mi condolsi<sup>d</sup> seco<sup>e</sup> delle sue sventure. 5. Venti cinque lire italiane equivalgono<sup>f</sup> ad una lira sterlina. 6. Siete<sup>g</sup> rimasto in campagna un pezzo? 7. Egli sostenne le sue perdite con molta fermezza. 8. Spero che manterrete<sup>h</sup> la parola. 9. S'<sup>i</sup> otterrebbe più colle buone che colle cattive. 10. Dove siamo rimasti<sup>i</sup> colla lettura? 11. Abbiamo tralasciato di leggere alla pagina tre.

## VOCABULARY.

to think (be of opinion), *parere*  
(impers.)

to remain, *rimanere*.

to be worth, *valere*.

to stay (in one place), *trattenersi* (refl.)

turn, *giro*.

to be obliged, *dovere*.

to ache, pain, *dolere*.

dog, *cane* (m.)

to seem, *parere* (impers.)

the means, *i mezzi*.

regimen, *igiene* (f.)

to belong, *appartenere*.

to keep (preserve), *mantenere*.

to keep, *tenere*.

to take care of a thing, *tenere*  
*conto di una cosa*.

baptism, *battesimo*.

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. What do you think<sup>j</sup> of these singers? 2. They  
*di questi cantanti*  
are not worth a straw. 3. Let us take a stroll  
*un'acca* (lit. 'h') [Let us make a turn]

<sup>a</sup> See Dem. Pron., p. 9.

<sup>b</sup> Note *e*, p. 22.

<sup>c</sup> Note *e*, p. 79, and Note *a*, p. 43.

<sup>d</sup> Obs., p. 80.

<sup>e</sup> *Meco, teco, seco*, are compound words for *con me*, with me, *con te*, with thee, and *con sè*, with him, her, it, them.

<sup>f</sup> Obs., p. 81.

<sup>g</sup> Obs. 3, p. 51.

<sup>h</sup> Note *e*, p. 66.

<sup>i</sup> Obs. 3, p. 49, and Note *a* (3), p. 43.

<sup>j</sup> Note *d*, p. 79.

through the garden; I am not well. 4. What is  
*pel giardino* [I do not stand<sup>a</sup>]

the matter with you? Are you in pain? 5. I have  
 [What pains you<sup>b</sup>?] [To me

the tooth-ache. 6. I never have the tooth-ache. 7. You  
 ache the teeth.]

seem<sup>c</sup> never<sup>d</sup> to have<sup>e</sup> anything-the-matter-with-you.  
 [nothing]

8. My dear friend, — good regimen keeps — man  
*Mio caro amico la buona l' uomo*

in-good-health. 9. For this (reason) I also take care  
*sano questo io anche*

of — myself. 10. Did you remain<sup>f</sup> in the country a  
*della* [my health]

long time? 11. I remained<sup>g</sup> there<sup>h</sup> two months, and I  
*vi*

should have stayed<sup>g</sup> there<sup>h</sup> longer, had I<sup>i</sup> not been  
*vi di più*

obliged<sup>h</sup> to return<sup>i</sup> to town on some important<sup>g</sup>  
*in per qualche importante*

business<sup>l</sup>. 12. Is this<sup>g</sup> dog<sup>g</sup> yours<sup>l</sup>? 13. No, I do  
*affare questo vostro*

not keep dogs, because I cannot afford it.  
 [I have not of it<sup>l</sup> the means]

14. To whom does it belong, then? 15. It belongs to  
*chi dunque*

Mr. D., the gentleman who yesterday stood godfather to  
*il Signore che* [held at baptism]

my son.

<sup>a</sup> When the words *non*, no or not, *in*, in, *con*, with, *per*, for, are followed by a word beginning with *s* followed by a consonant, as *stare*, to stand, *strada*, road, &c., an *i* is generally prefixed to the second word; as, *Non istò bene*, I am not well. (See N.B., p. 61.)

<sup>b</sup> Note *e*, p. 79.

<sup>c</sup> Note *d*, p. 79.

<sup>d</sup> Note *e*, p. 22.

<sup>e</sup> Note *b*, p. 34.

<sup>f</sup> Note *h*, p. 15, and Obs. 3, p. 51.

<sup>g</sup> Imp. of Subj. (See Obs. 3, p. 51.)

<sup>h</sup> Obs. 5, p. 52.

<sup>i</sup> Note *e*, p. 53.

<sup>l</sup> Note *a*, p. 43.

## QUESTIONS.

A quante lire sterline equivalgono venti cinque lire italiane? 5\*.—Di che vi dolete? 2\*.—Credete che generalmente s' ottenga più colle buone o colle cattive? 9\*.—Quando avete visto l' amico vostro? 4\*.—Che vi duole? 4.—Che cosa mantiene l' uomo sano? 8.—Tiene vostra sorella conto dei suoi libri? 9.—Siete rimasto un pezzo in campagna? 11.—A chi appartengono le cose che sono in questa stanza? 15.—Quando si è data la parola di fare una cosa, che bisogna anche fare? 8\*.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN *ERE* (short)\*.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The only verbs in *ere* short, which are conjugated entirely like *credere*, are

<i>battere</i> , to beat,	<i>ricevere</i> , to receive,
<i>cedere</i> , <sup>b</sup> to yield,	<i>riflettere</i> , <sup>c</sup> to reflect, think,
<i>fremere</i> , to fret,	<i>ripetere</i> , to repeat,
<i>gemere</i> , to groan,	<i>solvere</i> , to solve,
<i>mescere</i> , <sup>c</sup> to mix,	<i>splendere</i> , to shine,
<i>mietere</i> , to reap,	<i>stridere</i> , to shriek,
<i>pascere</i> , to feed,	<i>tessere</i> , to weave,
<i>pendere</i> , to hang,	<i>tondere</i> , to shear,
<i>premere</i> , <sup>d</sup> to press,	<i>vendere</i> , to sell,
<i>prescindere</i> , to prescind,	

with the derivatives of *battere*, *pendere*, *splendere*, *tessere*, and *vendere*; as, *combattere*, to fight, *dipendere*, to depend, &c.

2. Of all the other verbs ending in *ere* short, a few are

\* Obs. 1, p. 64.

<sup>b</sup> *Cedere* has, in poetry, the Perfect *cessi*; and some of its derivatives, as *concedere*, to grant, &c., have also other forms, which will be given with the irregular verbs.

<sup>c</sup> *Mescere* has, in the Past Participle, two forms, *misto* and *mesciuto*.

<sup>d</sup> *Premere* signifies also 'to be anxious,' 'to have at heart'; but then is only used in the 3rd person with the dative of the subject; as, *Mi preme di finire quest' opera*, I am anxious to finish this work.

<sup>e</sup> The verb *riflettere*, in the sense of 'to reflect light,' has in the Perfect *riflessi*, and in the Past Participle *riflesso*.

irregular in the Present and Perfect of the Indicative, Imperative, Present Subjunctive, and in the Past Participle; some have only one irregular form in three persons of the Perfect and in the Past Participle, while others have two forms in either or both the Perfect and Past Participle, one form being irregular and another generally regular. (See Obs. 2, p. 55.)

MODELS OF CONJUGATION OF VERBS IN *ERE* (short) IRREGULAR IN THE PRESENT AND PERFECT OF THE INDICATIVE, IMPERATIVE, AND PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, AS WELL AS IN THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

*Addúrre* (contracted from *adducere*), to bring.

Infinitive—*addúrre*, to bring.

Indicative Present.

*Singular.*  
*addúco*,<sup>a</sup> I bring.  
*addúci*, thou bringest.  
*addúce*, he brings.

*Plural.*  
*adduciámo*, we bring.  
*adducéte*, you bring.  
*addúcono*, they bring.

Imperfect—*adducéva*, I was bringing.

Perfect or Past.

*addússi*, I brought.  
*adducésti*, thou broughtest.  
*addússe*, he brought.

*adducémmo*, we brought.  
*adducéste*, you brought.  
*addússero*, they brought.

Future—*addurrò*,<sup>b</sup> I shall bring.

Conditional—*addurréi*, I should bring.

Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.  
*addúci*, bring (thou).  
*addúca*, let him bring.

*adduciámo*, let us bring.  
*adducéte*, bring (you).  
*addúcano*, let them bring.

<sup>a</sup> All verbs ending in *ur* are conjugated in the Present and Imperfect Indicative, Imperative, and Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, as well as in the regular persons of the Perfect, and in the Present Participle, according to the obsolete termination *ucere*.

<sup>b</sup> Any contraction in the Infinitive always runs through the Future and the Conditional; thus, *addurre* makes in the Future *addurrò*, *addurrai*, &c.; and so with all other verbs in *ur*.



Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io bevéssi or beéssi*, if I might drink.

Present Participle  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} bevendo \text{ or } beendo \\ bevénte \end{array} \right\}$  drinking.

Past Participle—*bevúto*, drunk.

#### COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere bevuto*, to have drunk.

&c. &c. &c.

Obs.—The compound *imbevere* or *imbere*, to imbibe, is conjugated like *bevere* or *bere*. The second form of these verbs is used chiefly in poetry.

#### *Cogliere*, to gather.

Infinitive—*cogliere* or *córre*, to gather.

#### Indicative Present.

##### Singular.

*cólgo*, I gather.  
*cógli*, thou gatherest.  
*cóglie*, he gathers.

##### Plural.

*cogliámo*, we gather.  
*cogliéte*, you gather.  
*cólgono*, they gather.

Imperfect—*cogliéva*, I was gathering.

#### Perfect or Past.

*cólai*, I gathered, or did gather. *cogliémmo*, we did gather.  
*cogliésti*, thou didst gather. *cogliéste*, you did gather.  
*cólse*, he did gather. *cólsero*, they did gather.

Future—*coglierò* or *corrò*<sup>a</sup>, I shall gather.

Conditional—*coglieréi* or *corréi*, I should gather.

#### Imperative Mood.

No first person singular. *cogliámo*, let us gather.  
*cógli*, gather (thou). *cogliéte*, gather (you).  
*cólga*, let him gather. *cólgano*, let them gather.

#### Subjunctive Present.

*ch' io cólga*, that I may gather. *che cogliámo*, that we may gather.  
*che tu cólga*, that thou &c. *che cogliéte*, that you may &c.  
*ch' egli cólga*, that he &c. *che cólga*, that they may &c.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io cogliéssi*, if I might gather.

<sup>a</sup> The letter *o* of the root in *cogliere* has an open sound, which prevents any confusion between the Future and Conditional of this verb, and the contracted forms of the Future and Conditional of *correre*, to run, *corrò*, &c., sometimes used in poetry; the *o* of the root of this latter verb having a close sound. A similar distinction separates *colto*, gathered, from *colto*, cultivated. (See *O*, p. 2.)





Present Participle { *cocéndo*  
*cocénte* } cooking.

Past Participle—*cótto*, cooked.

#### COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere cotto*, to have cooked.

&c. &c. &c.

Obs.—The verb *cuocere*, and its compound *ricuocere*, to cook again, keep the *u* of the root in the singular and 3rd person plural of the Present Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Imperative; *muovere*, to move, *nuocere*, to hurt, *scuotere*, to shake, with all their derivatives, as *rimuovere*, to remove, *riscuotere*, to redeem, &c., are subject to the same anomaly. However, the Perfect and Past Participle of the latter verbs, though irregular, are not all conjugated like *cuocere*; *muovere* has *mossi* and *mosso*; *nuocere*, *nocqui* and *nocciuto*; and *scuotere*, *scossi* and *sosso*.

*Pórre* (contracted from *pónere*,<sup>a</sup> now obsolete), to put, place.

Infinitive—*pórre*, to put.

Indicative Present.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>póngo</i> , I put.	<i>poniámo</i> or <i>ponghiámo</i> , we put.
<i>póni</i> , thou puttest.	<i>ponéte</i> , you put.
<i>póne</i> , he puts.	<i>póngono</i> , they put.

Imperfect—*ponéva*. I was putting.

Perfect or Past.

<i>pósi</i> , I did put.	<i>ponémmo</i> , we did put.
<i>ponésti</i> , thou didst put.	<i>ponéste</i> , you did put.
<i>póse</i> , he did put.	<i>pósero</i> , they did put.

Future—*porrò*,<sup>b</sup> I shall put.

Conditional—*porréi*, I should put.

Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>poniámo</i> or <i>ponghiámo</i> , let us put.
<i>póni</i> , put (thou).	<i>ponéte</i> , put (you).
<i>póngi</i> , let him put.	<i>póngano</i> , let them put.

<sup>a</sup> The verbs ending in *orre* are conjugated according to their obsolete termination *onere* in the same tenses and persons in which verbs in *urre* are conjugated according to their obsolete termination *ucere*. (See note *a*, p. 87.)

<sup>b</sup> Note *b*, p. 87.

## Subjunctive Present.

*ch' io póngà*, that I may put.      *che poniámo* or *ponghiámo*, that  
*che tu póngà*, that thou &c.      [we may put.  
*ch' egli póngà*, that he may put.      *che poniáte*, that you may put.  
*che póngano*, that they may put.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io ponéssi*, if I might put.

Present Participle { *ponéndo* } putting.  
                               { *ponénte* }

Past Participle—*pósto*, put.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere posto*, to have put.  
                   &c.                   &c.                   &c.

OBS.—Conjugate in the same manner all the derivatives of *porre*;  
*as, comporre*, to compose; *disporre*, to dispose, &c.

*Spégnere*, to extinguish.\*

Infinitive—*spégnere* or *spéngere*, to extinguish.

## Indicative Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>spéngo</i> <sup>b</sup> or <i>spégno</i> , I extinguish.	<i>spegniámo</i> or <i>spengiámo</i> , we ex-
<i>spégni</i> or <i>spéngi</i> , thou &c.	[tinguish.
<i>spégne</i> or <i>spéngé</i> , he extinguishes.	<i>spegnéte</i> or <i>spengéte</i> , you &c.
	<i>spéngono</i> or <i>spégnono</i> , they &c.

Imperfect—*spegnéva* or *spengéva*, I extinguished.

## Perfect or Past.

<i>spénsi</i> , I extinguished.	<i>spegnémmo</i> or <i>spengémmo</i> , we ex-
<i>spegnésti</i> or <i>spengésti</i> , thou ex-	[tinguished.
[tinguished.	<i>spegnéste</i> or <i>spengéste</i> , you &c.
<i>spénse</i> , he extinguished.	<i>spénsero</i> , they extinguished.

Future—*spegnerò* or *spengerò*, I shall extinguish.

Conditional—*spegneréi* or *spengeréi*, I should extinguish.

## Imperative.

No first person singular.	<i>spegniámo</i> or <i>spengiámo</i> , let us
<i>spégni</i> or <i>spéngi</i> , extinguish	[extinguish.
[(thou).	<i>spegnéte</i> or <i>spengéte</i> , extinguish
<i>spénga</i> or <i>spégna</i> , let him &c.	[(you).
	<i>spéngano</i> or <i>spégnano</i> , let &c.

\* *Spégnere* and *spegneri*, speaking of light or fire, may mean 'to put out' and 'to go out.'

<sup>b</sup> Of the above two forms of *spégnere*, the first is the one most commonly used throughout all tenses.

## Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io spenga</i> or <i>spégna</i> , that I	<i>che spegniámo</i> or <i>spengiámo</i> , that
[may extinguish.	[we may extinguish.
<i>che tu spenga</i> or <i>spégna</i> , that &c.	<i>che spegniáte</i> or <i>spengiáte</i> , that &c.
<i>ch' egli spenga</i> or <i>spégna</i> , that &c.	<i>che spengano</i> or <i>spégnano</i> , that &c.

Subjunct. Imperf.—*s' io spegnéssi* or *spengéssi*, if I might extinguish.

Present Participle { *spegnéndo* } extinguishing.  
                               { *spegnénte* }

Past Participle—*spénto*, extinguished.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere spento*, to have extinguished.  
                   &c.                   &c.                   &c.

Obs.—The verbs *cingere*, to gird, *dipingere*, to paint, *piangere*, to weep, *tingere*, to dye, *ungere*, to grease, and all verbs ending in *angere*, *ingere*, or *ungere*, admit of the above double forms like *spegnere*. Some writers have also used an *h* after the *g* in the 1st and 2nd persons plural of the Present Subjunctive of *spegnere*, and have written *spenghiamo* and *spenghiate*.

*Svellere* or *svérre*, to uproot, pluck up, tear up.

Infinitive—*svellere* or *svérre*, to tear up.

## Indicative Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>svéllo</i> or <i>svélgo</i> , I tear up.	<i>svelliámo</i> , we tear up.
<i>svélli</i> , thou tearest up.	<i>svelléte</i> , you tear up.
<i>svélle</i> , he tears up.	<i>svéllono</i> or <i>svélgono</i> , they &c.

Imperfect—*svelléva*, I was tearing up.

## Perfect or Past.

<i>svélsi</i> , I did tear up.	<i>svellémmo</i> , we did tear up.
<i>svellésti</i> , thou didst tear up.	<i>svelléste</i> , you did tear up.
<i>svélse</i> , he did tear up.	<i>svélsero</i> , they did tear up.

Future—*svellerò*,<sup>a</sup> I shall tear up.

Conditional—*svelleréi*, I should tear up.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>svelliámo</i> , let us tear up.
<i>svélli</i> , tear (thou) up.	<i>svelléte</i> , tear (you) up.
<i>svéllo</i> or <i>svélga</i> , let him tear up.	<i>svéllano</i> or <i>svélgano</i> , let them &c.

<sup>a</sup> The verb *svellere*, though contracted in the Infinitive, does not admit any contraction in the Future and Conditional. (See Note *b*, p. 87.)

## Subjunctive Present.

*ch' io svèlla* or *svélga*, that I may [tear up. *che svelliámo*, that we may tear  
*che tu svèlla* or *svélga*, that &c. *che svelliáte*, that you &c. [up.  
*ch' egli svèlla* or *svélga*, that &c. *che svèllano* or *svélgano*, that they [may tear up.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io svelléssi*, if I might tear up.

Present Participle { *svelléndo* } tearing up.  
*svellénte* }

Past Participle—*svélto*, torn up.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere svelto*, to have torn up.  
 &c. &c. &c.

OBS.—*Divellere*, which has the same meaning as *svellere*, is the only verb conjugated like *svellere*.

*Trárre* (contracted from *traere* or *trahere*, or *traggere*, now obsolete), to draw, take out.

## Indicative Present.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>trággo</i> , I draw.	<i>traiámo</i> or <i>traggiámo</i> , we draw.
<i>trái</i> or <i>trággi</i> , thou drawest.	<i>traéte</i> , you draw.
<i>tráe</i> or <i>trágge</i> , he draws.	<i>trággono</i> , they draw.

Imperfect—*tráeva*, I was drawing.

## Perfect or Past.

<i>trássi</i> , I did draw.	<i>traémmo</i> , we did draw.
<i>traésti</i> , thou didst draw.	<i>traéste</i> , you did draw.
<i>trásse</i> , he did draw.	<i>trássero</i> , they did draw.

Future—*trarrò*, I shall draw.

Conditional—*trarréi*, I should draw.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>traiámo</i> or <i>traggiámo</i> , let us draw.
<i>trái</i> , draw (thou).	<i>traéte</i> , draw (you).
<i>trágga</i> , let him draw.	<i>trággano</i> , let them draw.

## Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io trágga</i> , that I may draw.	<i>che traiámo</i> or <i>traggiámo</i> , that
<i>che tu trágga</i> , that thou &c.	[we may draw.
<i>ch' egli trágga</i> , that he &c.	<i>che traiáte</i> , that you &c.
	<i>che trággano</i> , that they &c.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io traéssi*, if I might draw.

Present Participle { *traéndo* } drawing.  
                           { *traénte* }

Past Participle—*trátto*, drawn.

#### COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere tratto*, to have drawn.

&c.

&c.

&c.

Obs.—All the compounds of *trarre*, as *astrarre*, to abstract, *contrarre*, to contract, *sottrarre*, to subtract, &c., are conjugated like *trarre*.

#### PHRASES.

*riprodurre la sua specie*, to reproduce its species.  
*bevere il caffè col latte*, to drink coffee with milk.  
*condurre al pascolo le pecore*, to drive sheep to the pasture.  
*andare a trovare alcuno*<sup>a</sup>, to go to see any one.  
*accogliere benignamente alcuno*, to receive any one kindly.  
*cuocere alcuna cosa*, to cook something.  
*rimuovere alcuna cosa da un luogo*, to remove anything from a place.  
*comporre la faccia*, to compose one's countenance.  
*porsi in capo di fare una cosa*, to take into one's head to do a thing.  
*porre in campo pretesti*, to bring forward excuses.  
*trarsi d'impaccio*, to get out of trouble.  
*spegnere la sete*, to quench one's thirst.  
*sottrarre un numero da un altro*, to subtract one number from  
*contrarre debiti*, to contract debts. [another.  
*condurre alcuno in prigione*, to take any one to prison.

#### VOCABULARY.

<i>seme</i> (m.), seed.	<i>rosa</i> , rose,
<i>di buon mattino</i> , early in the morning.	<i>stelo</i> , stem of a flower or herb.
<i>pentola</i> , saucepan.	<i>bellezza</i> , beauty.
<i>minestra</i> , rice-soup.	<i>ilarità</i> , cheerfulness.
<i>teggia</i> , earthen pie-dish.	<i>foglio</i> , a sheet of paper.
<i>torta</i> , tart.	<i>chiaro</i> , clear.
	<i>fuggire</i> , to flee.

#### READING EXERCISE.

1. I semi riproducono<sup>b</sup> la loro specie. 2. In Italia ogni mattina io beveva il caffè col latte. 3. Ieri il pastore condusse<sup>b</sup> di buon mattino al pascolo le sue pecore. 4. Quando vado a trovare il Signor e la Signora Guidi,

<sup>a</sup> Indef. Pron., p. 10.

<sup>b</sup> Obs., p. 88.

essi m' accolgono<sup>a</sup> sempre benignamente. 5. La serva ha cotto nella pentola la minestra, e nella tegghia la torta. 6. Quando la rosa è rimossa<sup>b</sup> dal suo stelo, essa perde la sua bellezza. 7. Il curato compose<sup>c</sup> la faccia a tutta quella ilarità che potè. 8. Quando egli s' è posto in capo di fare una cosa, la fa certamente. 9. Quantunque essi pongano<sup>d</sup> in campo pretesti, non si trarranno<sup>e</sup> d' impaccio. 10. I pastori spengono la sete nell' acqua chiara. 11. Se sottraggo<sup>f</sup> due fogli da cinque, ne rimarranno tre. 12. Roberto avendo contratto molti debiti è<sup>g</sup> dovuto fuggire per non essere condotto in prigione.

## VOCABULARY.

to introduce, <i>introdurre</i> .	to gather, <i>cogliere</i> .
to make acquaintance with any one, <i>fare la conoscenza di alcuno</i> .	to see home, <i>condurre a casa</i> .
to take ( <i>meaning</i> to conduct), <i>condurre</i> .	to compose, <i>comporre</i> .
	to translate, <i>tradurre</i> .
	to draw, <i>estrarre</i> .

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. Mamma, I introduce — Mrs. Bottà to you<sup>b</sup>.
2. Madam, I am glad<sup>d</sup> to make — your acquaintance.  
*Signora* *la vostra*
- Laura, have you taken<sup>f</sup> — Mrs. Bottà to see the garden?  
*il giardino*
3. Yes, mamma. 4. And has she gathered any flowers?  
*mamma* *dei fiori*
5. Yes; she has gathered some violets and a few  
*delle viole* *dei*  
pinks. 6. Who will see them home? 7. The servant.  
*garofani* *le* *Il servo*
8. Who composed<sup>k</sup> that piece of music — you play?  
*quel pezzo di* *che*

<sup>a</sup> Obs., p. 90.<sup>d</sup> Note c, p. 70.<sup>e</sup> Obs. 5, p. 52.<sup>f</sup> Note c, p. 62.<sup>b</sup> Obs., p. 91.<sup>c</sup> Note b, p. 87.<sup>h</sup> Note a, p. 43.<sup>k</sup> Note h, p. 15.<sup>c</sup> Obs., p. 92.<sup>f</sup> Obs., p. 95.<sup>i</sup> Note b, p. 76.

9. It was composed by<sup>a</sup> Rossini. 10. Have you trans-  
[is]  
lated – your exercise? 11. Yes; I translated<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup> this  
*il vostro esercizio* *lo*  
morning before – breakfast. 12. From where do – bees  
*avanti la* *Da dove le api*  
draw the honey? 13. From – flowers.  
*il miele* *Dai*

## QUESTIONS.

Chi vi conduce a spasso<sup>b</sup>? 2.—Che si beve<sup>c</sup> general-  
mente la mattina in Italia? 2\*.—Come siete stato accolto  
dalla Signora Botta? 4\*.—Dove si cuocono la minestra  
e la torta? 5\*.—Quando perde la rosa la sua bellezza?  
6\*.—Sottraendo otto da nove, quanto rimane? 11\*.—  
Che fiori avete colti in giardino? 5.—A che ora ha spento  
la serva il fuoco<sup>d</sup>?—Da chi è composto 'il pezzo di  
musica che avete da imparare? 8.—Quando tradurrete  
l'esercizio? 10.—Che cosa estraggono le api dai fiori?  
12.—Come si traggono spesso d'impaccio coloro<sup>e</sup> che  
hanno contratto molti debiti? 9\* & 12\*

---

VERBS IN *ERE* (short) WHICH HAVE ONLY ONE IRREGULAR  
FORM IN THREE PERSONS OF THE PERFECT (See Obs.  
3, p. 56) AND IN THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

These verbs vary in the form of their Perfect and  
Past Participle, according to the letter, or letters, pre-  
ceding the infinitive termination *ere*. The following  
Table, divided into seven groups, will show the formation  
of the Perfect and Past Participle of these verbs:—

<sup>a</sup> Note *b*, p. 49.<sup>b</sup> See Voc., p. 63.<sup>c</sup> Obs. 3, p. 49.<sup>d</sup> Note *a*, p. 92.<sup>e</sup> See Demon. Pron., p. 9.



TABLE OF VERBS IN **ERE** (SHORT) WHICH HAVE ONLY IRREGULAR FORMS IN THREE PERSONS OF THE PERFECT (See Obs. 3, p. 56) AND IN THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

INFINITIVE TERMINATION <i>ere</i> , preceded by	Change into		EXAMPLES.		OBSERVATIONS.
	PERFECT.	PAST PART.			
I. { -d <i>ere</i> } -nd <i>ere</i> } -r <i>ere</i> }	-si	-so	Infinitive. <i>chiu-dere</i> <i>spe-ndere</i> <i>cor-rere</i> <sup>2</sup>	Perfect. <i>chiu-si</i> <i>spe-si</i> <i>cor-si</i>	Past Participle. <i>chiu-so</i> <sup>1</sup> <i>spe-so</i> <i>cor-so</i>
II. { -g <i>ere</i> } -gu <i>ere</i> }	-si	-to	<i>pian-gere</i> <sup>3</sup> <i>estin-guere</i>	<i>pian-si</i> <i>estin-si</i>	<i>pian-to</i> <sup>4</sup> <i>estin-to</i>
					1. <i>chiedere</i> , to ask, <i>rispondere</i> , to answer, <i>scindere</i> , to sever, and <i>spandere</i> , to spill, with all their derivatives, <i>chiedere</i> , to require, <i>corrispondere</i> , to correspond, &c., make in the Past Participle <i>chiesto</i> , <i>risposto</i> , <i>scinto</i> , <i>spanto</i> , &c. 2. <i>occorrere</i> , to occur or require, and <i>soccorrere</i> , to succour, compounds of <i>correre</i> , are often contracted in the Future and Conditional; <i>occorrà</i> , it will require, <i>soccorrà</i> , it will succour, <i>occorrebbe</i> , it would be required, &c. 3. Obs., p. 93. 4. <i>spargere</i> , to scatter, <i>rifulgere</i> , to shine, <i>stringere</i> , to press, <i>tergere</i> , to wipe, with their derivatives <i>cospargere</i> , to strew, <i>aspergere</i> , to besprinkle, <i>immergere</i> , to plunge in water, &c., make in the Past Participle <i>sparso</i> , <i>rifulso</i> , <i>stretto</i> , <i>terso</i> , &c. <i>Esigere</i> , to exact, and <i>negligere</i> , to neglect, with their derivatives, make in the Perfect <i>esigei</i> and <i>neglessi</i> , in the Past Participle <i>esatto</i> and <i>negletto</i> .

5. *suggere*, to suck, makes in the Perfect *suggeti*, and has no Past Participle; *succhiato*, from *succhiare*, to suck, being used in its stead.
6. The compounds of *conoscere* and *cre-scere* are conjugated alike.
7. *concutere*, to shake, *genuflettere*, to bend the knee, *incutere*, to inculcate, strike, are conjugated like *discutere*.
8. All verbs ending in *istere* are conjugated in the same manner.
9. *impellere*, to impel, *convellere*, to cause distension, *repellere*, to repel, are conjugated like *espellere*.
10. All the compounds of *mettere*, as *per-mettere*, to allow, *rimettere*, to differ, are conjugated alike.
11. The compounds of *nascere* and *nuocere* are conjugated alike.
12. The compounds of *torcere* and *vincere* are conjugated alike.

<i>le-ggere</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>le-ssi</i>	<i>le-tto</i>	to read
<i>scri-vere</i>	<i>scri-ssi</i>	<i>scri-ito</i>	to write
<i>oppr-imere</i>	<i>oppr-essi</i>	<i>oppr-esso</i>	to oppress
<i>espr-imere</i>	<i>espr-essi</i>	<i>espr-esso</i>	to express
<i>ass-umere</i>	<i>ass-unsi</i>	<i>ass-unto</i>	to assume
<i>r-ompere</i>	<i>r-uppi</i>	<i>r-otto</i>	to break
<i>assorbere</i>	<i>assorsi</i>	<i>assorto</i>	to absorb
<i>conoscere</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>conobbi</i>	<i>conosciuto</i>	to know
<i>crescere</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>crebbi</i>	<i>cresciuto</i>	to grow
<i>discutere</i> <sup>7</sup>	<i>discussi</i>	<i>discusso</i>	to discuss
<i>esistere</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>esistei</i>	<i>esistito</i>	to exist
<i>espellere</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>espulsi</i>	<i>espulso</i>	to expel
<i>mettere</i> <sup>10</sup>	<i>mi si</i>	<i>nesso</i>	to put
<i>nascere</i> <sup>11</sup>	<i>nacqui</i>	<i>nato</i>	to be born
<i>nuocere</i> <sup>11</sup>	<i>nocui</i>	<i>nocuto</i>	to hurt
<i>torcere</i> <sup>12</sup>	<i>torsi</i>	<i>torto</i>	to twist
<i>vincere</i> <sup>12</sup>	<i>vinsi</i>	<i>vinto</i>	to conquer

VII. Verbs which cannot be classified according to termination as above...

III. { -ggere }  
      { -v ere }

IV. -im ere      -tto  
      -ess i  
      -ess o  
V. -um ere      -esso  
      -un si      -ento  
      -uppi      -otto

ABLE OF VERBS IN **ERE** (SHORT) WHICH HAVE ONLY IRREGULAR FORMS IN THREE PERSONS OF THE PERFECT (See Obs. 3, p. 56) AND IN THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

INFINITIVE TERMINATION <i>ere</i> , preceded by	Change into		EXAMPLES.		OBSERVATIONS.
	PERFECT.	PAST PARTIC.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	
I. { -dere } -ndere } -rere }	-si	-so	<i>chiu-dere</i> <i>spe-ndere</i> <i>cor-rere</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>chiu-si</i> <i>spe-si</i> <i>cor-si</i>	1. <i>chiedere</i> , to ask, <i>rispondere</i> , to answer, <i>scendere</i> , to sever, and <i>spandere</i> , to spill, with all their derivatives, <i>chiedere</i> , to require, <i>corrispondere</i> , to correspond, &c., make in the Past Participle <i>chiesto</i> , <i>risposto</i> , <i>scinto</i> , <i>spanto</i> , &c.  2. <i>occorrere</i> , to occur or require, and <i>soccorrere</i> , to succour, compounds of <i>correre</i> , are often contracted in the Future and Conditional; <i>occorrà</i> , it will require, <i>soccorrà</i> , it will succour, <i>occorrebbe</i> , it would be required, &c.  3. Obs., p. 93.  4. <i>spargere</i> , to scatter, <i>rifulgere</i> , to shine, <i>stringere</i> , to press, <i>tergere</i> , to wipe, with their derivatives <i>cospargere</i> , to strew, <i>aspergere</i> , to besprinkle, <i>immergere</i> , to plunge in water, &c., make in the Past Participle <i>sperso</i> , <i>rifulso</i> , <i>stretto</i> , <i>terso</i> , &c. <i>Esigere</i> , to exact, and <i>negligere</i> , to neglect, with their derivatives, make in the Perfect <i>esigei</i> and <i>neglessi</i> , in the Past Participle <i>esatto</i> and <i>negletto</i> .
II. { -gere } -guere }	-si	-to	<i>pian-gere</i> <sup>3</sup> <i>estin-guere</i>	<i>pian-si</i> <i>estin-si</i>	
				<i>pian-to</i> <sup>4</sup> <i>estin-to</i>	to weep to extinguish

6. *suggere*, to suck, makes in the Perfect *suggesi*, and has no Past Participle; *succhiato*, from *succhiare*, to suck, being used in its stead.

8. The compounds of *conoscere* and *cre-scere* are conjugated alike.

7. *concutere*, to shake, *genuflettere*, to bend the knee, *incutere*, to inculcate, strike, are conjugated like *discutere*.

8. All verbs ending in *istere* are conjugated in the same manner.

9. *impellere*, to impel, *convellere*, to cause distension, *repellere*, to repel, are conjugated like *espellere*.

10. All the compounds of *mettere*, as *per-mettere*, to allow, *rimettere*, to differ, are conjugated alike.

11. The compounds of *nascere* and *nuocere* are conjugated alike.

12. The compounds of *torcere* and *vincere* are conjugated alike.

<i>le-ggere</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>le-ssi</i>	<i>le-tto</i>	to read
<i>scri-vere</i>	<i>scri-ssi</i>	<i>scri-tto</i>	to write
<i>oppr-imere</i>	<i>oppr-essi</i>	<i>oppr-esso</i>	to oppress
<i>espr-imere</i>	<i>espr-essi</i>	<i>espr-esso</i>	to express
<i>ass-umere</i>	<i>ass-unsi</i>	<i>ass-unto</i>	to assume
<i>r-ompere</i>	<i>r-uppi</i>	<i>r-otto</i>	to break
<i>assorbere</i>	<i>assorsi</i>	<i>assorto</i>	to absorb
<i>conoscere</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>conobbi</i>	<i>conosciuto</i>	to know
<i>crescere</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>crebbi</i>	<i>cresciuto</i>	to grow
<i>discutere</i> <sup>7</sup>	<i>discussi</i>	<i>discusso</i>	to discuss
<i>esistere</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>esistei</i>	<i>esistito</i>	to exist
<i>espellere</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>espulsi</i>	<i>espulso</i>	to expel
<i>mettere</i> <sup>10</sup>	<i>misì</i>	<i>messo</i>	to put
<i>nascere</i> <sup>11</sup>	<i>nacqui</i>	<i>nato</i>	to be born
<i>nuocere</i> <sup>11</sup>	<i>nocui</i>	<i>nocuito</i>	to hurt
<i>torcere</i> <sup>12</sup>	<i>torsi</i>	<i>torto</i>	to twist
<i>vincere</i> <sup>12</sup>	<i>vinsi</i>	<i>vinto</i>	to conquer

III. { -ggere } { -v ere }	-tto
IV. -imere	-esso
V. -umere	-unto
VI. -ompere	-otto

VII. Verbs which cannot be classified according to termination as above...

## PHRASES.

*deludere le speranze del suo genitore*, to disappoint one's father's hopes.  
*distinguersi agli esami*, to distinguish one's self at the examinations.  
*corrispondere male alle cure di alcuno*, to repay badly the care of anyone.

*inchiudere lettere in un piego*, to enclose letters in a parcel.

*mettere un piego, o una lettera, nella buca*,<sup>a</sup> to put a parcel, or letter, in the post-office letter-box.

*fingere di avere qualche cosa*, to pretend to have something the matter with one.

*non occorrere niente*, not to want anything.

*esigere subito la paga della sua fatica*, to require immediate payment of one's labours.

*estinguersi (una lucerna) per mancanza d'olio*, to go out (of a lamp) for want of oil.

*accorgersi di qualche cosa*, to perceive anything.

*volgere le spalle ad alcuno*, to turn one's back on anyone.

*rivolgersi ad alcuno*, to apply to any person.

*riavere alcuna cosa*, to have anything back.

*esprimere un pensiero*, to express a thought.

*corrompersi (una materia)*, to go bad (of any substance).

*espellere alcuno da un luogo*, to eject any one from a place.

*incutere spavento*, to strike terror.

*mettere in sesto le cose*, to arrange things properly.

*rimettere una cosa ad un altro tempo*, to put a thing off to another time.

*immergere una cosa nell'acqua*, to plunge a thing into water.

*mettere alte strida*, to utter loud screams.

## VOCABULARY.

*Pietro*, Peter.

*Luigi*, Lewis.

*invece*, instead.

*paterno*, fatherly.

*ieri l'altro*, the day before yes-

*febbre*, fever. [terday.

*vaccaro*, cow-keeper.

*lutte*, milk.

*console*, consul.

*passaporto*, passport.

*adeguato*, proper.

*parola*, word.

*fermo*, stagnant (of water).

*vista*, sight.

*fuoco*, fire.

*lavandaia*, laundress.

*pannolini*, (linen) clothes.

## READING EXERCISE.

1. Ieri Pietro non deluse<sup>b</sup> le speranze del suo genitore, egli si distinse<sup>c</sup> agli esami. 2. Luigi invece ha mal corrisposto<sup>d</sup> alle cure paterne. 3. Spero che non abbiate letto<sup>e</sup> le mie carte. 4. Tosto che ebbi inchiuso<sup>f</sup> le lettere

<sup>a</sup> *buca* literally 'a hole.'

<sup>c</sup> Group II., p. 98.

<sup>e</sup> Group III., p. 99.

<sup>b</sup> Group I., p. 98, and Obs. 3, p. 56.

<sup>d</sup> Obs. 1, p. 98.

<sup>f</sup> Note c, p. 16.

nel piego lo misi<sup>a</sup> nella buca. 5. Ieri l' altro Carlo, per non andar a scuola, finse<sup>b</sup> d' aver la febbre. 6. Il vacaro ha spanto<sup>c</sup> il latte. 7. S' io fossi a casa mia non m' occorrebbe<sup>d</sup> niente. 8. Egli ha esatto<sup>e</sup> subito la paga della sua fatica. 9. La lucerna s' estinse<sup>b</sup> per mancanza d' olio. 10. Io non m' accorsi ch' egli m' aveva volto le spalle. 11. Ieri, bramando partire, mi rivolsi al console, e riebbi<sup>f</sup> il mio passaporto. 12. Un pensiero deve essere espresso<sup>g</sup> con adeguate parole. 13. Le acque si sono corrotte<sup>h</sup> stando ferme. 14. Oggi il servo è stato espulso<sup>a</sup> dalla casa. 15. La vista del fuoco incusse<sup>i</sup> spavento alla serva, e mise alte strida. 16. Oggi ho messo<sup>a</sup> in sesto tutte le mie cose. 17. Noi abbiamo rimesso<sup>j</sup> la cosa ad un altro giorno. 18. La lavandaia ha già immerso<sup>e</sup> i pannilini nell' acqua.

## VOCABULARY.

to light, *accendere*.to break, *rompere*.to spill, *spandere*.to wipe, *tergere*.to shut, *chiudere*.to arrive, *giungere*.to put, *mettere*.to read, *leggere*.to write, *scrivere*.to make one's self understood,  
*farsi capire*.to be born, *nascere*.to ask, *chiedere*.to answer, *rispondere*.to hide one's face, *nascondersi il*to weep, *piangere*. [*volto*]to overcome, *opprimere*.to begin, *mettersi a*.to laugh, *ridere*.to put on, *mettersi*.to warm up, *riscaldare*.

## READING EXERCISE.

1. At what time did the servant light<sup>k</sup> the fire  
A [hour] la il fuoco  
in the drawing-room this-morning? 2. At — ten  
nel Alle  
(o'clock). 3. Well done! you have broken<sup>h</sup> the cup,  
Bravo

<sup>a</sup> Group VII., p. 99.<sup>d</sup> Obs. 2, p. 98.<sup>g</sup> Group IV., p. 99.<sup>j</sup> Obs. 10, p. 99.<sup>b</sup> Group II., p. 98.<sup>e</sup> Obs. 4, p. 98.<sup>h</sup> Group VI., p. 99.<sup>k</sup> Group I., p. 98; and Note h, p. 15.<sup>c</sup> Obs. 1, p. 98.<sup>f</sup> N.B., p. 83.<sup>i</sup> Obs. 7, p. 99.

and spilt<sup>a</sup> all the coffee on the table-cloth. 4. Oh,  
*tutto il sulla tovaglia*

there is everything wiped-up<sup>b</sup> again. 5. Have you  
*poco tutto di nuovo*

shut the street door? 6. I shut it when my  
*la porta della strada la*

father-in-law arrived. 7. Where have you put the  
*suocero la*

Italian<sup>4</sup> letter<sup>1</sup> —<sup>3</sup> I wrote<sup>3</sup> last night? 8. I put  
 [in Italian] *che ieri sera*

it on the table in the little room. 9. Have you read  
*la sulla nello stanzino*

many Italian<sup>2</sup> works<sup>1</sup>? 10. No; I have not read many  
*molte italiane opere*

Italian works, but I have written many exercises;  
*molti temi*

and if I could<sup>c</sup> remember all the words contained  
*tutte le parole* [which they

in them, I should be able to speak Italian  
 contain]

sufficiently to make myself understood. 11. Where  
*abbastanza per*

was — your — Italian<sup>3</sup> master<sup>1</sup> born<sup>d</sup>? 12. He  
*il vostro d'italiano maestro*

was born at Sienna, (a) town famous for the  
*a famosa la*

purity of its language. 13. Have you asked<sup>e</sup> him<sup>1</sup>  
*purità della gli*

whether he has travelled much in Italy? 14. No;  
*se molto*

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 1, p. 98.

<sup>b</sup> Obs. 4, p. 98.

<sup>c</sup> Imperf. Subj. of *potere*.

<sup>d</sup> Perfect. See Group VII., p. 99.

<sup>e</sup> Obs. 1, p. 98.

<sup>f</sup> Note a (1), p. 43.

but yesterday I asked him if he had been at Naples.

15. And what reply did he make?  
[did he answer you]

16. At first he  
*Da prima*

hid his face with his hands, and wept as if he were<sup>a</sup>  
*con le mani quasi*

overcome by grief; then he began to give me a  
dal dolore poi [to make me] un-

long account of his sufferings in that city. 17. I  
*lungo racconto dei suoi patimenti quella*

hope<sup>b</sup> you did not laugh at his story. 18. I never  
laugh at any one<sup>c</sup>. 19. Why have you put on<sup>d</sup> your  
gloves? 20. In-order-that my hands may be<sup>e</sup> warmed.  
*Perchè<sup>e</sup>*

## QUESTIONS.

Dove avete messo il piego? 4\*.—Come s'è estinta la lucerna? 9\*.—Quali acque si corrompono facilmente? 13\*.—A che ora ha acceso la serva nel salotto il fuoco? 1.—Chi ha chiuso la finestra della stanza da mangiare? 5.—Avete letto le opere di Dante? 9.—Avete risposto alla lettera che riceveste stamane? —Avete chiesto a vostra madre, se vi lascerà andare al concerto domani? 13.—Dove avete messo il libro? —Sapete dove abbia vostra sorella nascosto il temperino? 16.—Che cosa vi mettete quando andate a spasso? 19.—Quando vi metterete a fare la traduzione? 16.—Quando avete messo in sesto le vostre cose? 16\*.—Fin a quando avete rimesso la vostra partenza per la campagna? 17\*.

\* Note *c*, p. 70.

<sup>b</sup> Note b, p. 34.

<sup>c</sup> See No. 6, p. 47.

<sup>d</sup> Note *c*, p. 46; and Notes *a* and *b*, p. 45.      <sup>e</sup> Note *c*, p. 70.

- Note *c*, p. 70.

<sup>f</sup> Note *b*, p. 82



LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS IN **ERE** (SHORT) WHICH HAVE TWO FORMS IN EITHER THE PERFECT OR PAST PARTICIPLE, OR IN BOTH, ONE FORM BEING IRREGULAR, AND THE OTHER GENERALLY REGULAR.

LIST OF VERBS.				OBSERVATIONS.
Infinitive.	Perfect.	Past Participle.		
<i>concedere</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>concessi</i> or <i>concedei</i>	<i>concesso</i> or <i>conceduto</i>	to grant	1. <i>intercedere</i> , to intercede, and <i>succedere</i> , to succeed, happen, are conjugated like <i>concedere</i> . (See Note b, p. 86.)
<i>connettere</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>connessi</i> or <i>connettei</i>	<i>connesso</i> or <i>connettuto</i>	to connect, join	2. <i>annettere</i> , to annex, <i>sconnettere</i> , to disjoin, are conjugated like <i>connettere</i> .
<i>difendere</i>	<i>difesi</i> or <i>difendei</i>	<i>difeso</i> or <i>difenduto</i>	to defend	3. The verb <i>figgere</i> , and its compounds <i>affiggere</i> , to affix, to attach, post up bills, &c., <i>configgere</i> , to fix with nails, <i>crocifiggere</i> , to crucify, and <i>prefiggere</i> , to prefix, may be spelt with only one <i>g</i> , like <i>figgere</i> , but they take always a double <i>s</i> , both in the Perfect and Past Participle, and have only one form in those tenses. The other compounds of <i>figgere</i> — <i>insfiggere</i> , to drive in, <i>sconfiggere</i> , to drive out, to defeat, and <i>trasfiggere</i> , to pierce with a sword, have always two <i>g</i> 's in the Infinitive, a double <i>s</i> in the Perfect, and two <i>t</i> 's in the Past Participle.
<i>figgere</i> <sup>3</sup> or <i>figere</i>	<i>fissi</i> or <i>fisei</i>	<i>fisso</i> , <i>fitto</i> , or <i>fiso</i>	to split	4. The compounds of <i>fondere</i> , <i>confondere</i> , or <i>sconfondere</i> , to confound, <i>diffondere</i> , to spread, <i>infondere</i> , to infuse, <i>refondere</i> , to repay, <i>trasfondere</i> , to transfuse, are all conjugated like <i>fondere</i> , but have only one form in both the Perfect and Past Participle, and make <i>confusi</i> , <i>confuso</i> , &c.
<i>fondere</i> <sup>4</sup>	<i>fusi</i> or <i>fondei</i>	<i>fuso</i> or <i>fonduto</i>	to fix	5. <i>ascondere</i> , to conceal, is conjugated like <i>nascondere</i> .
<i>nascondere</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>nascosi</i>	<i>nascoso</i> or <i>nascosto</i>	to melt	6. <i>disperdere</i> , to scatter, has two forms like <i>perdere</i> .
<i>perdere</i> <sup>6</sup>	<i>persi</i> or <i>perdei</i>	<i>perso</i> or <i>perduto</i>	to hide	7. All the compounds of <i>prendere</i> are conjugated like <i>prendere</i> , but very seldom admit the regular form in <i>ei</i> in the Perfect.
<i>piovvere</i>	<i>piovere</i> or <i>piovè</i>	<i>piovuto</i>	to lose	8. <i>assolvere</i> , to absolve, and <i>disolvere</i> , to dissolve, are conjugated like <i>risolvere</i> .
<i>prendere</i> <sup>7</sup>	<i>presi</i> or <i>prendei</i>	<i>preso</i>	to rain	9. The compounds of <i>scernere</i> are conjugated alike.
<i>radere</i>	<i>rasi</i> or <i>radei</i>	<i>raso</i>	to take	10. The compounds of <i>vivere</i> , as <i>revivere</i> , to revive, <i>sopravvivere</i> , to survive, &c., are conjugated alike; <i>vivere</i> in poetry is often contracted in the Future, Conditional, and Past Participle, and makes <i>viòrè</i> , I shall live, &c.; <i>viòrè</i> , I should live, &c.; <i>viòso</i> , lived.
<i>redimere</i>	<i>redensi</i> or <i>redimeì</i>	<i>redento</i>	to shave, scrape [off]	
<i>rendere</i>	<i>resi</i> or <i>rendeì</i>	<i>reso</i> or <i>renduto</i>	to redeem	
<i>riluocere</i>	<i>rilussi</i> or <i>rilucei</i>	No Past Participle	to give back	
<i>risolvere</i> <sup>8</sup>	{ <i>risolsi</i> , <i>risolvei</i> , or } <i>risolvetti</i>	<i>risolto</i> or <i>risoluto</i>	to shine	
<i>scernere</i> <sup>9</sup>	<i>scersi</i> or <i>scernei</i>	<i>scerso</i> or <i>scernuto</i>	to resolve	
<i>vivere</i> <sup>10</sup>	<i>visi</i>	<i>visuto</i> or <i>vivuto</i>	to discern	
			to live	

## PHRASES.

*succedere a uno*, to succeed to any one.  
*concedere una cosa*, to grant a thing.  
*connettere due cose*, to connect two things.  
*difendere la patria*, to defend one's country.  
*fondere un querciuolo*, to split a small oak tree.  
*sconfiggere i nemici*, to defeat the enemy.  
*affiggere al cavicchio qualche cosa*, to attach something to a peg.  
*sconfiggere chiodi*, to draw out nails.  
*figere chiodi*, to drive in nails.  
*fondere campane*, to cast bells.  
*nascondere qualche cosa a uno*, to hide something from a person.  
*radere il muschio* (or *moscolo*), to scrape off the moss.  
*risolversi di fare una cosa*, to make up one's mind to do a thing.  
*vivere a spese di alcuno*, to live at the charge of some one.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>Papa</i> , pope.	<i>spaccalegna</i> , woodcutter.
<i>pezzo</i> , piece.	<i>scuri</i> , axe.
<i>legno</i> , wood (for building).	<i>soldato</i> , soldier.
<i>corpo</i> , body.	<i>berretta</i> , cap (boy's or man's).
<i>solo</i> , single.	<i>parete</i> (f.), wall of a room.
<i>Greco</i> , a Greek.	<i>cassa</i> , case.
<i>assalto</i> , assault.	<i>giardiniere</i> , gardener.
<i>Persiano</i> , a Persian.	<i>vite</i> (f.), vine tree.

## READING EXERCISE.

1. Quando il Papa morì gli<sup>a</sup> successe<sup>b</sup> suo nipote.  
 2. Mia madre m' ha sempre concesso tutto quel che<sup>c</sup> le<sup>a</sup> ho chiesto<sup>d</sup>. 3. Se due pezzi di legno sono bene connessi, essi<sup>a</sup> paiono un corpo solo. 4. I Greci hanno difeso la patria dagli assalti dai Persiani. 5. Lo spaccalegna ha fesso un querciuolo colla scure. 6. Ieri i nostri soldati sconfissero i nemici. 7. Io affissi al cavicchio la berretta, prima d' entrare in iscuola<sup>e</sup>. 8. Quando avrete sconfissi<sup>f</sup> tutti i chiodi che sono fitti nelle pareti, me li<sup>g</sup> darete per metterli nella cassa. 9. Le

<sup>a</sup> See Pers. Pron., p. 8.    <sup>b</sup> Obs. 1, p. 104.    <sup>c</sup> Note d, p. 35.

<sup>d</sup> Obs. 1, p. 98.    <sup>e</sup> Note a, p. 85.    <sup>f</sup> Obs. 3, p. 104.

<sup>g</sup> Whether there be one or two conjunctive pronouns in a sentence, the rules respecting the placing of them in relation to the verb are the same; i. e., they will either precede or follow the verb, according to what has been said respecting them (see Obs. 2, and Note a (1), p. 43). It must however be observed—(1) that when one conjunctive pronoun immediately follows another in the same phrase, the dative precedes the accusative, and the genitive *ne* generally follows all other pronouns except *loro*; as, *Mi vi racco-*

campane furono fondate. 10. Io non ho nascoso mai nulla alla madre. 11. Il giardiniere ha raso tutto il muschio che si trovava nella vite. 12. Egli si risolvette di partire. 13. Io non ho mai vissuto a spese altrui<sup>a</sup>.

## VOCABULARY.

to look, <i>mirare</i> .	to take (carry), <i>portare</i> .
to happen, <i>succedere</i> .	to thank one a thousand times, <i>rendere mille grazie ad uno</i> .
to post (bills), <i>affigere (cartelli)</i> .	to resolve, <i>risolvere</i> .
to let people know, <i>far sapere</i> .	to buy, <i>comprare</i> .
to grant, <i>concedere</i> .	to rent, <i>prendere a pigione</i> .
to take, <i>prendere</i> .	to live, <i>vivere</i> (neuter).
to lose, <i>perdere</i> .	to settle (in a place), <i>stabilirsi</i> .
to give back, <i>rendere</i> .	
to inquire for, <i>cercare</i> (active).	

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. Look what (a) crowd there is at the corner-of-  
*folla c' alla canto-*  
the-street; let us go and<sup>b</sup> see what has happened. 2. Oh,  
*nata Oh*  
they are reading a bill which has been posted  
*un cartello che*  
on the wall this morning. 3. What bill is it? 4. It is  
*al muro*  
only to<sup>c</sup> let people know that the Government has granted  
*il governo*  
a printer's patent to — Mr. D. 5. What did  
*la patente di stampatore al Signor*  
you take<sup>d</sup> at the coffee-house? 6. I took an ice, and  
*al caffè un sorbetto*

*manda*, he recommends you to me; *Non vuol raccomandarvi*, he will not recommend me to you;—(ii.) That *mi, ti, ci, vi, si* change the *i* into *e* before *lo, la, gli, li, le, ne*; and *gli*, to him, and *le*, to her, become *glie* before *lo, la, li, le, ne*; as, *datamelo*, give it to me; *glielo darò*, I shall give it to him or to her.

<sup>a</sup> See Indef. Pron., p. 10.

<sup>b</sup> The conjunction 'and,' used between a verb of motion and another verb in the same tense, person, and number with the former, is rendered by the preposition *a*, and the verb which follows is put in the infinitive; as, I shall come and dine with you, *Verrò a pranzare con voi*.

<sup>c</sup> Note g, p. 30.

<sup>d</sup> Note h, p. 15.

stayed there all the time that it rained<sup>a</sup>. 7. Had you  
*colà*  
 not taken your umbrella with you? 8. I lost it yester-  
*l' ombrello*  
 day in a shop. 9. But why did not the people  
*una bottega* *quelli*  
 in the shop give<sup>b</sup> it back to you<sup>c</sup>? 10. Because some-  
*della* *qualcu-*  
 body who was in the shop had taken it<sup>d</sup>  
*no che* [found himself] *nella*  
 before<sup>e</sup> I went to inquire for it<sup>d</sup>. 11. One day I found  
 a walking-stick which had the owner's name and ad-  
*un bastone che il nome e l' indirizzo del pro-*  
 dress on the handle. So I took it to him<sup>c</sup>,  
*prietario sul pomo Così che*  
 and he thanked me a thousand times. 12. I have lost  
 so many umbrellas, that I am resolved — not to buy —  
*tanti di ne*  
 any more. 13. Have you rented the house you saw  
*più*  
 yesterday? 14. Not yet; I shall wait till I have lived  
 a little longer in this city, to<sup>e</sup> see if I care to settle here.  
*un poco più questa* [like<sup>h</sup>]

## QUESTIONS.

Quando paiono due pezzi di legno un corpo solo? 3\*.  
 —Come si chiama colui<sup>i</sup> che fende le legna? 5\*.—Che  
 fa il ragazzo prima d'entrare in iscuola? 7\*.—Che cosa  
 ha raso il giardiniere? 11\*.—Chi ha concesso la patente  
 di stampatore al Signor D.? 4.—Che avete preso al  
 caffè? 5.—Che avete perduto? 8.—Che fareste, se qual-  
 cuno vi portasse qualche cosa che aveste perso? 11.—  
 Avete preso a pigione una stanza od una casa? 13.

<sup>a</sup> Note *f*, p. 15.<sup>b</sup> Note *h*, p. 15.<sup>c</sup> Note *g*, p. 105.<sup>d</sup> Note *a*, p. 43.<sup>e</sup> Note *c*, p. 70.<sup>f</sup> When the name of the object spoken of is not repeated in a phrase, *ne* (of him, her, it, or them) must be used in its stead.<sup>g</sup> Note *g*, p. 30.<sup>h</sup> Note *a*, p. 72; and Note *b*, p. 76.<sup>i</sup> See Dem. Pron., p. 9.<sup>j</sup> See Relat. Pron., p. 9

## IRREGULAR VERBS—THIRD CONJUGATION.

OBS.—The irregular verbs of the 3rd conjugation are:

<i>apparire</i> , to appear,	<i>morire</i> , to die
<i>aprire</i> , to open,	<i>offrire</i> , to offer,
<i>cucire</i> , to sew,	<i>sulire</i> , to ascend,
<i>convertire</i> , to convert,	<i>seguire</i> , to follow,
<i>dire</i> , to say,	<i>seppellire</i> , to bury,
<i>empire</i> , to fill,	<i>udire</i> , to hear,
<i>esaurire</i> , to exhaust,	<i>uscire</i> , to go out,
<i>istruire</i> , to instruct,	<i>venire</i> , to come,

with some of their derivatives which are conjugated like them.

*Apparire*, to appear.

[N.B.—This verb is partly conjugated like *parere*, and partly like *finire*.]

Infinitive—*apparire*, to appear.

Indicative Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>apparisco</i> or <i>appáio</i> , I appear.	<i>appariámo</i> , we appear.
<i>apparisci</i> , thou appearest.	<i>apparite</i> , you appear.
<i>apparisce</i> or <i>appáre</i> , he appears.	<i>appariscono</i> or <i>appáiono</i> , they [appear.

Imperfect—*appariva*, I appeared.

Perfect or Past.

<i>apparíi</i> , <i>appárvi</i> , or <i>appársi</i> , I [did appear.	<i>apparímmo</i> , we did appear.
<i>apparísti</i> , thou didst appear.	<i>apparísti</i> , you did appear.
<i>apparíi</i> , <i>appárve</i> , or <i>appárse</i> , he [did appear.	<i>apparírono</i> , <i>appárvero</i> , or <i>appársero</i> , they did appear.

Future—*apparirò*, I shall appear.

Conditional—*appariréi*, I should appear.

Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>appariámo</i> , let us appear
<i>apparisci</i> , appear (thou).	<i>apparíte</i> , appear (you).
<i>apparisca</i> or <i>appáia</i> , let him [appear.	<i>appariscano</i> or <i>appáiano</i> , let them [appear.

### Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io apparisca</i> or <i>appaia</i> , that I [may appear.	<i>che appariamo</i> , that we may [appear.
<i>che tu apparisca</i> or <i>appaia</i> , that [thou mayest appear.	<i>che appariate</i> , that you may ap- [pear.
<i>ch' egli apparisca</i> or <i>appaia</i> , that [he may appear.	<i>che appariscano</i> or <i>appaiano</i> , that [they may appear.

**Subjunctive Imperfect**—*s' io apparissi*, if I might appear.

Present Participle { *apparándo*  
 *apparánte* } appearing.

**Past Participle**—*apparito* or *apparso*, appeared.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

**Infinitive**—*essere apparito*, to have appeared.  
                   &c.                   &c.                   &c.

Obs.—*Comparire*, to show one's self, *sparire*, to disappear, with all their derivatives, are conjugated like *apparire*, but they are seldom found with the termination *si* in the Perfect, and *so* in the Past Participle, and some of them have only the terminations *isco*, *isce*, &c.. in the Present.

*Aprire*, to open.

[N.B.—*Aprire*, to open, and its compounds *coprire*, to cover, *scoprire* or *discoprire*, to discover, &c., may be regular or irregular in the Perfect, must be irregular in the Past Participle, and are conjugated in the other tenses like *sentire*.]

Infinitive—*ouvrir*, to open.

**Perfect or Past.**

***Singular.***

*Plural.*

*aprii* or *apérsi*, I did open.

*aprimmo*, we did open.

*apristi*, thou didst open.

*apriste*, you did open.

*apri* or *apérse*, he did open.

*aprírono* or *apérsero*, they &c.

Past Participle—*apérto*, opened

### COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere aperto*, to have opened.  
                   &c.                   &c.                   &c.

*Cucire*, to sew.

[N.B.—*Cucire*, to sew, *ricucire*, to sew again, *scucire*, to unsew, *sdrucire* or *sdruscire*, to rip a seam, take an *i*, in order to preserve the soft sound of the *c*, when followed by *a* or *o*.]

Infinitive—*cucire*, to sew.

## Indicative Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>cúcio</i> , I sew.	<i>cuciamo</i> , we sew.
<i>cúci</i> , thou sewest.	<i>cucite</i> , you sew.
<i>cúce</i> , he sews.	<i>cuciono</i> , they sew.

Indicative Imperfect...	<i>cuciva</i> , I was sewing.
„ Perfect.....	<i>cucii</i> , I did sew.
„ Future.....	<i>cucirò</i> , I shall sew.

Conditional—*cuciréi*, I should sew.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>cuciamo</i> , let us sew.
<i>cúci</i> , sew (thou).	<i>cucite</i> , sew (you).
<i>cúcia</i> , let him sew.	<i>cuciano</i> , let them sew.

## Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io cúcia</i> , that I may sew.	<i>che cuciamo</i> , that we may sew.
<i>che tu cúcia</i> , that thou mayest sew.	<i>che cuciate</i> , that you may sew.
<i>ch' egli cúcia</i> , that he may sew.	<i>che cuciano</i> , that they may sew.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io cucissi*, if I might sew.Present Participle—*cucendo*, sewing.Past Participle—*cucito*, sewed.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive— <i>avere cucito</i> , to have sewed.
&c.                      &c.                      &c.

*Convertire*, to convert, and *Sovvertire*, to subvert.

[N.B.—These verbs may be conjugated throughout like *sentire*, or like *finire*, but in the Perfect and Past Participle have also the irregular forms *conversi*, I converted, *soversati*, I subverted, and *converso*, converted, *soversato*, subverted.]

*Dire*, to say.

[N.B.—*Dire*, to say, is often placed by grammarians among the irregular verbs of the 2nd conjugation, because it is contracted from *dicere*, now obsolete, of which it still retains many forms.

Infinitive—*dire*, to say.

## Indicative Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>dico</i> , I say.	<i>diciamo</i> , we say.
<i>dici</i> , thou sayest.	<i>dite</i> , you say.
<i>dice</i> , <sup>a</sup> he says.	<i>dicono</i> , they say.

Imperfect—*diceva*, I was saying.

## Perfect or Past.

<i>dissi</i> , I did say, or I said.	<i>dicemmo</i> , we did say.
<i>dicesti</i> , thou didst say.	<i>diceste</i> , you did say.
<i>disse</i> , he did say.	<i>dissero</i> , they did say.

Future—*dirò*, I shall say.Conditional—*direi*, I should say.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>diciamo</i> , let us say.
<i>dì</i> , say (thou).	<i>dite</i> , say (you).
<i>dica</i> , let him say.	<i>dicano</i> , let them say.

## Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io dica</i> , that I may say.	<i>che diciamo</i> , that we may say.
<i>che tu dica</i> , that thou mayest say.	<i>che diciate</i> , that you may say.
<i>ch' egli dica</i> , that he may say.	<i>che dicano</i> , that they may say.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io dicessi*, if I might say.

Present Participle { *dicendo*  
                          *dicente* } saying.

Past Participle—*détto*, said.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere detto*, to have said.

&c.                      &c.                      &c.

OBS.—*Ridire*, to say again, *contradire*, to contradict, *interdire*, to forbid, *maldire*, to speak ill of, are all conjugated like *dire*. *Benedire*, to bless, *maledire*, to execrate, may be conjugated either like *dire*, or like *finire*, in all the tenses, but not in the Participles, in which the forms of *dire* are always followed.

<sup>a</sup> The expression, *Come si dice in italiano ....?* What is the Italian for ....? is used in asking the equivalent of a word or phrase.



*Empire*, to fill.

[N.B.—The verbs *empire*, to fill, *compire*, to finish, *adempire*, to fulfil, are also spelt, *empiere*, *compiere*, *adempiere*, and then they may be conjugated according to the 2nd conjugation, dropping the *i* preceding the Infinitive termination *ere*, when followed by another *i*.]

Infinitive—*empire*, to fill.

Indicative Present.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

*émpio* or *empíscio*, I fill.

*empiámo*, we fill.

*émpi* or *empisci*, thou fillest.

*empíte*, you fill.

*émpie* or *empisce*, he fills.

*empiono* or *empíscono*, they fill.

Indicative Imperfect... *empíva*, I was filling.

„ Perfect..... *empíi*, I did fill.

„ Future..... *empirò*, I shall fill.

Conditional—*empiréi*, I should fill.

Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.

*empiámo*, let us fill.

*émpi*, fill (thou).

*empíte*, fill (you).

*émpia*, let him fill.

*empiano*, let them fill.

Subjunctive Present.

*ch' io émpia*, that I may fill.

*che empíamo*, that we may fill.

*che tu émpia*, that thou mayest fill.

*che empíate*, that you may fill.

*ch' egli émpia*, that he may fill.

*che émpiano*, that they may.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io empíssi*, if I might fill.

Present Participle { *empiéndo* } fillig.  
                              { *empiénte* }

Past Participle—*empíto*, filled.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere empíto*, to have filled.

&c.

&c.

&c.

*Esaurire*, to exhaust, and *digerire*, to digest.

[N.B.—These verbs are conjugated like *finire*, but have two forms in the Past Participle, *esaurito* and *esausto*, *digerito* and *digesto*.]

*Istruire*, to instruct.

[N.B.—*Istruire* or *istruire*, to instruct, and all verbs ending in *struire*, as *costruire*, to build, &c., are conjugated like *finire*, except that they may be either regular or irregular in the Perfect and Past Participle.]

Infinitive—*istruire*, to instruct.

Perfect or Past.

<i>istruì</i> , or <i>istruissi</i> , I did in-	<i>istruimmo</i> , we did instruct.
<i>istruisti</i> , thou didst &c. [struct.	<i>istruiste</i> , you did instruct.
<i>istruì</i> or <i>istruisse</i> , he did &c.	<i>istruirono</i> or <i>istruissero</i> , they [did instruct.

Past Participle—*istruito* or *istruìto*, instructed.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere istruito*, to have instructed.

&c. &c. &c.

*Morire*, to die.

Infinitive—*morire*, to die.

Indicative Present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>muòio</i> or <i>muòro</i> , I die.	<i>muoiámo</i> or <i>moriámo</i> , we die.
<i>muóri</i> , thou diest.	<i>moríte</i> , you die.
<i>muóre</i> , he dies.	<i>muóiono</i> or <i>muórono</i> , they die.

Indicative Imperfect... *moríva*, I was dying.

„ Perfect..... *moríi*, I did die.

„ Future..... *morirò* or *morré*, I shall die.

Conditional—*moriréi* or *morréi*, I should die.

Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>muoiámo</i> or <i>moriámo</i> , let us die.
<i>muóri</i> , die (thou).	<i>moríte</i> , die (you).
<i>muóia</i> or <i>muóra</i> , let him die.	<i>muóiano</i> or <i>muórano</i> , let them die.

Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io muóia</i> or <i>muóra</i> , that I may [die.	<i>che muoiámo</i> or <i>moriámo</i> , that we [may die.
<i>che tu muóia</i> or <i>muóra</i> , that &c.	<i>che muoiáte</i> , that you may die.
<i>ch' egli muóia</i> or <i>muóra</i> , that &c.	<i>che muóiano</i> or <i>muórano</i> , that &c.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io moríssi*, if I might die.

Past Participle—*morto*, dead.

Present Participle  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{morendo} \\ \textit{morente} \\ \textit{moriente} \end{array} \right\}$  dying.

#### COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*essere morto*, to be dead.

&c. &c. &c.

OBS.—*Premorire*, to die before, is conjugated like *morire*.

#### *Offerire* or *offrire*, to offer.

[N.B.—Of the two Infinitive forms of this verb, the first is conjugated like *finire*, and the second like *sentire*. In the Perfect, however, they may be both regular and irregular, but have only one form (irregular) in the Past Participle.]

Infinitive—*offerire* or *offrire*, to offer.

#### Perfect or Past.

##### Singular.

*offerii*, *offrii*, or *offerai*, I offered.  
*offeristi* or *offristi*, thou offeredst.  
*offerì*, *offrì*, or *offerse*, he offered.

##### Plural.

*offerimmo* or *offrimmo*, we offered.  
*offeriste* or *offriste*, you offered.  
*offerirono*, *offrirono*, or *offeressero*,  
 [they offered.]

Past Participle—*offerto*, offered.

OBS.—*Sofferire* or *soffrire*, to suffer, respectively follow exactly the forms of *offerire* or *offrire*, and have the same irregularities in the Perfect and Past Participle. *Conferire*, to confer, *differire*, to differ, *inferire*, to infer, *preferire*, to prefer, *proferire*, to proffer, *referire*, to refer, and *transferire*, to transfer, have only one form in the Infinitive, and are conjugated only like *finire* for all tenses.

#### *Salire*, to ascend.

[N.B.—This verb is partly conjugated like *valere*, and partly like *finire*.]

Infinitive—*salire*, to ascend.

#### Indicative Present.

##### Singular.

*salgo* or *salisco*, I ascend.  
*salì* or *salisci*, thou ascendest.  
*sale* or *salisce*, he ascends.

##### Plural.

*saliamo* or *sagliamo*, we ascend.  
*salite*, you ascend.  
*salgono* or *saliscono*, they ascend.

Imperfect—*saliva*, I was ascending.

Perfect or Past.

*salii* or *salii*, I did ascend.

*salimmo*, we did ascend.

*salisti*, thou didst ascend.

*saliste*, you did ascend.

*salies* or *salì*, he did ascend.

*salsero* or *salirono*, they did &c.

Future—*salirò*, I shall ascend.

Conditional—*salirèi*, I should ascend.

Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.

*saliamo* or *sagliamo*, let us ascend.

*salì*, ascend (thou).

*salite*, ascend (you). [cend.

*salga* or *salisca*, let him ascend.

*salgano* or *saliscano*, let them as-

Subjunctive Present.

*ch' io salga* or *salisca*, that I may

*che saliamo* or *sagliamo*, that we

[ascend.

[may ascend.

*che tu salga* or *salisca*, that thou &c.

*che sagliate*, that you &c.

*ch' egli salga* or *salisca*, that he &c.

*che salgano* or *saliscano*, that &c.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io salissi*, if I might ascend.

Present Participle { *salendo*  
                              *salente*  
                              *sagliante* } ascending.

Past Participle—*salito*, ascended.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*essere salito*, to have ascended.

&c.

&c.

&c.

Obs.—*Risalire*, to re-ascend, *assalire*, to assail, &c., are conjugated like *salire*.

*Seguire*, to follow.

[N.B.—This verb is partly conjugated like *sentire*, and partly like *sedere*.]

Infinitive—*seguire*, to follow.

Indicative Present.

Singular.

Plural.

*seguo* or *siéguo*, I follow.

*seguiamo*, we follow.

*segui* or *siegui*, thou followest.

*seguite*, you follow.

*segue* or *siegue*, he follows.

*seguono* or *siéguno*, they follow.

Indicative Imperfect... *seguiva*, I was following.

„ Perfect..... *seguii*, I did follow.

„ Future..... *seguirò*, I shall follow.

Conditional—*seguiréi*, I should follow.

### Imperative Mood.

**No first person singular.**

*sequiámo*, let us follow.

*séqui* or *siéqui*, follow (thou).

*seguite*, follow (you).

*séqua* or *siéqua*, let him follow.

*séguano* or *siéguano*, let them &c.

### Subjunctive Present:

*ch'* is *ségua* or *siégua*, that I may  
[follow.

*che seguiamo*, that we may fol-  
low.

*che tu séqua* or *siéqua*, that &c.

*che sequiáte, that you &c.*

*ch' egli séqua or siéqua, that &c.*

*che séguano or siéguano, that &c.*

**Subjunctive Imperfect**—*s' io seguíssi*, if I might follow.

Present Participle { *segúndo* } following.  
                              { *seguénte* }

Past Participle—*seguido*, followed.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

**Infinitive**—*avere seguito*, to have followed.

&c.

&c.

&c.

Obs.—*Consequere*, to obtain, *insequere* or *persequere*, to pursue, *prosequere*, to prosecute, to follow on, *subsequere*, to follow immediately after, are conjugated like *sequere*.

*Seppellíre*, to bury.

[N.B.—This verb is conjugated like *finire*, but it has two forms of the Past Participle.]

**Past Participle**—*seppellito* or *sepólto*, buried.

*Udíre*, to hear.

[N.B.—This verb is not a compound of *dire*, and its irregularity consists in changing the letter *u* into *o* throughout the singular, and in the 3rd person plural, of the Indicative Present, Subjunctive Present, and Imperative.]

**Infinitive**—*udîre*, to hear.

### Indicative Present.

***Singular.***

*ódo*, I hear.

*ódi*, thou hearest.

*ode*, he hears.

*Plural.*

*udiámo*, we hear.

*udíte, you hear.*

*ódono*, they hear.

Indicative Imperfect... *udiva*, I was hearing.

„ Perfect..... *udii*, I heard.

„ Future..... *udirò*, I shall hear.

Conditional—*udiré*, I should hear.

#### Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.

*udiamo*, let us hear.

*ódi*, hear (thou).

*udite*, hear (you).

*óda*, let him hear.

*ódano*, let them hear.

#### Subjunctive Present.

*ch' io óda*, that I may hear.

*che udiámo*, that we may hear.

*che tu óda*, that thou mayest &c.

*che udiáte*, that you may hear.

*ch' egli óda*, that he may hear.

*che ódano*, that they may hear.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io udissi*, if I might hear.

Present Participle { *udéndo* } hearing.  
                                  { *udénte* }

Past Participle—*udito*, heard.

#### COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*avere udito*, to have heard.

&c.

&c.

&c.

Obs.—*Riudire*, to hear again, is conjugated like *udire*.

#### *Uscire*, to go out.

[N.B.—This verb has some of its forms derived from the verb *escire*, to go out, now obsolete.]

Infinitive—*uscire*, to go out.

#### Indicative Present.

##### Singular.

*esco*, I go out.

*ésci*, thou goest out.

*ésce*, he goes out.

##### Plural.

*usciamo*, we go out.

*uscite*, you go out.

*escano*, they go out.

Indicative Imperfect ... *usciva*, I was going out.

„ Perfect ..... *uscii*, I went out.

„ Future ..... *uscirò*, I shall go out.

Conditional—*usciréi*, I should go out.

#### Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.

*usciamo*, let us go out.

*ésci*, go (thou) out.

*uscite*, go (you) out.

*ésca*, let him go out.

*escano*, let them go out.

## Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io éscà,</i> that I may go out.	<i>che usciamo,</i> that we may go out.
<i>che tu éscà,</i> that thou &c.	<i>che usciáte,</i> that you may go out.
<i>ch' egli éscà,</i> that he may go out.	<i>che éscano,</i> that they may go out.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io uscissi,* if I might go out.

Present Participle { *uscendo* } going out.  
                               { *uscénte* }

Infinitive—*uscito,* gone out.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*essere uscito,* to have gone out.  
                   &c.                   &c.                   &c.

Obs.—*Riuscire,* to go out again, to succeed, is conjugated like *uscire*.

*Venire,* to come.<sup>a</sup>

[N.B.—This verb has the same irregularities as *tenere*.]

Infinitive—*venire,* to come.

## Indicative Present.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>vengo,</i> I come.	<i>veniamo,</i> we come.
<i>viéni,</i> thou comest.	<i>venite,</i> you come.
<i>viéne,</i> he comes.	<i>vengono,</i> they come.

Imperfect—*veniva,* I was coming.

## Perfect or Past.

<i>vénni,</i> I came.	<i>venimmo,</i> we came.
<i>venisti,</i> thou camest.	<i>veniste,</i> you came.
<i>vénne,</i> he came.	<i>vennero,</i> they came.

Future—*verrò<sup>b</sup>,* I shall come.

Conditional—*verrei,* I should come.

## Imperative Mood.

No first person singular.	<i>veniamo,</i> let us come.
<i>viéni,</i> come (thou).	<i>venite,</i> come (you).
<i>venga,</i> let him come.	<i>vengano,</i> let them come.

<sup>a</sup> *Venire*, used in the 3rd person with the dative of the subject, is Englished by 'to have'; as, *Mi vien voglia,* I have a desire; *Se mi viene il destro,* If I have an opportunity; *Quanto vi viene?* How much have I to pay?

<sup>b</sup> Note *e*, p. 66.

## Subjunctive Present.

<i>ch' io vénga</i> , that I may come.	<i>che veniámo</i> , that we may come.
<i>che t. vénga</i> , that thou &c.	<i>che veniáte</i> , that you may come.
<i>ch' egli vénga</i> , that he &c.	<i>che véngano</i> , that they may come.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io venissi*, if I might come.

Present Participle  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{venéndo} \\ \textit{veniente} \\ \textit{vegnénte} \end{array} \right\}$  coming.

Past Participle—*venúto*, come.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Infinitive—*essere venuto*, to have come  
&c. &c. &c.

ORS.—*Avvenire*, to happen, *addivenire*, to suit, *convenire*, to become, agree, *divenire*, to become, *invenire*, to find, *pervenire*, to reach, *prevenire*, to anticipate, *provenire*, to come from, *rivenire*, to come back, *sovvenire*, to assist, and all other compounds of *venire*, are conjugated alike.

## PHRASES.

*apparire più grande*, to appear larger.  
*scoprire una cosa*, to discover a thing.  
*cucire panni rotti*, to mend torn clothes.  
*mettere toppa*, to put on a patch.  
*convertirsi in vento le speranze d' alcuno*, for any one's hopes to be scattered to the winds.  
*contradire una nuova*, to contradict a piece of news.  
*esaurire le forze*, to exhaust one's strength.  
*costruire case*, to build houses.  
*morire per salvare la patria*, to die to save one's country  
*salire scale*, to mount stairs  
*ascendere montagne*, to climb mountains.  
*seppellire nell' oblio le ingiurie*, to bury injuries in oblivion.  
*udire i suoni*, to hear sounds.  
*uscire la notte*, to come out by night.  
*non venire in fama*, not to come into notice.  
*convenire ad uno stare appresso ai savi uomini*, to be befitting to seek the society of wise men.  
*venire meno*, or *svenire*, to faint.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>luna</i> , moon.	<i>generoso</i> , generous.
<i>Colombo</i> , Columbus.	<i>aria</i> , air.
<i>America</i> , America.	<i>pipistrello</i> , a bat (anim.).
<i>rimendatrice</i> , a repairer (f.).	<i>sotto</i> , under.
<i>cittadino</i> , citizen.	<i>coltre</i> (f.), bed-clothes.
<i>molti</i> , many persons.	



## READING EXERCISE.

1. La luna appare più grande delle stelle. 2. Colombo ha scoperto<sup>a</sup> l' America. 3. Le donne che cuciono panni rotti senza mettervi toppa si chiamano "rimendatrici." 4. Tutte le sue speranze si sono converse in vento. 5. La nuova della pace fu contraddetta dai giornali. 6. Egli ha esausto tutte le sue forze. 7. Le case in Italia sono ben costrutte. 8. I buoni cittadini muoiono volentieri per salvare la patria. 9. Molti hanno sofferto<sup>b</sup>. 10. Si salgono scale, e si ascendono montagne. 11. Gli uomini generosi hanno sepolto nell' obbligo le ingiurie. 12. Senza aria non s' odono i suoni. 13. I pipistrelli non escono che la notte. 14. Non si vien in fama sotto la coltre. 15. Ci convien stare appresso ai savi uomini. 16. Ella vien meno, cioè<sup>c</sup> sviene.

## VOCABULARY.

to come, <i>venire</i> .	to hear, <i>udire</i> .
to tell, <i>dire</i> .	to open, <i>aprire</i> .
to come again, <i>rivenire</i> .	to throw wide open, <i>spalancare</i> .
to happen, <i>avvenire</i> .	to finish, <i>compiere</i> or <i>compire</i> .
to die, <i>morire</i> .	to be necessary, <i>convenire</i> (imp.)
to bury, <i>seppellire</i> .	to be contented with, <i>contentarsi</i>
to sew, <i>cucire</i> .	to offer, <i>offrire</i> . [di.]
to go out, <i>uscire</i> .	to agree upon, <i>convenire</i> .

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. Is your aunt coming to see you the-day-after-  
[Will your aunt come<sup>d</sup> to find] *pos-*  
to-morrow? 2. Yesterday she told – the porter that  
*domani* *al portiere che*  
she would come again this week. 3. Have you seen  
*questa*  
– poor Walter? 4. No; what has happened to him?  
*il povero Gualtiero* [is]  
5. His sister Laura is dead. She was buried yesterday,  
*Sua*

<sup>a</sup> N.B., p. 109.<sup>b</sup> Obs., p. 114.<sup>c</sup> cioè is a compound word of *ciò*, that, and *è*, is.<sup>d</sup> Note e, p. 62.

at — two (o'clock) in-the-afternoon. 6. I am  
*alle pomeridiane* [To me of it  
 very sorry indeed. 7. Joseph, where is the maid-  
 grieves<sup>a</sup> very much.] *Giuseppe la came-*  
 servant? 8. She is in the parlour sewing. 9. Tell<sup>b</sup>  
*riera nella stanza* [that sews]  
 her to come here. 10. At what time do you go  
 [to her] *quà* [hour]  
 out (in) the morning? 11. I go out generally at —  
*la per solito alle*  
 eleven (o'clock). Will you go with me? 12. I can-  
<sup>Pres. Ind. of volere.</sup> [come<sup>c</sup>] *meco*  
 not this morning, because I am going for a ride with  
*a cavallo*  
 my uncle. 13. Who is coming up-stairs? I hear  
*mio di sopra*  
 a footstep. Oh, it is Joseph. Well, have you told  
*un calpestio Or bene*  
 — the servant that I want her? 14. Yes, ma'am,  
*alla lei signora padrona*  
 and she said — she would come to you immediately.  
*che da voi subito*  
 15. Have you opened all the doors and — windows  
*tutti gli usci e le finestre*  
 upstairs? 16. I have thrown everything wide open.  
*di sopra tutto*  
 17. Have you entirely finished — your work? 18. I  
*interamente il vostro lavoro*  
 have finished everything. 19. How much have I to  
*ogni cosa*  
 pay<sup>d</sup>? Two pounds? 20. I must be contented

<sup>a</sup> Note *a*, p. 72, and Note *g*, p. 105.

<sup>b</sup> Note *b*, p. 76, and Note *a*, p. 43.

<sup>c</sup> *Venire*, instead of *andare*, must be employed in Italian when desiring or offering to accompany any one to some place; as, *Volete venire al teatro meco?* Will you go with me to the theatre?

<sup>d</sup> Note *a*, p. 118.

with what you have offered me. 20. 'Here-is-(for-you)  
*quel che* *Eccovi*  
 what we have agreed upon.

## QUESTIONS.

Che fanno le rimendatrici? 3\*.—Da chi fu contradetta la nuova della pace? 5\*.—Chi verrà a trovarvi posdomani? 1.—Esce tutti i giorni vostra madre? 11.—A chi avete detto che voi studiate l'italiano?—Udite voi qualche suono<sup>a</sup>?—Quando avete compiuto il vostro lavoro? 17.—Che si fa per dar aria alle stanze? 15 & 16.—Come si dice in italiano<sup>b</sup>: "How much have I to pay?" 18.—Cor chi ci convien stare per imparare? 15\*.—Dove avete convenuto d' andare a passare l'estate? 20

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

The following verbs are called Defective, because they have only those Moods, Tenses, and Persons here given:—

*Algere*, to be cold, to be chilled.

Perfect—*alsi*, *algésti*, *álse*, *algémmo*, *algésti*, *álsero*,  
 I was cold, &c. (No other tenses.)

*Angere*, to afflict.

Indicative Present—*änge*, he afflicts.

*Arrógere*, to add.

Indicative Present..... *arróge*, he adds.

„ Imperfect... *arrogeva*, he added.

„ Perfect..... *arróse*, he added; pl. *arrósero*, they added.

Present Participle..... *arrogéndo*, adding.

Past Participle ..... *arróso* or *arróto*, added.

<sup>a</sup> *Suono* means 'sound,' and may be used for any noise in general.

<sup>b</sup> Note a, p. 111.

*Calére*, to care for.

(This verb is conjugated impersonally, and requires the dative pronouns *mi*, *ti*, *gli*, &c., before it.)

Indicative Present..... *mi calé, ti calé, &c.*, I care for, thou carest for, &c.

„ Imperfect... *mi caléva*, I cared for.

„ Perfect..... *mi calse*, I did care for.

Subjunctive Present... *che mi cáglia*, that I may care for.

„ Imperfect *se mi calésse*, if I might care for.

Present Participle..... *caléndo*, caring for.

Past Participle ..... *calúto*, cared for.

*Cáperé*, to contain.

Indicative Present..... *cápe*, it contains.

„ Imperfect... *capéva*, it contained; and a few other forms.

*Chérere*, to ask.

Indicative Present..... *chéro*, I ask; *chére*, he asks.

*Cólere*, to worship, revere.

Indicative Present—*cólo*, I revere; *cóle*, he reveres.

*Estóllere*, to raise, exalt.

This verb is wanting in the Perfect and Past Participle only; all the other tenses are conjugated like *credere*.

*Frédere*, to smite.

Indicative Present..... *fiédo, fiédi, fiéde*, I smite, &c.; pl. *fiédono*, they smite.

„ Imperfect... *fiédéva*, I was smiting.

„ Perfect..... *fiédéi*, I did smite.

Subjunctive Present... *che fiéda, che fiéda, che fiéda, che fiédiámo, che fiédiáto, che fiédano*, that I may smite, &c.

„ Imperfect *se fiédéssi, se fiédéssi, se fiédésse, se fiédéssimo, se fiédéste, se fiédéssero*, if I might smite, &c.

Present Participle ..... *fiédéndo*, smiting.

*Folcìre*, to prop up.

Indicative Present..... *fólce*, he props up.

Subjunctive Imperfect *se folcíasse*, if he might prop up.

*Gíre*, to go.

This verb has, in the Indicative Present and the Imperative, *gíte*, you go, go (you); and in the Subjunctive Present *che giámo*, that we may go, and *che giáte*, that you may go. All its other moods and tenses are conjugated like *sentire*, but it has no Present Participle.

*Ire*, to go.

Indicative Present.....	<i>ite</i> , you go.
„ Imperfect...	<i>iva, ivi, iva, ivámo, iváte, ivano</i> , I was going, &c.
„ Perfect.....	<i>isti</i> , thou didst go; <i>iste</i> , you did go.
„ Future .....	<i>irémo, iréte, iránno</i> , we shall go, &c.
Imperative .....	<i>ite</i> , go (you).
Subjunctive Imperfect	<i>isse</i> , that he might go; <i>iste</i> , that you &c.; <i>issero</i> , that they &c.
Past Participle .....	<i>ito</i> , gone.

*Lícere* or *lécere*, to be lawful.

Indicative Present.....	<i>lice</i> or <i>léce</i> , it is lawful.
Past Participle .....	<i>lícito</i> or <i>lécito</i> , been lawful.

*Lúcere*, to shine.

This verb is wanting in the 1st pers. sing. of the Indicative Present, of the Perfect and of the Past Participle; all the rest is conjugated like *credere*.

*Mólcere*, to soothe.

Indicative Present.....	<i>mólce</i> , he soothes.
„ Imperfect...	<i>mólceva</i> , he was soothing. (And a few other forms.)

*Olire*, to be fragrant.

Indicative Imperfect...	<i>oliva, olivi, oliva</i> , I was fragrant, &c.; pl. <i>olivano</i> , they were fragrant.
-------------------------	--

*Pávère*, to fear.

Indicative Present.....	<i>páve</i> , he fears.
-------------------------	-------------------------

*Récere*, to be sick.

This verb has only the Infinitive.

*Riédere*, to return.

Indicative Present.....	<i>riédo</i> , I return; <i>riédi</i> , thou re- turnest; <i>riéde</i> , he returns; <i>riédono</i> , they return.
„ Imperfect...	<i>redíva</i> , he was returning.
„ Perfect.....	<i>redí</i> , he returned, <i>redírono</i> , tney &c.
Subjunctive Present...	<i>che riéda</i> , that he may return; <i>che riédano</i> , that they may &c.
„ Imperfect...	<i>se riédasse</i> , if he might return.

*Sérpere*, to creep.

This verb has only the singular and 3rd pers. pl. of the Present and Imperfect Indicative and Present Subjunctive, as well as the Present Participle, conjugated like *credere*.

**Silére**, to be silent.

Indicative Present..... *sili, síle*, thou art silent, &c.

**Soffólcere**, to support.

Indicative Present..... *soffólce*, he supports.

" Perfect..... *soffólse*, he supported.  
(And a few other forms.)

**Solére**, to be accustomed, to be wont.

Infinitive—*solére*, to be wont.

Indicative Present.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

*sóglio*, I am wont.

*sogliámo*, we are wont.

*súli*, thou art wont.

*soléte*, you are wont.

*suble*, he is wont.

*sógliono*, they are wont.

Indicative Imperfect... *soléva*, I was wont.

" Perfect..... *fui sólito*, I was wont.

" Future..... *sarò sólito*, I shall be wont.

Conditional—*sarei sólito*, I should be wont.

(No Imperative Mood.)

Subjunctive Present.

*ch' io soglia*, that I may be wont.

*che sogliámo*, that we may &c.

*che tu soglia*, that thou &c.

*che sogliáte*, that you may &c.

*ch' egli soglia*, that he &c.

*che sógliano*, that they may &c.

Subjunctive Imperfect—*s' io soléssi*, if I might be wont.

Present Participle—*soléndo*, being wont.

Past Participle—*sólito*, been wont.

**Stúpere**, to be astonished.

Indicative Present..... *stúpe*, he is astonished.

**Tángere**, to touch.

Indicative Present..... *tánga*, it touches.

**Tóllere**, to take away.

Indicative Present..... *tólli, tólle*, thou takest away, &c.

Subjunctive Present... *che tólla*, that he may take away.

**Tórpere**, to become numb.

Indicative Present..... *tórpo, tórpe*, I become numb, &c.

Subjunctive Present... *che tórpa, che tórpa, che tórpa*, that  
I may &c.

**Úrgere**, to press.

Indicative Present..... *úrge*, he presses.

" Imperfect... *urgéva*, he pressed; pl. *urgévano*,  
they pressed.

Subjunctive Imperfect *se urgéss*, if he might press; pl.  
*se urgéssero*, if they might press.  
 Present Participle ..... *urgénte*, pressing.

*Vigere*, to be vigorous.

Indicative Present..... *vige*, he is vigorous.

„ Imperfect... *vigéva*, he was vigorous.

OBS.—To the above defective verbs must be added *ambire*, to crave, and *ardire*, to dare; which are wanting in the 1st person plural of the Present Indicative and of the Imperative, as well as in the 1st and 2nd persons plural of the Present Subjunctive, because those persons might be confounded with the corresponding forms of the verbs *ambiare*, to amble, and *ardere*, to burn. In the above cases, another verb of similar signification must be employed, or a different form be given to the expression; as, in the case of *ardire*, we would say *osiamo*, we dare, from the verb *osare*, or *abbiamo ardimento*, we are daring; and not *ardiamo*, which means ‘we burn.’

N.B.—A few other verbs of the 3rd conjugation are also wanting in certain persons for the reason above given, and the same substitution of words or expressions must be made in their case also.\*

#### OBSERVATIONS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF VERBS

1. The 1st and 3rd persons plural of Italian verbs in all tenses (except the 1st person plural of the Perfect and Conditional) may drop the final vowel *o*; as, *parliam*, for *parliamo*; *parlan*, for *parlano*; *credevam*, for *credevamo*; *credevan*, for *credevano*; *sentiron*, for *sentirono*; *sentirem*, for *sentiremo*; *venderebber*, for *venderebbero*; *sentissim*, for *sentissimo*, &c.

---

\* At the end of the book will be found an alphabetical list of all the verbs, and a table showing their conjugation.

2. When the 3rd person plural ends in *nno*, the last syllable *no* may be dropped; as, *han*, for *hanno*; *fan*, for *fanno*, &c.

3. The 3rd person plural of the Perfect of verbs ending in that person in *rono*, may drop the last syllable *no*, or even the last three letters; as, *furo* or *fur*, for *furono*; *parlaro* or *parlar*, for *parlarono*; *partiro* or *partir*, for *partirono*, &c.

4. The 2nd person singular of the Imperative of verbs ending in that person in *ni*, may drop the final vowel *i*; as, *tien*, for *tieni*; *pon*, for *poni*, &c.

5. Many Past Participles of the 1st conjugation ending in *ato* are frequently contracted in these terminations, by suppressing the *at*; as *priv-o*, for *priv-at-o*; *dest-o*, for *dest-at-o*, &c.

6. The 1st person singular of the Present Indicative of *essere* may drop the final vowel *o*; as, *son*, I am. (See also Obs. 1, p. 126.)

7. *ggi* is sometimes substituted for *d* in certain persons of verbs whose Infinitive ends in *dere*; as, *chiedgio*, for *chiedo*, I ask; *riveggia*, for *riveda*, that I may see.

8. The letter *v* of the terminations of the 1st and 3rd persons singular and of the 3rd person plural of the Imperfect Indicative is often omitted in verbs belonging to the 2nd and 3rd conjugations; as, *avea*, for *aveva*; *credea*, for *credeva*; *dormiano*, for *dormivano*.

9. A few verbs are spelt with either the Infinitive termination *are* or *ire*; as *impazzare*, or *impazzire*, to go mad, &c. These verbs are differently inflected, each according to the conjugation to which its termination belongs. (See also Note a, p. 52; and Note b, p. 71.)

#### PHRASES.

*calere di sapere alcuna cosa*, to care for knowing anything.

*gire a sarchiare il grano*, to go to weed the corn.

*lucere come la stella*,\* to shine like the sun.

*esser tutto oro*, to be all gold.

*ire a casa*, to go home.

*olire soavemente*, to smell sweet.

*estollere la gran fronte*, to raise the proud brow.

---

\* Poets often call the sun, *stella*, star.



*tangere alcuna casa*, to touch anything.  
*soddisfare il bisogno che urge*, to supply a pressing want.  
*appartenere di ragione*, to belong of right.  
*voler dir la sua*, to give one's opinion.  
*esser buono a dar consiglio*, to be able to advise, counsel.

## VOCABULARY.

*già*, already.  
*ancora*, yet.  
*lucere*, to glitter.

*anche*, also.  
*miseria*, distress.

## READING EXERCISE.

1. Non mi cal<sup>a</sup> di saper<sup>b</sup> chi voi siate. 2. Non aveva ancora cinque anni che già egli giva a sarchiare il grano. 3. Lucevan<sup>c</sup> gli occhi suoi più che la stella. 4. Non è tutto oro ciò che luce. 6. Quando irete voi a casa, irem<sup>c</sup> anche noi. 6. Siete ito a casa? 7. Come quelle viole olivano soavemente! 8. Egli la gran fronte estolle. 9. La vostra miseria non mi tange. 10. Quando il bisogno urge, si deve soddisfarlo. 11. Questa cosa m' appartien<sup>a</sup> di ragione. 12. Tutti voglion<sup>c</sup> dir la sua. 13. Tutti siam buoni a dar consiglio.

## VOCABULARY.

to go, <i>ire</i> , <i>gire</i> , or <i>andare</i> .	to be allowed, <i>licere</i> .
to care, <i>calere</i> .	to pick, <i>cogliere</i> .
to smell sweet, <i>olire soavemente</i> .	to return, <i>tornare</i> .
usually (to be accustomed) to spend, <i>solere (essere solito) passare</i> .	

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. Where are you going, my friend? 2. I am going to the Crystal Palace. 3. Do you usually spend the *al Palazzo di cristallo* Saturday afternoon at that place? 4. I do not care to *dopopranzo a quel luogo* go there (on) any other day of the week. 5. Why, I *alcun altro della* [Oh!]

<sup>a</sup> Note b, p. 71.

<sup>b</sup> Note a, p. 52.

<sup>c</sup> Obs. 1, p. 26.

was accustomed to go there, — last summer, every day,  
*tutti i giorni*  
 and I remember how sweetly the flowers in the garden  
*i del*  
 smelt. 6. But it is not allowed to pick the flowers.  
 7. Yes, I know, but I never returned to town  
*[I know it]* *[in]*  
 without having<sup>a</sup> bought some flowers from a gardener.  
*dei da un*

## QUESTIONS.

Come si dice in italiano<sup>b</sup>: “It is not all gold that glitters”? 4\*.—Dove siete ito oggi? 6\*.—Sanno di buono<sup>c</sup> le viole? 7\*.—Che si deve fare quando il bisogno urge? —Che cosa voglion dir tutti? 12\*.—Solete ire sovente al Palazzo di cristallo? 3 & 4. — È lecito cogliere fiori nei giardini del Palazzo di cristallo? 6.

POETICAL FORMS OF CERTAIN VERBS.<sup>d</sup>

*Essere*, besides the forms given at pp. 12 and 13, has also the poetical forms:—

<i>fóro</i>	for <i>furono</i>	<i>fórano</i>	} for <i>sarebbero</i>
<i>fia</i>	„ <i>sarà</i>	<i>sariuno</i> <sup>e</sup>	
<i>fiano</i>	} „ <i>saranno</i>	<i>sarieno</i>	} „ <i>siano</i>
<i>fieno</i>		<i>sieno</i>	
<i>fóra</i>	} „ <i>sarei</i> <sup>e</sup> or		
<i>saría</i>			
	„ <i>sarebbe</i>		

*E fallo fora non fare a tuo senno.* (DAN. PAR.)

To distrust thy sense were henceforth error. (CARY.)

*Onde fien l'opre tue nel ciel laudate.* (PET. C.)

And on the holy work heaven's blessing shall descend.

(MACGREGOR.)

<sup>a</sup> Note *j*, p. 22.

<sup>b</sup> Note *a*, p. 111.

<sup>c</sup> See Voc., p. 70.

<sup>d</sup> Certain of the above poetical forms are sometimes used also in prose.

<sup>e</sup> The termination *ria* for the 1st and 3rd persons singular, and

*Avere*, besides the forms given at pp. 19 and 20, has in the Present Indicative *ave* for *ha*.

*Soccorri al core omai che langue e posa non ave.* (D. CAS.)

Help thou my heart that languishes and has no rest.

*Fare*, besides the forms given at pp. 59 and 60, has :—

<i>fáce</i>	for <i>fa</i>	<i>fé</i>	} for <i>fece</i>
<i>féa</i>	„ <i>faceva</i>	<i>féo</i>	
<i>féano</i>	„ <i>facevano</i>	<i>fémmo</i>	„ <i>facemmo</i>
<i>féi</i>	„ <i>feci</i>	<i>féste</i>	„ <i>faceste</i>
<i>fésti</i>	„ <i>facesti</i>	<i>férono<sup>a</sup></i>	} „ <i>fecero</i>
		<i>fénno</i>	

*Italia! Italia! O tu cui feo la sorte*

*Dono infelice di bellezza.* (FIL. S.)

*Italia! O Italia! thou who hast*

*The fatal gift of beauty.* (BYRON.)

*Tolto m' hai, Morte, il mio doppio tesoro ;*

*Che mi fea viver lieto e gire altero.* (PET. S.)

Double the treasure death has torn from me

In which life's pride was with its pleasure joined. (PORT.)

*Potere*, besides the forms given at pp. 65 and 66, has :—

<i>puo'</i>	for <i>puoi</i>	<i>potè</i>	for <i>potei</i>
<i>puóte</i>	} „ <i>può</i>	<i>potéo<sup>b</sup></i>	„ <i>potè</i>
<i>póte</i>		<i>poría</i>	„ { <i>potrei</i>
<i>potémo</i>	„ <i>possiamo</i>		„ { <i>potrebbe</i>
<i>pónno</i>	„ <i>possono</i>	<i>poríano</i>	„ <i>potrebbero</i>

*E, se mie rime alcuna cosa ponno.* (PET. S.)

And if my verse shall any value keep. (MACGREGOR.)

*riano* or *rieno* for the 3rd person plural of the Conditional, may be used for all verbs instead of *rei*, *rebbe*, and *rebbero*.

.... *Infranto*

*Avriano già del rio tiranno il giogo.* (MAF. M.)

Long since they would have shaken off the yoke of the wicked tyrant.

*Si vedria che i lor nemici*

*Hanno in sen.* (MET.)

It would be seen that concealed within their breasts they lodge their foes.

<sup>a</sup> The termination *ero* of the 3rd person plural of the Perfect and Conditional has often been changed into *ono* by old writers.

<sup>b</sup> The 3rd pers. sing. Perfect has often a vowel affixed in poetry :

*E poi che mosso fue.* (DANTE.)

And when he had moved onward.

*Volere*, besides the forms given at pp. 66 and 67, has:—

<i>vuóli</i> }	for <i>vuoi</i>	<i>vólsi</i> for <i>vollì</i>
<i>vuó</i> }		<i>vógli</i> <sup>a</sup> „ <i>voglià</i>
<i>volía</i> „	<i>voleva</i>	

*E venni a te, così com' ella volse.* (DANTE.)  
I came to thee, thus, as she wished.

### OBSELETE FORMS OF CERTAIN VERBS OFTEN MET WITH IN OLD ITALIAN WRITERS.

#### *Essere*—

<i>sémo</i>	for <i>siamo</i>	<i>fústi</i>	for <i>fosti</i>
<i>séte</i>	„ <i>siete</i>	<i>fússi</i>	„ <i>fossi</i>
<i>énno</i> }		<i>séndo</i>	„ <i>essendo</i>
<i>én</i> }	„ <i>sono</i>	<i>súto</i>	„ <i>stato</i>
<i>so'</i> }			

#### *Avere*—

<i>ábbo</i> }		<i>avémo</i>	for <i>abbiamo</i>
<i>aggío</i> }	for <i>ho</i>	<i>éi</i>	„ <i>ebbi</i>
<i>aío</i> }		<i>arò</i>	„ <i>avrò</i>
<i>háe</i>	„ <i>ha</i>	<i>aggía</i>	„ <i>abbia</i>

#### *Fare*—

<i>fáci</i>	for <i>fai</i>	<i>facía</i> <sup>b</sup>	for <i>faceva</i>
<i>fáe</i> }		<i>faróe</i> <sup>c</sup>	„ <i>farò</i>
<i>fáce</i> }	„ <i>fa</i>		

Finally, the termination is sometimes changed for the sake of rhyme. Dante uses *venesse* for *venisse*.<sup>d</sup>

*Ma non sì che paura non mi desse*  
*La vista che m' apparve d' un leone ;*  
*Questi pareva che contro me venesse.* (DAN. IN.)  
New dread succeeded, when in view  
A lion came 'gainst me, as it appeared. (CARY.)

<sup>a</sup> The 2nd pers. sing. of the Present Subjunctive of all verbs of the 2nd and 3rd Conjugations may end either in *i* or in *a*.

<sup>b</sup> The termination *ia* is often used for *ea* or *eva*, in the Imperfect of the Indicative.

<sup>c</sup> We often find the vowel *e* affixed to the 1st and 3rd pers. sing. of the Future.

<sup>d</sup> For further examples of obsolete and erroneous forms, see Delâtre's *Teoria dei Verbi italiani*.

## CHAPTER III.

## NOUNS.

IN speaking of Nouns, Gender, Number, and Case are to be considered.

## GENDER.

The Italian language has two genders only, the *masculine* and the *feminine*.

There being no neuter gender, both nouns of *beings* possessing animal life, and nouns of *things* destitute of life, must, in Italian, be either masculine or feminine. The rules, however, for determining the gender of each of the above two classes of nouns are different.

RULES FOR DETERMINING THE GENDER OF NOUNS OF BEINGS  
POSSESSING ANIMAL LIFE.

RULE I.—Nouns denoting males are masculine; as, *uomo*, man; *poeta*, poet; *re*, king; *Giovanni*, John; *leone*, lion, &c.

RULE II.—Nouns denoting females are feminine; as, *donna*, woman; *poetessa*, poetess; *regina*, queen; *Maria*, Mary; *leonessa*, lioness, &c.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Santità*, holiness; *Maestà*, majesty; *Eminenza*, eminence; *Eccellenza*, excellency; *Signoria*, lordship or ladyship; *guida*, guide; *guardia*, guard, watch; *sentinella*, sentry; *spia*, spy; are always *feminine*, even when denoting a man.

2. All surnames, also as *nipote*, nephew or niece; *erede*, heir or heiress; *tigre*, tiger or tigress; *idiota*, an idiot man or an idiot woman, and a few other nouns, applied alike to both *males* and *females*, are of the common gender, *i.e.* *masculine* and *feminine*.

3. *Fante*, meaning a 'foot-soldier,' is *masculine*; when it means a 'maid-servant,' it is *feminine*.

## DISTINCTIONS OF GENDER OF THE ABOVE NOUNS.

There are five ways of distinguishing the masculine from the feminine of nouns of *beings possessing animal life*:—

## 1. By employing a different word for each gender.

Masculine.	Feminine.
<i>padre</i> , father.	<i>madre</i> , mother.
<i>frate</i> , friar.	<i>monaca</i> , nun.
<i>re</i> , king.	<i>regina</i> , queen.
<i>canè</i> , dog.	<i>cagna</i> , bitch.

## 2. By suffixing a termination.

<i>conte</i> , earl.	<i>contessa</i> , countess
<i>guidatore</i> , a male guide.	<i>guidatrice</i> , a female guide
<i>imperatore</i> , emperor.	<i>imperatrice</i> , empress.
<i>pastore</i> , shepherd.	<i>pastoressa</i> , shepherdess.
<i>eroe</i> , hero.	<i>eroina</i> , heroine.
<i>gallo</i> , cock.	<i>gallina</i> , hen.

## 3. By merely changing the termination.

<i>ragazzo</i> , boy.	<i>ragazza</i> , girl.
<i>sarto</i> , tailor.	<i>sarta</i> , dressmaker.
<i>cervo</i> , stag.	<i>cerva</i> , hind.
<i>fattore</i> , steward.	<i>fattora</i> , stewardess

## 4. By prefixing a distinguishing word.

<i>Giovanni Colonna</i> , John [Colonna.	<i>Vittoria Colonna</i> , Victoria [Colonna.
<i>Signor Tasso</i> , Mr. Tasso.	<i>Signora Tasso</i> , Mrs. Tasso.
<i>il giovine</i> , the young man.	<i>la giovine</i> , the young woman.
<i>un idiota</i> , an idiot man.	<i>un' idiota</i> , an idiot woman.

This class comprises those nouns which are of the common gender. (See Excep. 2, p. 132.)

## 5. By appending a distinguishing word.

<i>cammello maschio</i> , a male [camel.	<i>cammello femmina</i> , a female [camel.
<i>aquila maschio</i> , a male [eagle.	<i>aquila femmina</i> , a female [eagle.

## VOCABULARY.

*come si chiama...?* or } what is the name of...?  
*come si denomina...?* }  
*colui che*<sup>a</sup>, he who, the man who.  
*colei che*, she who, the woman who.

## QUESTIONS.

[N.B.—The words to be used in answering the following questions have already been given in previous exercises. Should the student not recollect them, they must be looked for in the Vocabulary at the end of the book.]

Come si chiama *colui che compone versi*? .... *colui che fabbrica le case*? .... *che fa e vende il pane*? .... *che guarisce le malattie*? .... *che conduce al pascolo le pecore*?—Come si chiama *il soldato che va a piedi*<sup>b</sup>?—Come si denomina *colei che ha cura dei bambini*? .... *colei che cuoce la minestra, la torta*? .... *che pulisce le stanze*?

# RULES FOR DETERMINING THE GENDER OF NOUNS OF THINGS DESTITUTE OF LIFE.

All nouns in Italian terminate in one or other of the vowels *a, e, i, o, u*<sup>c</sup>. It is by these terminations that the gender of nouns of *things destitute of life* can generally be determined.

## A.

RULE I.\*—Nouns ending in *a* are feminine; as, *carta*, paper; *bottega*, shop, &c.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. Are masculine:—

(i.) Terms of science, in general ending in *ma*; as, *telegramma*, telegram; *anagramma*, anagram; *prisma*, prism, &c.

(ii.) Names of mountains ending in *a*; as, *Etna*, Etna, &c.

<sup>a</sup> See Demons. and Relat. Pron., p. 9.

<sup>b</sup> See Excep. 3, p. 132.

<sup>c</sup> *Lapis*, pencil, *diesis*, semitone, *ribes*, a currant, and a few other nouns found in Italian ending with a consonant, are foreign words used in their primitive state. They are masculine, and have the same termination in both singular and plural.

(iii.) The names of the following three rivers : *Mella, Pescara, Volga*, and of the lake *Ladoga*.

(iv.) All the nouns in the following list :—

<i>baccalà</i> , dried cod.	<i>poema</i> , poem.
<i>boa</i> , boa.	<i>problema</i> , problem.
<i>Canadà</i> , Canada.	<i>proclama</i> , proclamation.
<i>cholera</i> , cholera.	<i>programma</i> , prospectus.
<i>clima</i> <sup>a</sup> , climate.	<i>sofà</i> , sofa, couch.
<i>emblema</i> , emblem.	<i>sciloma</i> , a long speech.
<i>falpalà</i> , flounce.	<i>sistema</i> , system.
<i>idioma</i> , tongue.	<i>stemma</i> , coat of arms.
<i>Panamà</i> , Panama.	<i>taffetà</i> , taffety.

2. The nouns *diadema*, diadem, *scisma*, schism, *stratagemma*, stratagem, and the names of the two rivers *Adda* and *Brenta*, are of the common gender.

3. The nouns *dramma*, *pianeta*, *tema*, in the signification of 'drama,' 'planet,' 'theme,' are masculine; and in the signification of 'drachm,' 'cope,' 'fear,' are feminine.

## O.

RULE II.—Nouns ending in *o* are masculine; as, *oro*, gold; *argento*, silver, &c.

### EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Mano*, hand; which is feminine.
2. *Milano*, Milan, and all names of towns ending in *o*, are of the common gender.
3. *Eco*, echo, is feminine in the singular, and masculine in the plural.

Obs.—*Vorago*, *Cartago*, *imago*, and *testudo*, are feminine; but they are only used in poetry, and are contracted from *voragine*, gulf, *Cartagine*, Carthage, *immagine*, image, *testudine*, tortoise, all feminine nouns.

## U.

RULE III.—Nouns which end in *u* are feminine; as, *gioventù*, youth; *virtù*, virtue; *servitù*, the servants, &c.

### EXCEPTIONS.

*Perù*, Peru; *fisciù*, neckerchief; *bambù*, bamboo; *accagiù*, mahogany; *soprappiù*, overplus; *meu*, dill (herb); are masculine.

---

<sup>a</sup> Almost all nouns in the above list ending in *ma* are Greek neuters.



**E—I.**

Of nouns ending in *e* or *i*, some are masculine and some feminine; as,

Masculine.	Feminine.
<i>fiume</i> , river.	<i>neve</i> , snow.
<i>brindisi</i> , toast.	<i>metropoli</i> , metropolis.

These being very irregular in regard to gender, the dictionary must be referred to in order to ascertain it. However the following rules will be of some assistance to the student:—

**RULE I.**—All nouns ending in *zione* and *udine* are feminine; as, *nazione*, nation; *inquietudine*, disquietude, &c.

**RULE II.**—The noun *dì*, *day*, and all its derivatives, *lunedì*, Monday, *mezzodì*, mid-day, &c., are masculine.

**RULE III.**—*Analisi*, analysis; *diocesi*, diocese; *ellissi* or *ellisse*, ellipsis; *parentesi*, parenthesis; *genesi*, origin, and a few more nouns ending in *i*, are feminine.

**RULE IV.**—Almost all names of kingdoms and provinces and rivers ending in *e* or *i*, are masculine; as, *Tamigi*, Thames; *Piemonte*, Piedmont.

**RULE V.**—The names of towns ending in *i* or *e*, as *Napoli*, Naples, *Firenze*, Florence, &c., and the nouns *aere*, air, *carcere*<sup>a</sup>, prison, *cenere*<sup>a</sup>, ashes, *elce*, holm-oak (tree), *fine*<sup>b</sup>, end, *folgore*, thunderbolt, *fonte*, fountain, *fronte*<sup>c</sup>, forehead, *fune*<sup>c</sup>, rope, *gregge*<sup>a</sup>, flock, *rovere*, oak-tree, *trave*, beam, *Genesi*, the book of Genesis, *eclissi*, eclipse, are of the common gender.

**RULE VI.**—*Dimane*, *marginè*, in the signification of ‘to-morrow,’ ‘brink,’ are masculine; but in the signification of ‘the break of day,’ ‘scar,’ are feminine.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON THE GENDERS OF NOUNS OF THINGS DESTITUTE OF LIFE.

1. With regard to the letters of the alphabet, the

- <sup>a</sup> *Carcere*, *cenere*, *gregge*, in the plural, are feminine only.
- <sup>b</sup> *Fine*, in the signification of ‘aim,’ is masculine only.
- <sup>c</sup> *Fronte* and *fune* in prose are feminine only.

letters *a, e, f, h, l, m, n, r, s, z* are of the *feminine gender*; all the others are *masculine*.

Ex.: *Ceno contò dall' A fino alla Z ogni cosa.* (Ces.)  
Ceno related everything from beginning to end.

2. Any part of speech converted into a noun is *masculine*.<sup>b</sup>

Ex.: *Lo<sup>a</sup> sprecare nuoce, contentati del<sup>a</sup> poco.* (PAND.)  
Extravagance is injurious; be contented with little.

3. Masculine nouns in *o*, being names of trees, change their termination into *a*, and become feminine, to denote the fruit; as, *pero*, pear-tree, and *pera*, a pear (the fruit), &c.; excepting however *fico*, fig; *dattero*, date; *cedro*, cedar; and *pomo*, apple; which do not change, and are always masculine, both when signifying the tree and the fruit. Similar nouns in *e* are masculine when denoting the tree, and feminine when denoting the fruit; as, *un<sup>a</sup> noce*, a nut-tree; *una<sup>a</sup> noce*, a nut; excepting *limone*, lemon, which is masculine in both instances.

4. Some nouns have two terminations in the singular, one in *o* and another in *a*. In the first case they are masculine, and in the second feminine; as, *mattino* (mas.) or *mattina* (fem.), morning. Other nouns have either the termination *a* or *e*, and others *o* or *e*. The nouns having the two former terminations are always feminine, and those having the two latter ones are masculine, as, *ala* or *ale*, wing (fem.); *pensiero* or *pensiere*, thought (masc.).

[N.B.—The knowledge of the gender of a noun is necessary in order to the correct use of the articles, adjectives, pronouns, and past participles, which have in Italian to agree with the nouns.]

#### VOCABULARY.

*ottavo*, eighth.  
*parte*, part.

*oncia*, ounce.  
*componimento*, composition.

<sup>a</sup> See Articles, p. 8.

<sup>b</sup> Adjectives ending in *e*, cardinal numbers, and some possessive, demonstrative, and indefinite pronouns, when converted into nouns, may be either masculine or feminine, according to the gender of the noun they represent. Examples of these will be given in those chapters of this book, which treat of the above parts of speech.

*prezioso*, precious.*metallo*, metal.*che nome si dà...*? what is called...?*maschile*, masculine.*frutto*, fruit.*melo*, apple.

## QUESTIONS.

Come si chiama l'acqua che piove?... l'ottava parte d'un' oncia<sup>a</sup>? — Che componimento è il "Comus" di Milton<sup>b</sup>? — Come si chiama il più prezioso dei metalli<sup>c</sup>? — Che nome si dà a tutti i servi d'una casa<sup>d</sup>? .... a molte pecore che vanno insieme? — Quali giorni della settimana sono maschili? — Come si dice<sup>e</sup> il frutto del melo<sup>f</sup>? .... del pero? .... del limone? .... del fico?

## NUMBER.

Italian nouns have two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*. Both the nouns of *beings possessing animal life* and of *those destitute of life* follow the same rules in forming the plural.

I. Feminine nouns in...**a** form the plural in **e**; as,

Sing.	Plur.
<i>sorella</i> , sister;	<i>sorelle</i> .

II. { Masculines in ..... **a**  
 Masc. and Fem. in **e**  
 " " **o** } form the plural in **i**; as,

<i>poeta</i> , poet;	<i>poeti</i> .
<i>padre</i> , father;	<i>padri</i> .
<i>madre</i> , mother;	<i>madri</i> .
<i>mano</i> , hand;	<i>mani</i> .
<i>fratello</i> , brother;	<i>fratelli</i> .

III. { Masc. and Fem. in **i**  
 " " **u**  
 " " **ie**  
 Monosyllables .....  
 Nouns with accented  
 final vowel ..... } are invariable; as,

<i>metropoli</i> , capital;	<i>metropoli</i> .
<i>virtù</i> , virtue;	<i>virtù</i> .
<i>specie</i> , kind;	<i>specie</i> .
<i>re</i> , king;	<i>re</i> .
<i>città</i> , city;	<i>città</i> .

N.B.—Of those nouns which have two terminations in the singular (see Obs. 4, p. 137), those which end in

<sup>a</sup> See Excep. 3, p. 135.<sup>b</sup> See Excep. 1 (iv.), p. 135.<sup>c</sup> Rule II., p. 135.<sup>d</sup> Rule III., p. 135.<sup>e</sup> Note a, p. 111.<sup>f</sup> See Obs. 3, p. 137.<sup>g</sup> See Nouns, p. 7.

*e* and in *a* will have in the plural *i* and *e*; as, *cesto*, *cesta*, basket; pl. *cesti*, *ceste*. Those which end in *a* or *e* will have in the plural *e* and *i*; as, *ala*, *ale*, wing; pl. *ale*, *ali*. Those which end in *e* and *o* will have only one termination in the plural; as, *cavaliere*, *cavaliero*, knight; pl. *cavalieri*.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE EUPHONIC MODIFICATION OF  
PLURAL NOUNS. (See also p. 7.)

1. Nouns ending in *ca* or *ga* form the plural in *che* and *ghe* when feminine, and in *chi* and *ghi* when masculine; as, *monaca*, nun, *monache*; *bottega*, shop, *botteghe*; *monarca*, monarch, *monarchi*; *collega*, colleague, *colleghe*.

2. Nouns ending in *cia* or *gia* (with *i* not accented) form the plural in *ce* and *ge*; as, *guancia*, cheek, *guance*. This alteration, however, is not made when the accent falls on the *i*; as, *Lucia*, Lucy, *Lucie*; *bugia*, lie, *bugie*.

3. Nouns ending in *io* form the plural by dropping the final *o*; as, *specchio*, looking-glass, *specchi*. When, however, the accent falls on the *i*, the plural is formed regularly; as, *zio*, uncle, *zii*. The latter mode is employed also in words which might be mistaken for others of a different meaning; as, *tempio*, temple, has *tempii* or *tempj*, to distinguish it from *tempi*, plural of *tempo*, time.

4. Nouns of two syllables ending in *co* or *go* form the plural in *chi* and *ghi*; as, *bosco*, wood, *boschi*; *lago*, lake, *laghi*. Excepting *porco*, pig, *Greco*, Greek, which in the plural make *porci*, *Greci*.<sup>\*</sup> So *mago*, one of the Magi, makes plural *magi*; but *mago*, a magician, has the plural *maghi*.

5. Nouns of more than two syllables ending in *co* and *go* take *h* in the plural when these terminations are preceded by a consonant; as, *tedesco*, German, *tedeschi*, Germans. When the final syllables *co* and *go* are preceded by a vowel, they form the plural in *ci* and *gi*; as, *amico*, friend, *amici*.

<sup>\*</sup> When *greco* is used adjectively to qualify *wine*, it takes an *h* in the plural, and we say, *vini greci*, Greek wines.

The following words are exceptions to the last rule, and take an *h* in the plural:—

<i>abaco</i> , abacus.	<i>parroco</i> , curate.
<i>antico</i> ,* ancient.	<i>pedagogo</i> , pedagogue.
<i>beccafico</i> , fig-pecker.	<i>pelago</i> , ocean.
<i>caduco</i> , perishable.	<i>pizzico</i> , pinch.
<i>carico</i> , load.	<i>presago</i> , diviner.
<i>castigo</i> , punishment.	<i>prodigo</i> , prodigal.
<i>catalogo</i> , catalogue.	<i>prologo</i> , prologue.
<i>demagogo</i> , demagogue.	<i>pudico</i> , chaste.
<i>epilogo</i> , epilogue.	<i>rammarico</i> , regret.
<i>fondaco</i> , warehouse.	<i>ripiego</i> , expedient.
<i>impiego</i> , employment.	<i>rogo</i> , funeral pyre.
<i>incarico</i> , charge.	<i>risico</i> , risk.
<i>indaco</i> , indigo.	<i>sacrilego</i> , sacrilegious.
<i>impudico</i> , immodest.	<i>sambuco</i> , elder-tree.
<i>intrigo</i> , intrigue.	<i>statico</i> , hostage.
<i>intrinseco</i> , intrinsic.	<i>stomaco</i> , stomach.
<i>lastrico</i> , pavement.	<i>strascico</i> , train.
<i>manico</i> , handle.	<i>traffico</i> , traffic.
<i>obbligo</i> , obligation.	<i>ubbriaco</i> , drunkard.
<i>opaco</i> , opaque.	

Plural *abachi*, *antichi*, *beccafichi*, &c.

With the following words the *h* may be either employed or not:—

<i>analogo</i> , analogous.	<i>filologo</i> , philologue.
<i>apologo</i> , apologue.	<i>fantastico</i> , fantastic.
<i>aprico</i> , sunny.	<i>idropico</i> , dropsical.
<i>astrologo</i> , fortune-teller.	<i>mendico</i> , mendicant.
<i>bifolco</i> , ploughman.	<i>pedagogo</i> , pedagogue.
<i>dialogo</i> , dialogue.	<i>selvatico</i> , wild.
<i>dittongo</i> , diphthong.	<i>zotico</i> , boorish.
<i>equivoco</i> , mistake.	

These may be in the plural *analoghi* or *analoghi*, *apologi* or *apologhi*, &c.

---

\* Adjectives and nouns, in the formation of the plural, follow the same rules. *Cardinal numbers*, however (except *mille* and *milione*), remain invariable in their termination. Some pronouns, which are also used as adjectives, have special forms in the plural, which will be found in the chapters of this book which treat of them.

## IRREGULAR PLURALS.

The irregularity in the plural of nouns is of three different kinds, as shown in the following lists (see p. 7):

## I. Nouns having anomalous plurals.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>uomo</i> , man.	<i>uomini</i> .
<i>dio</i> , god.	<i>dei</i> .
<i>bue</i> , ox.	<i>buoi</i> .
<i>moglie</i> , wife.	<i>mogli</i> .

II. Nouns which, ending in the singular with the masculine termination *o*, become feminine by forming their plural in *a*.

Singular Masc.	Plural Fem.
<i>centinaio</i> , a hundred.	<i>centinaia</i> .
<i>migliaio</i> , a thousand.	<i>migliaia</i> .
<i>miglio</i> , a mile.	<i>miglia</i> .
<i>moggio</i> , a measure of corn equal to a bushel.	<i>moggia</i> .
<i>paio</i> , a pair.	<i>paia</i> .
<i>staio</i> , a bushel.	<i>staia</i> .
<i>suolo</i> , the sole of a shoe.	<i>suola</i> .
<i>uovo</i> , an egg.	<i>uova</i> .

N.B.—*Donora*, wedding presents, and *tempora*, the four Ember weeks, are the feminine plurals respectively of the masculine nouns *dono* and *tempo*.

III. Nouns in *o* having two terminations in the plural, one regular in *i*, masculine, and an irregular one in *a*, feminine.

Sing. Masc.	Pl. Masc.	Pl. Fem.
<i>anello</i> , ring.	<i>anelli</i> .	<i>anella</i> .
<i>braccio</i> , arm.	<i>bracci</i> <sup>a</sup> .	<i>braccia</i> .
<i>budello</i> , bowel.	<i>budelli</i> .	<i>budella</i> .
<i>calcagno</i> , heel.	<i>calcagni</i> .	<i>calcagna</i> .
<i>carro</i> , cart.	<i>carri</i> .	<i>carra</i> .
<i>castello</i> , castle.	<i>castelli</i> .	<i>castella</i> .
<i>ciglio</i> , eyebrow.	<i>cigli</i> <sup>a</sup> .	<i>ciglia</i> .
<i>cervello</i> , brain.	<i>cervelli</i> .	<i>cervella</i> .
<i>cogno</i> , a wine measure of ten barrels.	<i>cogni</i> .	<i>cogna</i> .

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 3, p. 139.

Sing. Masc.	Pl. Masc.	Pl. Fem.
<i>coltello</i> , knife.	<i>coltelli</i> .	<i>coltella</i> .
<i>comandamento</i> , commandment.	<i>comandamenti</i> .	<i>comandamenta</i> .
<i>corno</i> , horn.	<i>corni</i> .	<i>cornea</i> .
<i>dito</i> , finger or toe.	<i>diti</i> .	<i>dita</i> .
<i>digiuno</i> , fasting.	<i>digiuni</i> .	<i>digiuna</i> .
<i>fastello</i> , bundle of wood.	<i>fastelli</i> .	<i>fastella</i> .
<i>fosso</i> , ditch.	<i>fossi</i> .	<i>fossa</i> .
<i>filo</i> , thread.	<i>fili</i> .	<i>fila</i> .
<i>fondamento</i> , foundation.	<i>fondamenti</i> .	<i>fondamenta</i> <sup>a</sup> .
<i>frutto</i> , fruit.	<i>frutti</i> .	<i>frutta</i> <sup>b</sup> .
<i>fuso</i> , spindle.	<i>fusi</i> .	<i>fusa</i> .
<i>gesto</i> , gesture.	<i>gesti</i> .	<i>gesta</i> <sup>c</sup> .
<i>ginocchio</i> , knee.	<i>ginocchi</i> .	<i>ginocchia</i> .
<i>gomito</i> , elbow.	<i>gomiti</i> .	<i>gomita</i> .
<i>grido</i> , cry.	<i>gridi</i> .	<i>grida</i> .
<i>labbro</i> , lip.	<i>labbri</i> .	<i>labbra</i> <sup>d</sup> .
<i>legno</i> , wood.	<i>legni</i> .	<i>legna</i> <sup>e</sup> .
<i>lenzuolo</i> , sheet.	<i>lenzuoli</i> .	<i>lenzuola</i> .
<i>membro</i> , member.	<i>membri</i> .	<i>membra</i> <sup>f</sup> .
<i>muro</i> , wall.	<i>muri</i> .	<i>mura</i> <sup>g</sup> .
<i>osso</i> , bone.	<i>ossi</i> .	<i>ossa</i> .
<i>peccato</i> , sin.	<i>peccati</i> .	<i>peccata</i> .
<i>pomo</i> , apple.	<i>pomi</i> .	<i>poma</i> .
<i>pugno</i> , fist.	<i>pugni</i> .	<i>pugna</i> .
<i>quadrello</i> , dart.	<i>quadrelli</i> .	<i>quadrella</i> .
<i>riso</i> , laugh.	<i>risi</i> .	<i>risa</i> <sup>h</sup> .
<i>sacco</i> , bag.	<i>sacchi</i> .	<i>sacca</i> .
<i>strido</i> , shriek.	<i>stridi</i> .	<i>strida</i> .
<i>vestigio</i> , vestige.	<i>vestigii</i> .	<i>vestigia</i> .
<i>vestimento</i> , raiment.	<i>vestimenti</i> .	<i>vestimenta</i> .

<sup>a</sup> *fondamenti* and *fondamenta*, foundations of a building; for 'fundamental principles,' only *fondamenti* is used.

<sup>b</sup> *frutti*, *frutta*, or *frutte*, the fruit of a tree; *frutti*, the income, interest, or productions of the earth.

<sup>c</sup> *gesti*, gesticulations; *gesta*, exploits.

<sup>d</sup> *labbri* or *labbra*, lips; *labbri*, brim of a cup.

<sup>e</sup> *legni*, ships, coaches, or billets of wood; *legna* or *legne*, firewood.

<sup>f</sup> *membri*, members of a society; *membra*, limbs of the body.

<sup>g</sup> *muri*, the walls of a house; *mura*, the walls of a fortress; but in poetry *mura* is also used for the walls of a house.

<sup>h</sup> *risi* or *risa* laughter; *riso*, rice, has plural *risi* only.

## DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

(1.) Some nouns have only the singular, and want the plural ; as, *aere*, air ; *mane*, morning ; *tema*, fear ; *mano*, handful of men, &c.

(2.) Other nouns want the singular, being only used in the plural :—

<i>annali</i> (m.), annals.	<i>moine</i> , caresses.
<i>carabottole</i> , riff-raff.	<i>molle</i> , tongs.
<i>cesoie</i> , shears.	<i>nozze</i> , nuptials.
<i>fasti</i> (m.), annals.	<i>spezie</i> , spices.
<i>forbici</i> , scissors.	<i>stoviglie</i> , crockery-ware.

N.B.—The words in the above list which have not the gender indicated, are feminine.

## PLURAL OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

1. Some nouns form the plural by inflecting the principal noun, and leaving invariable the word that serves to qualify it ; as, *capopopolo*, popular chief ; plural, *capipopolo* ; *cassamadia*, a kneading-trough, pl. *cassamadie*.

2. Other compound nouns inflect both compounding words according to the general rules ; as, *bassorilievo*, bas-relief, pl. *bassirilievi*.

3. Finally, nouns composed of a verb and a noun generally remain invariable ; as, *guardavivande*, pantry, pantries, &c.

## OBSERVATIONS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF NOUNS.

1. Some nouns ending in *l*, *m*, *n*, or *r*, followed by a vowel, may drop their final vowel ; as, *sal* for *sale*, salt ; *don* for *dono*, gift, &c.

2. When the noun ends in *llo*, it drops the final syllable *lo* ; as, *agnel* for *agnello*, lamb.

See also Use of Capitals, p. 6.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>oggetto</i> , object.	<i>scheletro</i> , skeleton.
<i>cerchio</i> , ring.	<i>animale</i> (m.), animal.
<i>ornamento</i> , ornament.	<i>melarancio</i> , orange.



## QUESTIONS.

Che fa il muratore?.... il sarto?—Quante dita abbiamo in ciascuna<sup>a</sup> mano?—Con che possiamo noi vedere gli oggetti?—Come si chiamano i cerchi d'oro che si portano in dito per ornamento<sup>b</sup>?—Di che si compone lo scheletro d'un animale?—Che cosa produce il melarancio<sup>c</sup>?

## CASE

Italian nouns are not declined. The prepositions *di*, of, *a*, to or at, *da*<sup>d</sup>, from or by, are used to point out the relations between the Subject and Object with the Possessor and indirect Object<sup>e</sup>; as,

*Ho dato a Luigi il libro di Pietro che è venuto da Parigi,*

I have given to Louis Peter's book which came from Paris.

OBS.—There is only one way of expressing in Italian, the possessive case, *i. e.* with the preposition *di*. This preposition denotes also *affinity*, *source*, and *material*; as,

*pena di morte*, pain of death;

*vino d' Oporto*, port wine;

*bottiglia di vino*, bottle of wine.

*Di* must not to be confounded with *da*, which denotes *use*, *destination*, and *derivation*; as,

*bottiglia da vino*, wine bottle;

*cavallo da vendere*, horse to be sold;

*moda (venuta) da Parigi*, Parisian fashion.

<sup>a</sup> See Indef. Pron., p. 10.

<sup>b</sup> III., p. 141.

<sup>c</sup> See Obs. 3, p. 137; Obs. 2, p. 139; and Obs. 2, p. 143.

<sup>d</sup> Note g, p. 48.

<sup>e</sup> It is customary with many to speak of Italian nouns as if declined, and then to the terms Nominative &c. the same meaning is given in Italian as in Latin grammar. We do not do so in the case of nouns, because Italian nouns, strictly speaking, are not declined; but we will adopt the above plan with the Personal and Relative Pronouns, which have proper case inflections.

## CHAPTER IV.

## ARTICLES.

THE Articles are *definite* and *indefinite*.

I. The *definite* article in Italian has different forms for gender and number:—

*Il* and *lo* (the) for the masculine singular, *la* (the) for the feminine singular. In Italian the definite article agrees in gender and number with the noun with which it is used.

<i>il</i>	makes	the	plural	<i>i</i>	} the.
<i>lo</i>	"	"		<i>gli</i>	
<i>la</i>	"	"		<i>le</i>	
	"	"			

II. The forms of the *indefinite* article are *un*, *uno* (a or an) for the masculine singular; *una* (a or an) for the feminine singular.

The indefinite article, of course, has no plural.

## RULES FOR THE USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

RULE I.—The *masculine il*, pl. *i*, is used before all words beginning with a consonant, except an *s* followed by another consonant:

Ex.: *Il figliuolo savio fa lieti i genitori.* (DA RIF.)  
The wise son makes his parents happy.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. Before the noun *Dei*, plural of *Dio*, God, *gli* is always used:

Ex.: *I pagani adoravano gli dei menzogneri.* (SEGN.)  
Pagans adored lying gods.

2. After the preposition *per*, for, &c., *lo* is more properly used before either a vowel or a consonant:

Ex.: *Tenendo per lo braccio l' infermo.* (Boc.)  
Holding the sick person by the arm.

RULE II.—The *masculine lo*, plural *gli*, is used before words beginning with *s* followed by a consonant, as well as before vowels :

Ex. : *Lo sparviere perseguita gli uccelletti.* (SEGN.)  
The falcon pursues small birds.  
*Fuggi gli oziosi.* (ALB.) Shun idle persons.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

1. Before *z* or *sci* or *scē*, either *il* or *lo*, and *i* or *gli* may be used ; as, *il* or *lo zio*, the uncle ; *i* or *gli scellerati*, the wicked.

2. In poetry, and in old writers, we find *li* frequently used instead of *i* or *gli* ; as, *li padri*, the fathers, *li scogli*, the sea rocks.

3. Poets very often use *il* and *i*, or *lo* and *gli*, indifferently before any letter :

Ex. : *Il splendido*, the splendid. *Lo giorno*, the day.  
*Gli rami* (DAN.), the branches.

RULE III.—The *feminine la*, pl. *le*, is used before consonants and vowels<sup>a</sup> ; as,

*Contieni la lingua, e raffrena le mani.* (S. CONC.)  
Moderate thy language, and hold thy hands.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF ARTICLES.

1. The forms *lo*, *la*, *le* before vowels are generally spelt *l'* :

Ex. : *Canto l' armi pietose* (TAS.), I sing the pious arms, &c.

2. *Gli* drops the *i* and takes an apostrophe only before another *i* :

Ex. : *Fuggi gl' ingannatori* (ALB.), Shun deceivers.

3. *Il* sometimes takes an apostrophe in place of the *i* after a word ending with a vowel :

Ex. : *E'l duca a lui* (DAN.), and my leader to him.

#### OBSERVATIONS.

The combinations of the above forms of the definite article with prepositions have been already given (see p. 8), and we have to add in regard to them the following observations :—

<sup>a</sup> See Definite Articles, p. 8.

1. The poets very often use the prepositions separate from the article; in which case the prepositions *di*, of, and *in*, in, become *de* and *ne*:

Ex.: *Mostra altrui l'error de la moglie.* (ARI.)

It shows to others the fault of the wife.

*Fece il Romeo chiamar ne la sua corte.* (ARI.)

She had the pilgrim called into her court.

2. *Del, dello, della*, in the singular, and *dei, degli, delle* in the plural, are used as adjectives of quantity for *some, any, a few*; as,

*Datemi del pane*, give me some bread.

*Portatemi dei zolfanelli*, bring me a few matches.

*Avete delle noci?* have you any nuts?

3. The above adjectives are only employed where it is necessary to convey an idea of quantity. To denote quality in such cases no adjective is used; as, *bevete vino?* do you drink wine?

4. When one substantive in English compound words is used adjectively to qualify another, the order of the words is reversed in Italian, and *del, dello, della, &c.*, is sometimes used; as, *la porta della strada*, the street-door (see Obs., p. 144.)

#### RULES FOR THE USE OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

RULE I.—The masculine *un* is employed before all words beginning with a vowel or consonant, except *s* followed by another consonant; as,

*Un amico è un tesoro*, a friend is a treasure.

RULE II.—The masculine *uno* is used before words beginning with *s* followed by another consonant; as,

*Io aveva uno specchio*, I had a looking-glass.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

Before *z*, or *sci*, or *sce*, either *un* or *uno* may be used; as, *uno (or un) zio*, an uncle.

RULE III.—*Una* is used before words beginning with a consonant, and before a vowel drops the *a* and takes an apostrophe; as, *dopo una vittoria*, after a victory; *un'ombra*, a shadow.

\* See Indef. Article, p. 8.

OBS.—When the preposition *su* precedes the indefinite article, an *r* is affixed to the preposition; as, *sur una porta*, on a door; *sur un pilastro*, on a pillar, &c.

#### EXERCISE.

Write the nouns given in the exceptions to 'Rules for knowing the gender of nouns of things destitute of life,' at pp. 134, 135, and all the irregular plurals given under I. and II., p. 141, each with its proper *definite* article.

Also write, with the *indefinite* article, those defective nouns which are used only in the singular. (See p. 143.)

#### RULES FOR DETERMINING THE USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

The definite article is employed in Italian according to general rules analogous to those which regulate its use in English. But there are certain cases in which the definite article is required in Italian, though not in English; and others in which it must be used in English, though not in Italian.

*Rules for determining when the Definite Article is required in Italian, though not used in English.*

RULE I.—The Italian definite article is used before a common noun used to represent an entire class of beings:

Ex.:            *L'uomo propone e Dio dispone.* (PROV.)  
Man proposes and God disposes.

RULE II.—Before any noun taken in a general sense, in both numbers:

Ex.:            *Non è ver che sia la morte*  
                  *Il peggior di tutti i mali.* (MET.)  
It is not true that death is the worst of all evils.

RULE III.—Before any noun preceded by an adjective of quality:

Ex.:            *Il povero Pietro ha perduto la sorella.*  
Poor Peter has lost his sister.

RULE IV.—Before almost all names of countries taken comprehensively:

Ex.:            *Gran torto fareste alla Francia e all' Italia.* (BEN. C.)  
You would do great wrong to France and to Italy.

## EXCEPTION.

If, however, we speak of going to, coming from, or dwelling in, a country, or use the proper name adjectively to characterise something else, the article is to be omitted :

- Ex. : *Mi dispiacque di non ritornar in Italia per Francia.* (BEN. C.)  
I was sorry at not returning to Italy through France.  
*Questo giugno di Francia non è quasi altro che un aprile d'Italia.* (BEN. C.)  
This June of France is hardly anything but an April of Italy.

RULE V.—Before any part of speech converted into a noun :

- Ex. : *La donna veggendo che il pregare non le valeva.* (Boc.)  
The woman seeing that praying was of no use.  
*Umana cosa è aver compassione degli afflitti.* (Boc.)  
It is a humane thing to have compassion for afflicted persons.  
*Il bel paese là dove si suona.* (DAN.)  
The beautiful country where *si* is spoken.

RULE VI.—Before titles and names denoting rank ; as, *regina*, queen, *generale*, general, *padre*, father, &c. ; also *signor*, Mr., *signora*, Mrs., *signorina*, Miss, followed by the proper name of the person of whom we are speaking ; as,

*La regina Vittoria*, Queen Victoria.  
*Il generale Garibaldi*, General Garibaldi.  
*Il padre Maccario*, Father Maccario.  
*Il signor Ferrari*, Mr. Ferrari.  
*La signora Monti*, Mrs. Monti.  
*La signorina Loti*, Miss Loti.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. When the above titles, and names denoting rank, are preceded by a demonstrative adjective, as *questo*, *quello*, &c., or are followed by the proper name (expressed or understood) of a person to whom we speak or write, the definite article is not used before them ; as,

*Signor Conte*, Sir Count.  
*Quel generale Garibaldi*, that general Garibaldi.

2. Before the following nouns : *sere*, Sir ; *messere*, Mr. ; *maestro*, Master ; *madamigella*, Miss ; *madama*,

Mrs. ; *don*, Don ; *donna*, Donna ; *frate* or *fra*, friar or brother ; *monsignore*, my lord (a dignitary of the Church) ; *santo* or *santa*, Saint, followed by a proper noun, the article is not used ; as,

*Messer Pietro*, Mr. Peter.

*Maestro Adamo*, Master Adamo.

*Don Giovanni*, Don Juan.

*Fra Cristoforo*, Brother Christopher.

3. Before *papa*, pope, and *re*, king, followed by a proper noun, the article may be used or not ; as,

(*il*) *papa Bonifacio*, Pope Boniface.

(*il*) *re Carlo*, King Charles.

RULE VII.—Before surnames of known characters (male and female), and christian names of women, when an adjective is implied ;

Ex. : *Del Correggio lo stil puro e sovrano.* (Tas.)

The pure and majestic style of Correggio (meaning *del celebre Correggio*).

*Canta ancora la Grisi ?* Does Madame Grisi still sing ?

*La Caterina è partita*, Catherine is gone (meaning *la bella Caterina*, or *la conosciuta Caterina*, the beautiful, or the well-known Catherine).

RULE VIII.—Before the following names of cities :—

*il Cairo*, Cairo.

*la Roccella*, Rochelles.

*la Mirandola*, Mirandola.

*l' Aia*, the Hague.

RULE IX.—Before the following names of islands :—

*la Sardegna*, Sardinia.

*l' Elba*, Elba.

*la Corsica*, Corsica.

*la Sicilia*, Sicily.

*la Capraia*, Capraia.

*l' Inghilterra*, England.

*la Corgona*, Corgona.

*l' Irlanda*, Ireland.

RULE X.—Before the nouns *giorno* or *dì*, day, *settimana*, week, *mese*, month, *anno*, year, and the names of the seasons, especially when used with an adjective ; as,

*la settimana passata*, last week.

*l' anno prossimo*, next year, &c.

*il verno scorso*, last winter.

*ai dì passati*, a few days ago.

RULE XI.—Generally before possessive pronouns, before some relative and indefinite pronouns, and sometimes before *mille*, thousand ; as will be explained in treating of those pronouns and of numerals.

*Rules for determining when the Definite Article is not used in Italian, though required in English.*

**RULE I.**—The Article is not used in Italian before an ordinal number, in sentences like the following:—

*Carlo primo fu re d' Inghilterra,*  
Charles the First was King of England.

**RULE II.**—The emphatic use in English of the definite article before *more* in comparative adjective forms, is not admissible in Italian; as, *più studio, più imparo*, the more I study, the more I learn.

**RULE III.**—No article is used in expressions like the following:—

*Stare or essere in casa, in piazza, in campagna, in città, in giardino*, to live or to be in the house, the square, the country, the city, the garden.  
*So andare in casa, &c.*, to go into the house, &c.

*Venire or uscire di casa, di città, di campagna*, to come from, or go out of, the house, the city, the country.

*Parlare italiano, francese, &c.*, to speak the Italian (French, &c.) language, &c. &c.

**N.B.**—The poets often omit the article in cases where it would be necessary in prose, or in conversation.

**Ex.:** *Morte ebbe invidia al mio felice stato.* (PET.)  
Death envied my happy condition.  
*S' Africa pianse, Italia non ne rise.* (PET.)  
If Africa wept, Italy did not laugh.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON THE USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. When two or more nouns, or adjectives converted into nouns, follow one another in a sentence, if they are of different gender and number, or have meanings very distinct from one another, the article is repeated before every one.

**Ex.:** *Lascia le lagrime e i sospiri.* (GUA.)  
Cease from tears and sighs.  
*Dio fa piovere sopra i giusti e gl' ingiusti.* (S. CON.)  
God makes the rain fall on the just and unjust.

2. When two or more nouns or adjectives refer to one subject, the article must not be repeated.

**Ex.:** *Il poco e temperato cibo è utile.* (S. CON.)  
Little and moderate food is useful.



3. When two or more nouns are of *the same gender and number*, the article may be repeated before every one, or only used with the first noun.

Ex.: *Il vino e il frumento allegrano il cuor degli uomini, ma sopra amendue si è la sapienza e dottrina.*

Wine and corn cheer up the hearts of men, but above both of them is wisdom and goodness.

*Rules for determining when the Indefinite Article is not required in Italian, although used in English.*

RULE I.—The indefinite article is not used in Italian before nouns employed in the predicate to represent *profession, rank, state, or country*; as,

*Egli è poeta*, he is a poet.

*È marchese*, he is a marquis.

*È italiano*, he is an Italian.

RULE II.—Nor before *hundred and thousand*;  
*cento scudi*, a hundred crowns.  
*mille scudi*, a thousand crowns.

RULE III.—Nor before a noun used in *apposition* to or *qualifying* another which precedes it; as,

*Il Tamigi, fiume che passa per Londra.*

The Thames, a river which passes through London.

RULE IV.—Nor before a noun where the connection does not admit of the possibility of a plural number; as,  
*Ella ha buona voce*, She has a good voice.

RULE V.—Nor after *che* and *quale* used as exclamations; as, *Che peccato!* What a pity!  
*Qual prodigio!* What a prodigy!

OBS.—The definite article is used instead of the indefinite in Italian in speaking of measure, weight, or time, in sentences like the following:

*Tre lire il metro*, three lire a metre.

*Due soldi la libra*, two soldi a pound.

*Tre volte il giorno*, three times a day.

#### READING EXERCISE.

[N.B.—The words in the Anecdotes must be looked for in the Vocabulary at the end of the book.]

Un alchimista, il quale si vantava d'aver finalmente scoperto il gran segreto di far l'oro, chiedeva al Ponte-

fice Leone Decimo una ricompensa. Questi<sup>a</sup> gli fe'<sup>b</sup> presente d'una lunga e larga borsa vuota, dicendogli: "Giacchè sapete far l'oro, voi non avete bisogno d'altro che d'una bella borsa per riporlo<sup>c</sup>."

## VOCABULARY.

verb, <i>verbo</i> .	to roar, <i>ruggire</i> .	teacher, <i>maestro</i> .
sound, <i>suono</i> .	pig, <i>porco</i> .	to draw, <i>disegnare</i> .
to express, <i>esprimere</i> .	to grunt, <i>grugnire</i> .	nephew } <i>nipote</i> .
animal, <i>animale</i> .	wolf, <i>lupo</i> .	niece }
dog, <i>cane</i> .	to howl, <i>urlare</i> .	egg, <i>uovo</i> .
to bark, <i>abbaiare</i> .	mouse, <i>topo</i> .	bread, <i>pane</i> .
to growl, <i>latrare</i> .	to squeak, <i>squittire</i> .	tea, <i>tè</i> .
horse, <i>cavallo</i> .	cock, <i>gallo</i> .	fruit, <i>frutta</i> .
to neigh, <i>nitrire</i> .	to crow, <i>cantare</i> .	grapes, <i>uva</i> (sing.)
ass, <i>asino</i> .	bird, <i>uccello</i> .	key, <i>chiave</i> .
to bray, <i>ragliare</i> .	to chirp, <i>garrire</i> .	drawer, <i>tiratoio</i> .
sheep, <i>pecora</i> .	parrot, <i>papagallo</i> .	to fetch, <i>andare a</i>
goat, <i>capra</i> .	to talk, <i>parlare</i> .	<i>prendere</i> .
to bleat, <i>belare</i> .	to prefer, <i>preferire</i> .	bunch, <i>grappolo</i> .
ox, <i>bue</i> .	to teach, <i>insegnare</i> .	fig, <i>fico</i> .
to bellow, <i>muggire</i> .	singing, <i>canto</i> .	hothouse, <i>serra</i> .
cat, <i>gatto</i> .	drawing, <i>disegno</i> .	wedding, <i>nozze</i> (plur.)
to mew, <i>miagolare</i> .	prince, <i>principe</i> .	to marry, <i>sposarsi</i> .
lion, <i>leone</i> .	Alfred, <i>Alfredo</i> .	daughter, <i>figlia</i> .

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

SUBJECTIVE and } 1. Charles, tell me — the verbs  
OBJECTIVE. } *quali sono*

by which the sounds made by<sup>d</sup> different animals are  
*con cui* *diversi*

expressed<sup>e</sup>. 2. The dog barks and growls; the horse neighs<sup>f</sup>; the donkey brays; the sheep and the<sup>g</sup> goat bleat; oxen<sup>h</sup> bellow; cats mew; lions roar<sup>f</sup>; pigs grunt<sup>f</sup>; wolves howl; mice<sup>i</sup> squeak<sup>f</sup>; cocks crow birds sing and chirp<sup>f</sup>; parrots talk. 3. Quite right, Charles. [It goes well]

<sup>a</sup> *Questi*, the latter person. (See Dem. Pron. p. 9.)

<sup>b</sup> See *fare*, p. 130, and Note *d*, p. 129.

<sup>c</sup> *riporlo* a compound word, consisting of *ripor* (= *riporre*) to store, and *lo*, it.

<sup>e</sup> Group VI., p. 99. <sup>f</sup> Obs., p. 39.

<sup>g</sup> Obs. 1, p. 151.

<sup>h</sup> Rule II., p. 149, and I., p. 141.

<sup>d</sup> Note *b*, p. 49

<sup>i</sup> Obs. 3, p. 139.

4. What does Mr.<sup>a</sup> D. teach? 5. He teaches singing<sup>b</sup> and drawing. { POSSESSIVE CASE and }  
INDIRECT OBJECT. 6. Is he the teacher of Prince<sup>a</sup> Alfred? 7. No; but he taught drawing to Tennyson's<sup>c</sup> nephew<sup>d</sup> and niece. 8. What will<sup>e</sup> you have for breakfast? 9. Some eggs<sup>f</sup>, a cup of tea, and  
*da*  
some bread (and) butter. 10. Is this your father's  
*imburrito* *questa*  
cup? No; it is Mr. A.'s. 11. When I was in Italy<sup>g</sup> I used to eat fruits<sup>h</sup> for breakfast: they do not drink  
*da*  
tea in Italy. 12. I will give you some grapes, if you prefer it. John, where is the key of the garden door<sup>i</sup>?  
*la*  
13. It is upstairs, sir, in the drawer. 14. Fetch me  
*di sopra*  
two or three bunches of grapes, and a few figs from the  
[in]  
hot-house. 15. Is your brother gone to Paris? 16. No; he left yesterday for Edinburgh. He is invited to the wedding of Mr. D., who is going to be married to Mr.  
*che* [will marry with]  
T.'s daughter to-morrow.

## QUESTIONS.

Che animali avete in casa?—Con quali verbi esprimiamo le voci<sup>1</sup> degli animali domestici? 2.—Chi insegnò il canto a vostra sorella? 7.—A che ora farete colazione domani? 8.—Che vuole vostro fratello da colazione? 9.—Che frutta preferite?—Siete stato alle nozze del Signor e della Signora T. ? 18.—Che segreto credeva d'aver scoperto un alchimista<sup>k</sup>?—Che presente fece Leone X. all' alchimista?—Che disse il papa dandogli la borsa?

<sup>a</sup> Rule VI., p. 149.<sup>b</sup> Rule II., p. 148.<sup>c</sup> Obs., p. 144.<sup>d</sup> Exceptions 2, p. 132, and No. 4, p. 133.<sup>e</sup> Note *d*, p. 70.<sup>f</sup> II., p. 141, and Obs., p. 147.<sup>g</sup> Excep. I, to Rule IV., p. 149.<sup>h</sup> Note *b*, p. 142.<sup>i</sup> Obs. 4, p. 147.<sup>j</sup> *voce*, sound.<sup>k</sup> See Reading Ex., p. 153.

## CHAPTER V.

## ADJECTIVES.

All the adjectives terminate in one or other of the vowels *o*, *e*, *i*.

## RULES ON THE CONCORD OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE I.—An Adjective, in Italian, must agree in gender and number with the noun, expressed or understood, which it qualifies.

RULE II.—Adjectives ending in *o* are masculine, and change the *o* into *a* for the feminine; as,

Masculine.  
*Re benefico*,  
a beneficent king.

Feminine.  
*Regina benefica*.  
a beneficent queen.

RULE III.—Adjectives ending in *e* and *i* are of both genders; as,

Masculine.  
*uomo felice*,  
a happy man.  
*orgoglio pari*,  
equal pride.

Feminine.  
*donna felice*,  
a happy woman.  
*forza pari*,  
equal strength.

RULE IV.—When the adjective refers to two or more nouns, it must stand in the plural.

RULE V.—The plural of adjectives is formed in the same manner as that of nouns. Hence,

(i.) The adjectives in *o* have four terminations; as,

Singular.  
Masc. *Re benefico*,  
Fem. *Regina benefica*,

Plural.  
*Re benefici*.  
*Regine benefiche*.<sup>a</sup>

(ii.) The adjectives in *e* have only two terminations; as,

Singular.  
Masc. *uomo* } *felice*,  
Fem. *donna* }

Plural.  
*uomini* } *felici*.  
*donne* }

---

<sup>a</sup> Note *a*, p. 8.

(iii.) The adjectives in *i* have only one termination ; as,

Singular.		Plural.
Masc. <i>orgoglio</i>	} <i>pari</i> ,	<i>orgogli</i>
Fem. <i>forza</i>		<i>forze</i> } <i>pari</i> .

N.B.—The plural adjective *several* is expressed by *parecchi* for the masculine, and by *parecchie* for the feminine ; as,

Masc. *parecchi uomini*,      Fem. *parecchie donne*.

RULE VI.—With two or more nouns of *beings possessing animal life* of different gender, the adjective stands in the plural masculine.

Ex. :      *Lo scorpione e la vipera sono velenosi.*  
The scorpion and the viper are poisonous.

RULE VII.—With two or more nouns of *things destitute of life* of different gender, the adjective may be in the plural masculine, or made to agree in gender and number with the noun nearest to it.

Ex. :      *Tornano utili il biasimo e la lode.*  
Blame and praise become useful.  
*Il decoro e la modestia ne' giovani è molto lodata.*  
Propriety and modesty in youth are much praised.

RULE VIII.—With the word *persona*, person, or with *ogni cosa*, everything, the adjective may be in the masculine gender.

Ex. :      *La persona quando è tribolato.*  
When a person is in trouble.

## RULES ON THE POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE I.—Adjectives are generally placed after their substantives ; as, *una Signora francese*, a French lady.

### EXCEPTIONS.

Adjectives expressing either *quantity* or *size*, numeral adjectives, and a few denoting *beauty*, *ugliness*, *goodness*, and *holiness*, generally precede their nouns ; as,

*molto pane*, much bread.  
*quanta paura*, how much fear.  
*tanti pericoli*, so many dangers.

*troppe*<sup>a</sup> *pere*, too many pears.  
*poca*<sup>b</sup> *speranza*, little hope.  
*piccolo libro*, small book.  
*grande casa*, large house.  
*due uova*, two eggs.  
*bello specchio*, beautiful looking-glass.  
*brutto animale*, ugly animal.  
*cattivo ragazzo*, bad boy.  
*buono scolare*, good pupil.  
*Santo Stefano*, St. Stephen.

RULE II.—Two or more adjectives qualifying the same noun, may be placed before or after the substantive; as, *varie e diverse novità*, various and different novelties; *con panni larghi e lunghi, e voci umili e mansuete*, with garments full and long, and language humble and meek.

RULE III.—Sometimes they are separated by putting one of them before, and the other or others after the noun, whereby grace and elegance is given to the phrase; as, *nobile giovane e bella*, a noble and beautiful young woman; *nobili vestimenti e ricchi*, rich and elegant clothes.

RULE IV.—There are some adjectives which may be placed either before or after their nouns, but whose position affects the signification; as, *un galant' uomo*, a good, an honorable man; *un uomo galante*, a courteous, a gallant man; *un gentil uomo*, a gentleman, a nobleman; *un uomo gentile*, a civil, gentle, courteous, kind man; *un semplice contadino*, a single (no more than one) countryman; *un contadino semplice*, a simple (inexperienced) countryman.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *Bello* makes *bel* before nouns beginning with a consonant (except *s* followed by a consonant), and drops

<sup>a</sup> Notice that the quantitative adjectives *molto*, *tanto*, *quanto*, *troppe*, are sometimes adverbs, in which case they are invariable.

<sup>b</sup> After *poco* used substantively the preposition *di* is employed; as, *un poco di pane*, a little bread.

the *o* before nouns beginning with vowels. The plural of *bello* is *begli*; of *bel*, *bei*; and of *bell'*, *begli*; as,

Singular.	Plural.
<i>bello specchio</i> ,	<i>begli specchi</i> .
<i>bell' occhio</i> ,	<i>begli occhi</i> .
<i>bel libro</i> ,	<i>bei libri</i> .

Several other adjectives ending in *ello* follow the same rule.

2. *Grande* and *Santo* before nouns beginning with a consonant, except *s* followed by a consonant, are shortened by one syllable, and become *gran*, *San*; as,

*gran male*, great evil.      *San<sup>a</sup> Pietro*, St. Peter.  
*grande studio*, great study.      *Santo Stefano*, St. Stephen.

Before vowels, *grand'* and *Sant'* are used; as,  
*grand' animo*, great spirit.      *Sant' Antonio*, St. Anthony.

*Grandi* (plural of *grande*) may also lose the final syllable; as,

*gran pericoli*, great dangers.      *gran ricchezze*, great riches.

3. *Buono* drops the *o* before nouns beginning with vowels and consonants, except *s* followed by a consonant; as,

*buon uomo*, good man.      *buon medico*, good physician.

4. Other adjectives ending in *o* and *e* may sometimes drop the final vowel before nouns beginning with any letter except *s* followed by a consonant; as, *Donna è gentil nel cielo* (DAN.), There is a gentle woman in heaven.

*Nessun maggior dolore*

*Che ricordarsi del tempo felice nella miseria.* (DAN.)

No greater pain

Than to recall, in wretchedness, the happy days gone by.

#### READING EXERCISE.

Era stato uno Svizzero della guardia pontificia posto in sentinella all' ingresso della cappella Sistina in Roma, coll' ordine di non lasciarvi più entrare alcuno: temendo forse i prelati che il caldo eccessivo, prodotto dal troppo<sup>b</sup> gran<sup>c</sup> concorso di gente, non incomodasse il Pontefice

\* Instead of *santo*, the initial *S* is generally used; and for the plural, *SS*. The above contraction of *santo* does not take place when that word signifies 'holy.'

<sup>b</sup> Note *a*, p. 157.

<sup>c</sup> Obs. 2, above.

che colà assisteva al divino<sup>a</sup> uffizio. Molte persone si presentarono dopo alla porta, ma in vano; l'irrevocabile parola, "Non si entra," le costringeva a ritirarsi. Un giovine ecclesiastico, cui<sup>b</sup> era ben nota la rigida precisione del soldato svizzero, presentossi anch' egli francamente all' ingresso. "Non si entra," disse lo Svizzero. "Io non entro, ma esco," rispose prontamente l'abatino. Il soldato non avendo alcuna consegna che vietasse di lasciar uscire chi<sup>c</sup> voleva, si ritirò, e l' altro entrò nella cappella, tutto glorioso e trionfante, ridendosi della dabbenaggine dello Svizzero.

## VOCABULARY.

to re- ) <i>mutare casa,</i>	other, <i>altro.</i>	furniture, <i>mobilia.</i>
move ) <i>sgomberare.</i>	clean, <i>pulito.</i>	to furnish, <i>mobiliare.</i>
small, <i>piccolo.</i>	forecourt, <i>cortile (m.)</i>	piece of furniture, <i>mobile (m.)</i>
pleasant, <i>piacevole.</i>	to consist, <i>consistere.</i>	beautiful, <i>bello.</i>
neighbourhood, <i>vicinew, nuovo.</i> [nato.	rest, <i>resto.</i>	rich, <i>ricco.</i>
too, <i>troppo.</i>	convenient, <i>conveniente.</i>	carpet, <i>tappeto.</i>
large, <i>grande.</i>	library, <i>libreria.</i>	comfortable, <i>comodo.</i>
family, <i>famiglia.</i>	lofty, <i>alto.</i>	couch, <i>sofà or canapè (m.)</i>
floor, <i>piano.</i>	hall, <i>vestibolo.</i>	chair, <i>sedia or seggiola.</i>
ground, <i>terreno.</i>	wine-cellar, <i>cantina.</i>	looking-glass, <i>specchio.</i>
first, <i>primo.</i>	cool, <i>fresco.</i>	to spare one's self, <i>risparmiarsi.</i>
second, <i>secondo.</i>	pantry, <i>dispensa.</i>	trouble, <i>fastidio.</i>
attics, <i>soffitta (sing.)</i>	ventilated, <i>ventilato.</i>	white, <i>bianco.</i>
bed-room, <i>camera.</i>	wall (of a room), <i>parete (f.)</i>	black, <i>nero.</i>
to look (of a window), <i>dare.</i>	to paper, <i>tappezzare di carta.</i>	
pretty, <i>bello.</i>	to paint, <i>dipingere.</i>	
full, <i>pieno.</i>		

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. Oh, what good<sup>d</sup> wind brings you here to-day, Mrs.<sup>e</sup> B. ? 2. I have removed, and have taken a small house in – your pleasant neighbourhood; therefore, I *nel vostro* have come<sup>f</sup> to see you. 3. How do you like<sup>g</sup> – your *la vostra* [find]

<sup>a</sup> Exceptions, p. 156.

<sup>b</sup> *Cui* is often used without the preposition *a*, to, which is understood. (See Rel. Pron., p. 9.) <sup>c</sup> See Ind. Pron., p. 10.

<sup>d</sup> Obs. 3, p. 158.

<sup>e</sup> Excep. 1 to Rule VI., p. 149.

<sup>f</sup> Obs. 3, p. 51, and Note *c*, p. 62.

<sup>g</sup> Note *a*, p. 72.



new house? 4. I like it, but it is too small for — my  
*la mia*

large family. 5. How many<sup>a</sup> floors are<sup>2</sup> there<sup>1</sup>? 6. Four;  
 the ground floor<sup>b</sup>, the first<sup>a</sup> floor, the second floor, and  
 the attics. 7. And how many bed-rooms are<sup>2</sup> there<sup>1</sup>?  
 8. Four bed-rooms, two of — which look into a pretty<sup>c</sup>  
*delle quali in*

garden full of beautiful<sup>c</sup> flowers, and the other two into  
 a clean fore-court. 9. What<sup>2</sup> does the rest of the house  
 consist<sup>3</sup> of<sup>1</sup>? 10. There is a pretty drawing-room, and  
 [in]

a convenient library, a lofty hall, a cool wine cellar, and  
 a<sup>1</sup> well<sup>3</sup> ventilated<sup>4</sup> pantry<sup>2</sup>. 11. Are the walls of the  
 drawing-room papered<sup>d</sup> or painted? 12. They are  
 papered. 13. Have you bought all the furniture?  
 14. I have taken the house furnished. There are beau-  
 tiful pieces of furniture, rich carpets, comfortable  
 couches and chairs, large tables and looking-glasses,  
 so-that I have spared myself a-great-deal-of trouble.  
*sicchè [much]*

15. You have done right; will you have a glass of  
 [well]

wine? Do you like white or red (wine). 16. I  
 [Do you like it<sup>e</sup>] [black]  
 prefer red<sup>f</sup> (wine).

#### QUESTIONS.

Perchè volete mutar casa? 2 & 4.—Quando sgom-  
 bererete? 2.—Quanti piani ha la vostra villa? 5.—Dove  
 danno le finestre del salotto? 8.—Dove si tiene il vino?  
 —Che mobili avete nel vostro salotto? 14.—Chi era  
 stato posto in sentinella all' ingresso della cappella Sis-  
 tina?—Che ordine aveva ricevuto la guardia?—Che  
 rispose il giovane ecclesiastico per entrare nella cappella?

<sup>a</sup> Exception 1, p. 156.

<sup>b</sup> Rule 1, p. 156.

<sup>c</sup> Obs. 1, p. 157.

<sup>d</sup> Note *f*, p. 13.

<sup>e</sup> Note *a*, p. 72.

<sup>f</sup> Rule V., p. 149.

## DEGREES OF ADJECTIVES.

In Italian, as in English, there are three degrees of adjectives :—the *Positive*—*dotto*, learned ; the *Comparative*—*più dotto*, more learned ; the *Superlative*—*dottissimo*, most learned.

## ON COMPARATIVES.

RULE I.—The comparison of *equality* is expressed by—

*tanto* or *altrettanto*..... *quanto* ;

or *così* (or *sì*) ..... *come*<sup>a</sup> (or *siccome*) ;

Eng. : ‘as’ (or negatively ‘so’) ... ‘as.’

*Cesare fu tanto valoroso quanto Pompeo.*

Cæsar was as brave as Pompey.

*Avete tanti libri quanti ne ho io.*

You have as many books as I have.

*Il fratello non è così ricco come la sorella.*

The brother is not so rich as the sister.

N.B.—*Tanto* . . . *quanto* are used both for *quality* and *quantity* ; and *così* . . . *come* only for *quality*. *Tanto* . . . *quanto*, when used for *quantity*, agree in gender and number with the noun, and remain invariable when used for *quality*<sup>b</sup>.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The *tanto* (*altrettanto*, or *cotanto*) and *sì* or *così*, are frequently omitted, and then *quanto* or *come* alone serves to express the comparison ; as,

*Il mio cane è fedele come il vostro.*

My dog is as faithful as yours.

*Essa non è bella quanto sua sorella.*

She is not so handsome as her sister.

2. *Quanto*, with *tanto* or *altrettanto* following it, serves to express the English *in proportion as* . . . *so* ; as,

*Quanto il primo era dolce altrettanto aspro era il secondo.*

In proportion as the first was gentle, so the second was fierce.

<sup>a</sup> The word *come* cannot be rendered in English in expressions like the following :—*La volpe, come falsa e micidiale* (Pul.), the fox, false and murderous.

<sup>b</sup> Note a, p. 157.

3. The following forms are also frequently met with in the works of good Italian writers :—

*Egli è valoroso al pari di voi.*

He is as brave as you.

*Cesare fu valoroso non meno che Pompeo.*

Cæsar was as brave as Pompey.

*Quale è il padre tale è il figlio.*

As the father is, such is the son.

4. In translating the expression *the more . . . the more, the less . . . the less*, the definite article is omitted in Italian\*, or *quanto* and *tanto* are substituted ; as,

*Più la vedo, più mi piace.*

The more I see her, the more I like her.

*Quanto si mostra men, tanto è più bello. (TAS.)*

The less it is shown, the more beautiful it is.

5. The expression *as quick as possible* is rendered in Italian by *il più presto possibile*, or *quanto più presto si possa*.

RULE II.—The comparison of superiority is expressed in Italian by placing before the positive the adverb *più*, more ; as,

*Le pesche duracine sono più belle che buone.*

Chingstone peaches are more beautiful than good.

*È più ricco di Cresò.*

He is richer than Cræsus.

N.B.—The English comparative, formed with the suffix *er*, is likewise rendered in Italian by *più*.

RULE III.—The comparison of inferiority is expressed by putting *meno*, less, before the *Positive* ; as,

*La dieta è una medicina meno di tutte cara.*

Diet is a medicine less dear than any other.

The word *than*, which follows the comparative in English, is rendered in Italian by *che* or *di*, and sometimes also by *che non* or *di quello che*.

---

\* Rule II., p. 150.

RULE IV.—*Che* is used to render *than*, when this word is followed by an *adjective*, a *verb* in the Infinitive, or an *adverb*, or is preceded by the words *rather* or *sooner*; as,

*Egli è più buono che dotto.*

He is more good than learned.

*È meglio fare che dire.*

It is better to do than to say.

*È meglio tardi che mai.*

It is better late than never.

*Piuttosto la morte che il disonore.*

Death rather than dishonour.

*Gli occhi anzi grossi che piccoli. (Boc.)*

His eyes rather large than small.

RULE V.—*Di*, alone, or in its compounds *del*, *dello*, *della*, *dei*, *degli*, *delle*, is used to render *than*, when this word is followed by a *pronoun*, a *numeral*, or a *noun*; as,

*Io sono più ricco di lei<sup>a</sup>.*

I am richer than she.

*Quel cavallo è più bello del vostro.*

That horse is more beautiful than yours.

*Ho più di due cavalli.*

I have more than two horses.

*Giovanni è più dotto di Tomaso.*

John is more learned than Thomas.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. When *than* is followed by a verb not in the Infinitive, it is rendered by *che non*, or *di quel che*; as,

*Affligge più che non (or di quel che) conforta.*

He afflicts more than he comforts.

2. Before *più* or *meno* are often found in Italian the words *assai*, *molto*, or *vie*, much, *troppo*, too much, and *di gran lunga*, by far, which give greater force to the comparison; as,

---

\* Notice that *lei* is the inflected form of *ella*, *di* being the sign of the Possessor in Italian.

*Vedi Samsona, vie più forte che savio.* (PET.)

See Sampson, far more strong than wise.

3. 'More' and 'less,' denoting numerical excess, are rendered in Italian by *ancora* or *di più*, and *di meno*; as,

*Ho due lezioni di più.*

I have two lessons more.

*Voi n' avrete due di meno.*

You shall have two less.

4. 'Longer' or 'farther,' in relation to time and distance, is translated by *più*; as,

*Non la vedo più.*

I see her no longer.

5. *Più* is used adjectively for 'several'; and *manco* is sometimes found instead of *meno*; as, *manco male*, not quite so bad.

#### ON SUPERLATIVES.

The Superlative is either *absolute* or *relative*.

RULE I.—The *absolute superlative* may be formed in two ways:—

(1.) By translating *very* or *most* by *assai*, or *molto*, or *oltremodo*; as,

*Egli è assai (or molto) dotto*, he is very learned.

(2.) By changing the termination of the adjective into *issimo* or *issima*, *issimi* or *issime*; as,

*Egli è dottissimo*, he is very learned.

N.B.—Adjectives ending in *io* lose these two vowels before the superlative termination *issimo*; as, *saggio*, wise, *saggissimo*.

And adjectives ending in *co* and *go*, *ca* and *ga*, which take an *h* in the plural, take it also before *issimo*; as, *largo*, wide, *larghissimo*; *ricco*, rich, *ricchissimo*, &c.

RULE II.—A few adjectives form the absolute superlative in *errimo*; as,

*celebre*, celebrated, *celeberrimo*.

*salubre*, salubrious, *saluberrimo*, &c.

**RULE III.**—The *relative superlative* is formed by adding the definite article to the Comparative; as,

*Egli è il più dotto inglese del secolo.*

He is the most learned Englishman of the age.

*La meno diligente scolara della scuola.*

The least diligent pupil in the school.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. English superlatives in *est*, as *finest*, *dearest*, &c., must also be translated according to the above rule—*il più bello*, *il più caro*, &c.

2. “What do you like best?” is rendered in Italian, *Che vi piace più?*

3. When the relative superlative follows the substantive, no article should intervene; as,

*Il soldato più attivo,* } The most active soldier.  
*Il più attivo soldato,* }

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The following modes of forming the superlative are also found in the works of good Italian writers:—

*Nella egregia<sup>b</sup> città di Firenze, oltre ad ogni altra italica bellissima.* (Boc.)

In the illustrious city of Florence, the most beautiful, amongst Italian cities.

*Basi diventò piccin piccino.* (BUONAR.)

Basi became very little.

*Fammi, che puoi, della sua grazia degno, senza fine o beata.* (PET.)

Since thou, O exceedingly blessed, canst make me worthy of his grace.

*Amava i denari senza misura.* (MANZ.)

She loved money above measure.

<sup>a</sup> Observe that this superlative takes generally *di* after it, instead of *in*.

<sup>b</sup> *Egregio*, most celebrated, *esimio*, excellent, are used principally in epistolary style; as, *egregio signore* = worthy sir. But the most common forms in letters are *Pregiatissimo* (or *Stimatissimo*) *Signore* = most worshipful sir.

2. *Stra* or *arci* is sometimes prefixed to the positive; as, *strabello* or *arcibello*, very beautiful.

3. In all languages, the adjectives which express some invariable quality do not admit either the comparative or superlative degree. These are—

(i.) The ordinal adjectives; as, *primo*, first.

(ii.) Adjectives denoting birth, place, nation, or ap-  
 purtenance; as,

*francese*, French.      *paterno*, paternal.

*romano*, Roman.      *regio*, kingly.

(iii.) Adjectives like the following: *eterno*, eternal,  
*immortale*, immortal, &c.

Nevertheless the superlative of *italiano*, Italian, *italianissimo*, and a few others, are admitted by custom.

#### COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES WITH PARTICULAR FORMS.

There are some comparatives and superlatives which, besides the usual form, have others derived from the Latin. These are—

##### COMPARATIVES.

*maggiore*, or *più grande*, larger.

*minore*, or *più piccolo*, smaller.

*migliore*, or *più buono*, better.

*peggiore*, or *più cattivo*, worse.

*superiore*, or *più alto*, superior.

*inferiore*, or *più basso*, inferior.

##### SUPERLATIVES.

*ottimo* or { *molto buono*  
*buonissimo* } very good, or best.

*pessimo* or { *molto cattivo*  
*cattivissimo* } very bad, or worst.

*massimo* or { *molto grande*  
*grandissimo* } very large, or largest.

*minimo* or { *molto piccolo*  
*piccolissimo* } very little, or least.

*sommo* or { *molto alto*  
*altissimo* } very high, or highest.

*infimo*, } or { *molto basso*  
*imo*, } *bassissimo* } very low, or lowest.

## OBSERVATIONS.

Either of the above forms may, generally, be used, but attention must be paid to the following observations:—

1. *Maggiore* and *minore*, *superiore* and *inferiore*, cannot be employed when speaking of the size or height of one object; in the latter case we must say *più grande*, and *più piccolo*; as,

*La vostra mela è più piccola della mia.*

Your apple is smaller than mine.

2. *Minore* = youngest; *maggiore* = eldest; as, *sono il minore*, I am the youngest; *è la maggiore*, she is the eldest.

3. *Better*, when an adverb, is translated by *meglio*; and *worse*, when not an adjective, is rendered by *peggio*; as, *tanto meglio*, so much the better; *tanto peggio*, so much the worse.

*Meglio oggi che domani.*

Better to-day than to-morrow.

4. 'Least,' as adverb, is rendered by *meno*; 'at least,' by *almeno*.

5. *Most men*, and similar expressions, are rendered by *la maggior parte degli uomini*, &c.

6. The adjectives *maggiore*, &c., preceded by an article, become relative superlatives; as,

*Il maggior benefattore è Dio.*

The greatest benefactor is God.

7. The adjectives *ottimo*, &c., are *absolute superlatives*, but when preceded by the definite article, they become *relative superlatives*; as,

*Egli è un ottimo uomo*, he is a very good man.

*Egli è l'ottimo uomo del mondo*, he is the best man in the world.



## READING EXERCISE.

Partii di Parigi verso il mezzo gennajo, in compagnia di un cavaliere mio paesano, giovine di bellissimo<sup>a</sup> aspetto, di età circa dieci o dodici anni più avanzato di<sup>b</sup> me, di un certo ingegno naturale; ignorante, quanto<sup>c</sup> me; riflessivo assai<sup>d</sup> meno, e più amatore del gran mondo che conoscitore o investigatore degli uomini. Egli era cugino del nostro Ambasciatore in Parigi, e nipote del Principe di Masserano allora Ambasciatore di Spagna in Londra, in casa del quale<sup>e</sup> egli doveva alloggiare. Benchè io non amassi gran fatto<sup>f</sup> di compagnia per viaggio, pure per andare a un determinato luogo e non più<sup>g</sup>, mi ci accomodai volentieri. Questo mio nuovo compagno era di un umore assai lieto<sup>h</sup> e loquace, onde con vicendevole soddisfazione io taceva e ascoltava, egli parlava e si lodava. (ALFIERI.)

## VOCABULARY.

suburb, <i>sobborgo</i> .	picturesque, <i>pittoresco</i> .	Europe, <i>Europa</i> .
wonderful, <i>ammirabile</i> .	to expect, <i>aspettarsi</i> .	to try, <i>cercare di</i> .
environs, <i>contorni</i> .	view, <i>prospettiva</i> .	to go up, <i>ascendere</i> .
little, <i>poco</i> .	handsome, <i>bello</i> .	Blanc, <i>Bianco</i> .
far, <i>lontano</i> .	to ascend, <i>salire su</i> .	to go down, <i>sceudere per</i> .
ancient, <i>antico</i> .	high, <i>alto</i> .	way, <i>via</i> .
to build, <i>fabbricare</i> .	mountain or mount, <i>monte</i> .	short, <i>corto</i> .

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. Are the suburbs of Florence as<sup>1</sup> interesting as the city? 2. Not less<sup>1</sup> wonderful than the city (itself) are its environs. Do you see that building a little [the environs of it] *quel* further than<sup>b</sup> the "Forte Belvedere?" It is the very

<sup>a</sup> Rule I (2), p. 164, and Excep. 1, p. 156.

<sup>b</sup> Rule V., p. 163.

<sup>c</sup> Obs. 1, p. 161.

<sup>d</sup> Obs. 2, p. 163.

<sup>e</sup> See Relat. Pron., p. 9.

<sup>f</sup> *Gran fatto*, much.

<sup>g</sup> Obs. 4, p. 164.

<sup>h</sup> Rule I. (1), p. 164.

<sup>i</sup> Rule I., p. 161.

<sup>j</sup> Obs. 3, p. 162.

ancient<sup>a</sup> church of Saint<sup>b</sup> Miniato. 3. It seems  
[To me seems]  
better<sup>c</sup> built than the church of the Madonna dell' Im-  
pruneta. I find the environs of Florence more pic-  
turesque than<sup>d</sup> I expected. 4. You will see - finer  
*dei*  
buildings and<sup>e</sup> more beautiful views than these beyond  
*queste fuori*  
- the "Porta al Prato." 5. The more<sup>f</sup> I travel in  
[of]  
Italy, the more I like this country. 6. You will go  
*questo*  
to visit "La Petraja"<sup>g</sup> to-morrow in company with my  
[to see] [of]  
younger brother. 7. Are you the eldest?<sup>h</sup> I thought  
- you were the youngest.<sup>h</sup> 8. I am three years older<sup>i</sup>  
*che* [I have] [more]  
than my brother. 9. Is Florence as large as Rome?  
10. No, it is not so large as Rome, but it is more hand-  
some. 11. Did you ever ascend the highest mountain  
*mai*  
in Europe? 12. No, I never tried to go up Mont  
Blanc. Would you rather go towards Porta Romana  
(Cond. of *volere*) *verso*  
to-day than<sup>j</sup> to-morrow? 13. Better<sup>c</sup> to-day than to-  
morrow. 14. Very well; then let us go down this  
*allora* *questa*  
way, which is the shortest.

<sup>a</sup> Rule I., p. 164.<sup>b</sup> Obs. 2, p. 158.<sup>c</sup> Obs. 3, p. 167.<sup>d</sup> Obs. 1, p. 163.<sup>e</sup> Obs. 2, p. 147.<sup>f</sup> Obs. 4, p. 162.<sup>g</sup> *Petraja* is the name of one of the royal villas in the environs of Florence.<sup>h</sup> Obs. 2 p. 167.<sup>i</sup> Obs. 3, p. 164.<sup>j</sup> Rule IV., p. 163.

## QUESTIONS.

Sono i contorni di Firenze molto interessanti? 2.—Siete la maggiore o la minore? 7.—È più grande Roma o Firenze? 10.—Qual'è il più alto monte d'Europa? 12.—Prendete la più corta o la più lunga via, quando andate a casa? 14.—Era più giovane Alfieri od il suo compagno di viaggio?<sup>a</sup>—Di che umore era il compagno di viaggio dell' Alfieri?

## CHAPTER VI.

## AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES.

Italian nouns, adjectives, and sometimes even verbs and adverbs, may have their original meaning modified by various suffixes. Of these, some denote augmentation, and the words modified by them are therefore called *augmentatives* of their originals; some denote diminution, and serve to form the *diminutives*; others signify contempt, and the words modified by them are called *peggiorativi*, i. e. *depreciatives*.

RULE I.—The suffixes used to form *augmentatives* are three—*one*, *otto*, and *ozzo*.

(i.) *One* signifies largeness of size; as,

*libro*, a book;

*librone*,<sup>b</sup> a large book.

*casa*, a house;

*casone*,<sup>c</sup> a large house.

*ubbiaco*, drunk;

*ubbriacone*, a great drunkard.

<sup>a</sup> See Reading Exercise, p. 168.

<sup>b</sup> Words so modified are curtailed of the final vowel.

<sup>c</sup> The suffix *one* renders the feminine noun masculine. When, however, it is suffixed to an adjective, or a lady's name, it is also used for the feminine gender, changing the final *e* into *a*; as, *vecchia*, old woman; *vecchiona*, a big old woman; *Luigia*, Louisa; *Luigiona*, a big Louisa. For the plural, *oni* and *one* are respectively used; as, *vecchioni*, big old men; *vecchione*, big old women. The rules for *gender* and *number* of all augmentatives and diminutives being the same as those of other nouns.

(ii.) { *Otto* } or { *otta* } signify strength and vigour; as,  
           { *ozzo* }           { *ozza* }

*giovine*, a young man; *giovinotto*, a strong young man.  
*forese*, a villager;       *foresozza*, a vigorous country girl.

RULE II.—The suffixes which form the diminutives are:—

(i.) *Cello*, *cino*, *etto*, *icello*, *icino* or *iccino*, (with their feminine terminations *cella*, *cina*, &c.,) signifying smallness of size; as,

<i>bastone</i> , a stick;	<i>bastoncello</i> , a small stick.
<i>limone</i> , a lemon;	<i>limoncino</i> , a small lemon.
<i>fiume</i> , a river;	<i>fiumicello</i> , a rivulet.
<i>libro</i> , a book;	<i>libriccino</i> , a little book.
<i>uomo</i> , a man;	<i>ometto</i> , a mannikin.

(ii.) *Ino* or *ina*, signifying smallness and prettiness; as,

<i>viso</i> , a face;	<i>visino</i> , a pretty little face.
<i>adagio</i> , slow;	<i>adagino</i> , softly.
<i>colle</i> , a hill;	<i>collina</i> , a hillock.

(iii.) *Erello* and *arello*, with their feminine terminations *erella*, &c., signifying tenderness or affection; as,

*vecchio*, an old man; *vecchierello*, a poor old man.  
*pazza*, a mad woman; *pazzarella*, a poor mad woman.

(iv.) *Ellare*, *acchiare*, signifying repetition; as,  
*saltare*, to jump;       *saltarellare*, to jump about.

(v.) *Ello*, *uccio*, *uzzo*, and their feminines *ella*, &c., which are used with various significations; as,

<i>capana</i> , a hut;	<i>capanella</i> , a little hut.
<i>femmina</i> , a female;	<i>femminella</i> , a little worthless female.
<i>cappello</i> , a hat;	<i>cappelluccio</i> , a little worthless hat.

OBS.—There are other diminutives, which have a form peculiar to themselves; as,

<i>cane</i> , a dog;	<i>cagnolino</i> , a little dog.
<i>casa</i> , a house;	<i>casipola</i> , a small rickety house.
<i>acqua</i> , water;	<i>acquerugiola</i> , drizzling rain.

RULE III.—Words with the following suffixes are *peggiorativi* :—

*Accio* or *accia*, *ardo* or *arda*, *attolo* or *attola*, *onzolo* or *onzola*, *azzo* or *azza*, *astro* or *astra*, *aglia*, *ame*, *ume*, *uolo* or *uola*, *icciuolo* or *icciuola*, *icciatto* or *icciatta*, all which suffixes signify contempt, ugliness, badness ; as,

*donna*, a woman ; *donnaccia*, a wicked woman.

*bianco*, white ; *biancastro*, whitish.

*gente*, people ; *gentame*, a mob.

&c.

&c.

#### OBSERVATIONS.

1. Sometimes a compound diminutive is used, as *vecchierellino*, meaning *a poor and agreeable little old man*.

2. To a diminutive another suffix is often added, which gives to the word, besides a meaning of smallness, another of ugliness or badness ; as, *stanza*, a room ; *stanzucciaccia*, a small and disagreeable room.

3. To an augmentative suffix may be added a diminutive one ; as, *ladro*, a thief ; *ladroncello*, a great young thief ; *one* serving to denote a great propensity of the person to steal, and *cello* the tender age of the person.

4. The adjectives *piccolo*, *grande*, may be employed before a diminutive or an augmentative, although they give the same signification as the terminations ; as,

*piccola coserella*, a little thing of no great value.

*gran cavallone*, a very big horse.

5. Almost all the above augmentatives, diminutives, and depreciatives being extremely arbitrary, they ought to be used sparingly, especially by foreigners. The student, however, would do well to study their various significations in the above given examples, in order to understand, in the perusal of Italian works, the exact import of the words which will be found modified by them.

## CHAPTER VII.

## NUMERALS.

THE numerals are divided into cardinal and ordinal numbers.

## CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1 <i>uno.</i>	14 <i>quattordici.</i>	70 <i>settanta.</i>
2 <i>due.</i>	15 <i>quindici.</i>	80 <i>ottanta.</i>
3 <i>tre.</i>	16 <i>sedici.</i>	90 <i>novanta.</i>
4 <i>quattro.</i>	17 <i>diciassette.</i>	100 <i>cento.</i>
5 <i>cinque.</i>	18 <i>diciotto.</i>	200 <i>duecento</i> or
6 <i>sei.</i>	19 <i>diciannove.</i>	<i>dugento.</i>
7 <i>sette.</i>	20 <i>venti.</i>	300 <i>trecento, &amp;c.</i>
8 <i>otto.</i>	21 <i>vent' uno.</i>	1,000 <i>mille.</i>
9 <i>nove.</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	1,100 <i>millecento.</i>
10 <i>dieci.</i>	30 <i>trenta.</i>	2,000 <i>due mila.</i>
11 <i>undici.</i>	40 <i>quaranta.</i>	100,000 <i>cento mila.</i>
12 <i>dodici.</i>	50 <i>cinquanta.</i>	1,000,000 <i>un milione.</i>
13 <i>tredici.</i>	60 <i>sessanta.</i>	2,000,000 <i>due milioni.</i>

RULE I.—Cardinal numbers are not inflected, except *uno*<sup>a</sup>, which has the feminine *una*; as, *uno scudo*, a crown; *una libbra*, a pound (weight). *Mille* and *milione*, when preceded by a number higher than *one*, are spelt *mila* and *milioni*:

Ex.: *Cristo con cinque pani, saziò cinque mila persone.* (SEGN.)  
Christ with five loaves satisfied five thousand persons.

RULE II. — *Cento*, *duecento*, &c., when followed by another numeral adjective of more than two syllables, may lose the final syllable *to*; as, *cenquattordici*, one hundred and fourteen; *ducenquaranta*, two hundred and forty.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. In Italian the unit is always placed after the ten;

---

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 5, p. 50.

as, *trenta due*, two-and-thirty; *quaranta tre*, three-and-forty, &c.

2. A noun used with *ventuno*, *trentuno*, &c., is put in the singular when following the numeral, and in the plural when preceding it; as, *quarantuna lira*, or *lire quarantuna*, 41 lire. See No. 5, p. 84.

3. No indefinite article is used before either *cento* or *mille*, and no conjunction is required between numbers; as, *mille trecento ventuno*, one thousand three hundred and twenty-one.

4. To render in Italian eighteen hundred, twelve hundred, &c., we must say, *mille ottocento*, *mille duecento*, &c.

5. When speaking of a thousand years after the Christian era, it is necessary to put the definite article before *mille*. Thus we must say either *nel mille ottocento settanta*, or *il mille ottocento settanta*, in eighteen hundred and seventy.

6. The preposition *in*, which precedes a number or an adjective of quantity followed by a noun denoting time, is rendered in Italian by *fra* or *entro*, whenever referring to the future; as,

*Tornerò entro sei giorni*, I will return in six days.

*Vi scriverà fra pochi dì*, he will write to you in a few days.

7. The preposition 'within,' referring to past time, is rendered by *a* in sentences like the following:

*Ai dì passati*, within the last few days.

#### ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1st <i>primo</i> .	11th <i>undecimo</i> , or <i>decimo primo</i> .
2nd <i>secondo</i> .	12th <i>duodecimo</i> , or <i>decimo secondo</i> .
3rd <i>terzo</i> .	13th <i>tredicesimo</i> , or <i>decimo terzo</i> .
4th <i>quarto</i> .	14th <i>quattordicesimo</i> , or <i>decimo quarto</i> .
5th <i>quinto</i> .	15th <i>quindicesimo</i> , or <i>decimo quinto</i> .
6th <i>sesto</i> .	&c. &c.
7th <i>settimo</i> .	20th <i>ventesimo</i> , or <i>vigesimo</i> .
8th <i>ottavo</i> .	21st <i>ventesimo primo</i> .
9th <i>nono</i> .	22nd <i>ventesimo secondo</i> , &c.
10th <i>decimo</i> .	30th <i>trentesimo</i> , &c.
	100th <i>centesimo</i> .
	1000th <i>millesimo</i> . last, <i>ultimo</i> .

**RULE I.**—All the ordinal numbers, both simple and compound, are subject to all the variations of other adjectives ending in *o*; so we must say—

*Il primo giorno*, the first day.

*I primi giorni*, the first days.

*La ventesima prima volta*, the twenty-first time.

*Le ventesime prime volte*, the twenty-first times.

**RULE II.**—Ordinal numbers are used after the names of monarchs, popes, &c., as well as when speaking of the volumes of a work, or chapters of a book, as in English; but the article which precedes the number is omitted in Italian; as,

*Enrico ottavo*, Henry the Eighth.

*Libro primo, capitolo sesto*, book the first, chapter the sixth.

**RULE III.**—For the dates of the month the cardinal numbers must be used in Italian, except for the first day, which is expressed in the same way as in English; as,

*Il tre marzo*, 1860, on<sup>a</sup> the 3rd of March, 1860.

*Ai dieci or i dieci d' agosto*, on the tenth of August.

*Il primo d' aprile*, on the first of April.

#### EXCEPTION.

If the word *giorno* or *di*, day, is expressed, the ordinal number may be used.

**Ex.:** *Il dì nono di settembre* (1494) *Carlo ottavo entrò in Asti.* (GUIC.)  
On the ninth of September (1494) Charles VIII. entered Asti.

#### DISTRIBUTIVE AND COLLECTIVE NUMBERS.

<i>La metà</i> (mezzo) <sup>b</sup> ,	the half.
<i>Il doppio</i> ,	the double.
<i>Il triplo, il quadruplo, &amp;c.</i>	the triple, &c.
<i>Una coppia</i> ,	a couple.

<sup>a</sup> Observe that the preposition *on*, used in English before numbers of dates or days, is never expressed in Italian.

<sup>b</sup> When *mezzo*, half, is used collectively, it is indeclinable; as, *una libbra e mezzo di castrato*, one pound and a-half of mutton; but when it is an adjective it agrees with the noun; as, *mezza libbra*, half-a-pound. (See Rule IV., p. 152.)



<i>Un paio</i> <sup>a</sup> ,	a pair, a couple.
<i>Una decina</i> ,	half a score, 10.
<i>Una dozzina (una serqua)</i> <sup>b</sup> ,	a dozen.
<i>Una ventina</i> ,	a score.
<i>Una trentina, quarantina, &amp;c.</i>	a batch of 30, 40, &c.
<i>Un centinaio</i> ,	a hundred.
<i>Un migliaio</i> ,	a thousand.
<i>Trimestre</i> ,	three months.
<i>Triennio</i> ,	three years.
<i>Lustro</i> ,	five years.

N.B. — After distributive numbers, the preposition *di*, of, must be used ; as,

*Un paio di stivali*, a pair of boots.

*Una ventina di noci*, a score of nuts.

Commit to memory the following idioms :—

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Vanno</i> { <i>ad uno ad uno</i> ,     | They walk { one by one,        |
| { <i>a due a due, &amp;c.</i>                | { two by two, &c.              |
| 2. <i>Una lira (sterlina) per testa</i> ,    | A pound each.                  |
| 3. <i>Son morti tutti e due,</i>             | They are both, all three,      |
| <i>tutti e tre, tutti e quat-</i>            | all four, &c., dead.           |
| <i>tro, &amp;c.,</i>                         |                                |
| 4. <i>Che ora è? A che ora?</i>              | What o'clock is it? At         |
|  | what o'clock?                  |
| 5. <i>È l' una precisa, or È il</i>          | It is just one o'clock.        |
| <i>tocco preciso,</i>                        |                                |
| 6. <i>Sono le<sup>e</sup> tre e mezzo in</i> | It is exactly half-past three. |
| <i>punto,</i>                                |                                |
| 7. <i>Arrivò alle cinque e venti,</i>        | He arrived at twenty mi-       |
|  | nutes past five.               |
| 8. <i>Sono le dieci meno un</i>              | It is a quarter to ten         |
| <i>quarto,</i>                               | o'clock.                       |
| 9. <i>Il vostro oriuolo avanza;</i>          | Your watch is fast; it         |
| <i>mancano venti minuti</i>                  | wants twenty minutes           |
| <i>alle dieci,</i>                           | to ten.                        |

<sup>a</sup> *Paio* is also used in speaking of time ; as, *un paio di giorni*, a couple of days.

<sup>b</sup> *Serqua*, instead of *dozzina*, is used in speaking of eggs or fruit only ; as, *una serqua di pere*, a dozen pears ; *una serqua di uova*, a dozen eggs.

<sup>c</sup> Note b, p. 137.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 10. <i>No; il vostro sta in dietro (or è in ritardo di) cinque minuti,</i>   | No; yours is five minutes slow.                  |
| 11. <i>Sono le dodici,</i>   | It is twelve o'clock.                            |
| 12. <i>È la mezzanotte,</i>  | It is midnight.                                  |
| 13. <i>Mezzogiorno (mezzodì) è appena suonato,</i>                           | It has just struck twelve.                       |
| 14. <i>Sono le otto antimeridiane,</i>                                       | It is eight o'clock A.M. (or, in the forenoon).  |
| 15. <i>Sono le cinque pomeridiane,</i>                                       | It is five o'clock P.M. (or, in the afternoon).  |
| 16. <i>Dalle due alle<sup>a</sup> tre,</i>                                   | From two to three o'clock.                       |
| 17. <i>Sei moltiplicato per cinque fa trenta,</i>                            | Five times six makes thirty.                     |
| 18. <i>Levando sei da nove rimarrà tre,</i>                                  | Deducting six from nine remains three.           |
| 19. <i>Divedete l' otto per quattro,</i>                                     | Divide eight by four.                            |
| 20. <i>Cercate quante volte sta il<sup>a</sup> sei in tredici,</i>           | See how many times six is contained in thirteen. |
| 21. <i>Vi sta due volte e uno di avanzo,</i>                                 | It is contained twice, with remainder one.       |
| 22. <i>Tre via tre fa nove,</i>  | Three times three are nine.                      |
| 23. <i>Due e due fanno quattro,</i>  | Two and two make four.                           |
| 24. <i>Oggi a otto partirò da Londra,</i>                                    | I shall leave London this day week.              |
| 25. <i>Oggi a quindici la vedrò,</i>   | I shall see her this day fortnight.              |
| 26. <i>Lo vedrò entro quindici giorni (or, in una quindicina di giorni),</i> | I shall see him in a fortnight.                  |
| 27. <i>Quando fu l' ultima volta che vedeste vostro fratello?</i>            | When did you see your brother last?              |
| 28. <i>Vi avvertii cento volte e cento,</i>                                  | I have warned you hundreds of times.             |
| 29. <i>Egli lo visitò da tre volte in su,</i>                                | He visited him three times altogether.           |
| 30. <i>Sono pochi giorni che sono qui,</i>                                   | I have been here but a few days.                 |

\* Obs. 2, and Note b, p. 137.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 31. <i>Vi sono (or, mancano) due giorni a Natale,</i>  | It wants two days to Christmas.  |
| 32. <i>Esco due giorni di seguito quando fa bel tempo, ed un giorno sì e l' altro no quando fa freddo,</i>                                 | I go out two days running when it is fine weather, and every other day when it is cold.  |
| 33. <i>Quanti anni avete ?</i>   | How old are you ?  |
| 34. <i>Ho vent' anni,</i>  | I am twenty years of age.  |
| 35. <i>Quanti ne abbiamo (or, ai quanti siamo) del mese ?</i>  | What is the day of the month ?   |
| 36. <i>È il sei (or, ne abbiamo sei, or siamo ai sei),</i>   | It is the sixth.   |
| 37. <i>La fattura ammonta (or, ascende) a lire cento quaranta, per la qual somma vi ho fatto tratta a tre mesi data dal cinque maggio,</i> | The invoice comes to one hundred and forty pounds, for which sum I have drawn upon you at three months' date from May the 5th. |
| 38. <i>Ho ricevuto la vostra lettera del due corrente,</i>   | I have received your letter of the 2nd instant.  |
| 39. <i>Riferendovi alla mia del venti scorso (passato),</i>  | Referring you to my letter of the 20th ultimo.   |
| 40. <i>Vi mando un vaglia postale per lire dieci,</i>  | I forward you a post-office order for ten pounds.  |
| 41. <i>Accluso troverete un ordine a vista per due lire sterline,</i>  | Enclosed you will find a cheque for two pounds sterling.   |
| 42. <i>Trovò una cedola (or, lettera di cambio) per cento lire sterline,</i>   | He found a bill of exchange for £100.  |
| 43. <i>Dante morì nel secolo decimo quarto (or, nel trecento<sup>a</sup>),</i>   | Dante died in the fourteenth century.  |

---

\* In literature the Italians generally count by hundreds, beginning to reckon from the thousandth year after the Christian era, because they count the progress of learning from the revival of letters and arts after the Middle Ages. A writer of the fourteenth century is called *trecentista*.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 44. <i>Siamo nel secolo decimo nono (or, nell' otto cento),</i>   | We are in the nineteenth century.  |
| 45. <i>La Divina Commedia di Dante è scritta in terza rima,</i>   | Dante's Divine Comedy is written in "terza rima." <sup>a</sup>   |
| 46. <i>Boccaccio ha inventato l'ottava rima,</i>  | Boccaccio invented the "ottava rima." <sup>b</sup>   |
| 47. <i>Un sonetto è una poesia di 14 versi, in italiano divisi in due stanze di quattro versi ed in due di tre,</i> | A sonnet is a piece of poetry of fourteen lines, divided in Italian into four verses, two of four lines, and two of three. |

## READING EXERCISE.

Nel 1187<sup>c</sup>, fu presa Gerusalemme dal Saladino. Urbano III<sup>d</sup> (successore già ad Alessandro III, morto nel 1181, e a Lucio, morto nel 1185) ne morì, dicono di dolore; e succedettero Gregorio VIII per un mese, e poi Clemente III, che concitò la Cristianità al gran riacquisto. (BALBO.)

## VOCABULARY.

waiter, cameriere.	far, lontano, distante,	to forward, inviare.
mail coach, posta (diligenza).	lungi.	to leave a message,
way, via.	place, luogo.	fare un'ambasciata.
porter, facchino.	coach, vettura.	receipt, quittance.
to fetch, prendere.	mile, miglio.	mail, corriere.
trunk, baule.	bill, account, conto.	to send, mandare.
luggage, bagaglio.	the amount, il montante.	address, indirizzo (recapito).

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

1. Waiter, I shall leave Florence to-morrow. At what o'clock<sup>e</sup> does the mail-coach start for Rome?

<sup>a</sup> Rhyming every other line.

<sup>b</sup> A verse of eight lines of eleven syllables, rhyming the first with the third and fifth, the second with the fourth and sixth, and the two last together.

<sup>c</sup> Read the numbers as if they were written in words.

<sup>d</sup> Rule II., p. 176.

<sup>e</sup> No. 4, p. 176.

2. The one that goes by the way of Siena leaves at a  
*Quella che per*

quarter<sup>a</sup> to seven in the forenoon<sup>b</sup>, and that which goes  
*quella che*

by the way of Perugia leaves exactly at noon<sup>c</sup>. 3. I  
 will go by the way of Siena; I wish to be called to-  
 (Cond. of volere)

morrow morning at twenty-five minutes past five<sup>d</sup>.

4. Very well. . . . Sir, it has struck<sup>e</sup> five o'clock; the  
 [It goes well] [are]

coach will start in an hour<sup>f</sup>. 5. Has the porter come to  
 [Is]

fetch - my two trunks? 6. He will be here in<sup>g</sup> five  
*i miei*

minutes to fetch all - your luggage. 7. How<sup>h</sup> far<sup>3</sup>  
*tutto il vostro Quanto*

is<sup>i</sup> it (to) the place where the coach starts? 8. Half<sup>3</sup>-  
 a-mile. The day after to-morrow you will be at Rome.

9. Where are you going now? Bring me the bill.

10. Here is - your account; it comes<sup>h</sup> to twenty pounds  
*Ecco il vostro*

sterling. 11. Very well; I will forward you a post-  
 office order<sup>i</sup> for the amount this day week<sup>j</sup>. 12. Is Mr.

M. here? 13. He was here half<sup>3</sup>-an<sup>k</sup>-hour ago, but  
 he has left for Rome, where he will stay a fortnight<sup>l</sup>;

have you any message to leave? 14. I only<sup>2</sup> wanted<sup>1</sup>  
*qualche*

to give him a receipt for twenty-one pounds<sup>m</sup>. 15.  
 Leave it here; I will forward it to his address in Rome  
 (active) *al suo*

to-morrow at noon. 16. He is gone by the mail-coach

<sup>a</sup> No. 8, p. 176.

<sup>c</sup> No. 6, p. 176, and 13, p. 177.

<sup>e</sup> No. 13, p. 177.

<sup>h</sup> No. 37, p. 178.

<sup>k</sup> Rule IV., p. 152.

<sup>f</sup> Obs. 6, p. 174.

<sup>i</sup> No. 40, p. 178.

<sup>l</sup> No. 26, p. 177.

<sup>b</sup> No. 14, p. 176.

<sup>d</sup> No. 7, p. 176.

<sup>g</sup> Note *b*, p. 175.

<sup>j</sup> No. 24, p. 177.

<sup>m</sup> Obs. 2, p. 174.

after the custom of the eighteenth century, and will  
*secondo uso*  
 arrive at Rome on the twenty-first instant.<sup>a</sup> By the  
 railway *viâ* Ancona, which was finished in 1864,<sup>b</sup> the  
 letter will reach Rome before - him.  
*prima di lui*

## QUESTIONS.

A che ora fate colazione?—Avanza o sta in dietro il vostro oriuolo<sup>c</sup>?—Va bene l' orologio della stanza da mangiare?—Come si chiama colui che viene a prendere il bagaglio per portarlo alla diligenza od alla strada ferrata? 5.—Quando aspettate vostra zia?—È un pezzo che studiate l' italiano?—In che secolo morì Dante?—In qual genere di rima è scritta la Divina Commedia?—Chi ha inventato l' ottava rima?—Che genere di poesia è un sonetto?—Quando fu presa Gerusalemme dal Saladino<sup>d</sup>?—Chi concitò la Cristianità al riacquisto?

## CHAPTER VIII.

## PRONOUNS.

THERE are different classes of pronouns. They are generally divided into *Personal, Possessive, Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite*.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Italian personal pronouns undergo declension.<sup>e</sup> They have both disjunctive and conjunctive forms; *i. e.*, some forms which cannot be joined to the verb, and others which must always stand next to the verb and are often joined to it. Before proceeding to give special rules on personal pronouns, we call the attention of the student to the following table, showing the inflections of these pronouns:—

<sup>a</sup> No. 38, p. 178.<sup>b</sup> Obs. 5, p. 174.<sup>c</sup> See Nos. 9 & 10, pp. 176, 177.<sup>d</sup> See Read. Ex., p. 179.<sup>e</sup> Note e, p. 144.

First Person.			
Nom. I	Singular.	CONJUNCTIVE.	Plural.
	DISJUNCTIVE.		DISJUNCTIVE.
Gen. of me	<i>io</i>		<i>noi</i>
Dat. to me	<i>di me</i>		<i>di noi</i>
Aco. me	<i>a me</i>	<i>mi</i>	<i>a noi</i>
Abl. { from me with me in me on me for me between me	<i>me</i>	<i>mi</i>	<i>noi.</i>
	<i>da me<sup>a</sup></i>		<i>da noi</i>
	<i>con me or meco</i>		<i>con noi</i>
	<i>in me</i>		<i>in noi</i>
	<i>su me</i>		<i>su noi</i>
	<i>per me</i>		<i>per noi</i>
	<i>tra or fra me<sup>b</sup></i>		<i>tra or fra noi</i>
Second Person.			
Nom. thou			
	DISJUNCTIVE.		
Gen. of thee	<i>tu</i>		<i>voi</i>
Dat. to thee	<i>di te</i>		<i>di voi</i>
Aco. thee	<i>a te</i>	<i>ti</i>	<i>a voi</i>
Abl. { from thee with thee &c.	<i>te</i>	<i>ti</i>	<i>voi</i>
	<i>da te</i>		<i>da voi</i>
	<i>con te or teco</i>		<i>con voi</i>
	<i>&amp;c.</i>		<i>&amp;c.</i>
Third Person Masculine.			
Nom. he (it)			
	DISJUNCTIVE.		
Gen. of him (it)	<i>egli, or ei, or e', or esso<sup>d</sup></i>		<i>egli<sup>no</sup>, or ei, or e', or essi</i>
Dat. to him (it)	<i>di lui or d' esso</i>		<i>di loro or d' essi</i>
Aco. him (it)	<i>a lui or ad esso</i>	<i>ne</i>	<i>a loro or ad essi</i>
Abl. { from him (it) with him (it) &c.	<i>lui or esso</i>	<i>gli</i>	<i>loro or essi</i>
	<i>da lui or da esso</i>	<i>lo<sup>e</sup> or il</i>	<i>da loro or da essi</i>
	<i>con lui or con esso or acco<sup>f</sup></i>		<i>con loro or con essi or seco</i>
	<i>&amp;c.</i>		<i>&amp;c.</i>

## Third Person Feminine.

Nom.	she (it)	<i>ella</i> or <i>essa</i> <sup>a</sup>	they	<i>elle</i> or <i>elleno</i> <sup>b</sup> or <i>esse</i>
Gen.	of her (it)	<i>di lei</i> or <i>d' essa</i>	of them	<i>di loro</i> or <i>d' esse</i>
Dat.	to her (it)	<i>a lei</i> or <i>ad essa</i>	to them	<i>a loro</i> or <i>ad esse</i>
Acc.	her (it)	<i>lei</i> or <i>essa</i>	them	<i>loro</i> or <i>esse</i>
Abl.	{ from her (it)	<i>da lei</i> or <i>da essa</i>	{ from them	<i>da loro</i> or <i>da esse</i>
	{ with her (it)	<i>con lei</i> or <i>con essa</i> or <i>seco</i>	{ with them	<i>con loro</i> or <i>con esse</i> or <i>seco</i>
		&c.		&c.

## REFLECTIVE PRONOUNS FOR BOTH GENDERS AND NUMBERS.

No Nominative.	himself, herself, itself, or themselves	<i>di sè</i> <sup>1</sup> .
Gen. of oneself.	"	<i>a sè</i>
Dat. to oneself.	"	<i>sè</i>
Acc. oneself.	"	<i>da sè</i> .
Abl. { from oneself,	"	<i>con sè</i> or <i>seco</i> .
{ with oneself,	"	

<sup>a</sup> *Da me, da te, da lui, da lei, da noi, da voi*, mean also 'by myself,' or 'alone,' &c., when the subject is in the same person with the pronoun which follows *da* (as, *L' Italia farà da sè*, Italy will do by herself), the words *stesso* or *medesimo*, pl. *stessi* and *medesimi*, self or selves, being used with all personal pronouns; as, *io stesso, tu stesso, da me stesso*, &c.; but only in cases where the English 'self' is intended to be emphatic. (See Note b, p. 43.)—N.B. The word *da*, answering to the French *chez*, *da me, da noi*, &c., may mean also 'at,' 'in,' or 'to my house'; 'to me,' 'to us,' or 'amongst us,' &c., when the subject is not in the same person with the pronoun which follows *da*.

<sup>b</sup> *Fra me stesso* or *medesimo*, and *meco stesso*, are also used for 'within,' or 'in myself,' 'to myself.'

<sup>c</sup> *Ei* and *e'* are both abbreviations of *egli* and *egliano*; *e'* is only used in poetry.

<sup>d</sup> See Note a, p. 11.

<sup>e</sup> See Note a (2) and (3), p. 43.

<sup>f</sup> *Seco, meco, seco*, and the other forms of *con* and the pronoun, are

sometimes found used together; as, *con meco, seco lui, seco lei*, &c. *Nosco* and *vosco* are used by poets for *con noi* and *con voi*.

<sup>g</sup> *Esso, essa*, &c., with *d* before them, means the person himself, &c.; and are used after the verbs *essere* and *parere*; as, *è dessa*, it is herself, i.e. *la persona di essa*. *Esso* is also used uninflected after some propositions, as follows:—*con esso me, con esso lui*, or *con esso loro*, &c., with myself, &c. We find used by good writers, *con esso le mani*, with the hands.

<sup>h</sup> *Nè* (with the *e* accented) means 'neither' or 'nor,' and must not be confounded with *ne*, of it, him, them, &c., and *ne*, us, to us. The latter *ne*, us, to us, is poetical.

<sup>i</sup> *Gli* for *loro*, to them, is generally used in conversation. *Loro* generally follows the verb, and is not joined to it.

<sup>j</sup> *Li* in old writers is found used for the dative singular *gli*.

<sup>k</sup> *Elle, or elleno* are often contracted into *la, le*.

<sup>l</sup> *Sè*, pronoun, is accented, to distinguish it from the conjunction *se*, if.



### RULES FOR THE USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS WITH DISJUNCTIVE AND CONJUNCTIVE FORMS.

RULE I.—Italian personal pronouns may be either expressed or understood in the nominative case.<sup>a</sup> When they are expressed, they generally stand in the same place in the sentence, as would the noun or nouns they represent; as,

*Egli [il conte] avea l'anello assai caro per alcuna virtù ch' egli [l'anello] avea.* (Boc.)

He held the ring very dear on account of some virtue which it possessed.

RULE II.—The personal pronouns which are the subjects of the verb,<sup>a</sup> may, like the nouns they represent, either precede or follow the verb; as,

*S' io fossi nella via come è egli.*

If I were in the way, as he is.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

The pronominal subject follows the verb :

1. When a question is asked,<sup>b</sup> without an interrogative pronoun in the nominative case; as,

*Siete voi solo?* Are you alone?

2. With the imperative mood; as,  
*Mangi egli del suo,* Let him eat what he has.

3. In introducing the parts of a dialogue; as,  
*Perchè? diss' io,* Why? said I.

4. In a narrative sentence, in speaking of the doing or saying of a person; as,

*Io non piangeva, piangevan elli.* (DAN.)

I did not weep, they wept.

RULE III.—*Disjunctive* pronouns (see p. 182) commonly follow the verb. In the cases in which there are both disjunctive and conjunctive forms (viz., in the dative and accusative, as well as the genitive of the 3rd person), the disjunctive form is generally employed—

<sup>a</sup> See p. 11.

<sup>b</sup> Note *a*, p. 14.

<sup>c</sup> Obs. 3, p. 193.

(i.) When there are two *genitives*, two *datives*, or two *accusatives* in the same phrase relating to different persons ; as,

*Parlo di lui e non di lei*, I speak of him and not of her.

*Parlerò a voi ma non a lui*, I shall speak to you, but not to him.

*Invitate lui e lei*, Invite him and her.

(ii.) When we wish to lay particular stress on the pronoun ; as,

*Parlo a voi, signore*, I am talking to you, Sir.

RULE IV.—*Conjunctive* pronouns (see p. 182) sometimes precede and sometimes follow the verb, precisely in the same way as *reflective* pronouns.\* They are generally employed when there is one *genitive*, one *dative*, or one *accusative* only in the same phrase ; as,

*Egli ne parlò ieri*, he spoke of it yesterday.

*Quando mi porterete il cappello?* when will you bring me the hat ?

*La vide, la<sup>b</sup> conobbe*, he saw and recognised her.

*Verro a vedervi domani*, or *Vi<sup>c</sup> verrò a vedere domani*, I will come and see you to-morrow.

N.B.—It is to be noticed that the rules given for the placing of the pronoun, at 2, p. 37, are generally observed in common conversation ; but writers, and especially the poets, frequently place the *conjunctive* pronouns not only after the *Infinitive*, the *Participles*, and the *Imperative*, but also after other parts of the verb. Thus, *pregovi*, I beg you ; *parlavale*, he spoke to her ; *raccontasi*, it is related ; are used for *vi* *prego*, *le* *parlava*, *si* *racconta*.

#### EXERCISES.

Substitute a proper personal pronoun for the nouns in italics, in the following sentences (see N.B., p. 152) :—

L' avaro s' affattica pazzamente ad ammassare ricchezze ;  
le ricchezze all' avaro punto non giovano, perchè l' avaro

\* Obs. 2, p. 43.

<sup>b</sup> When two or more verbs govern the same pronoun, the latter is repeated with each verb.

<sup>c</sup> When a verb is used with an *Infinitive* after it, the pronoun may either precede the first verb, or follow the *Infinitive*.

delle ricchezze mai non gode.—La pace non è per l'empio l'empio cerca la pace, la pace fugge l'empio.—Ho veduto vostro fratello, ed ho parlato con vostro fratello; diedi a vostro fratello quattro pere, vostro fratello parve rimanere lieto e contento delle quattro pere.—Vedrò i vostri amici, e darò a' vostri amici novelle di voi.

### RULES ON DOUBLE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE I.—When one conjunctive pronoun immediately follows another in the same phrase in Italian, the dative precedes the accusative, and the genitive *ne* generally follows all other pronouns except *loro*; as,

*Mi* (to me) *vi* (you) *raccomanda*, he recommends you to me.

*Non vuol raccomandarvi*<sup>a</sup>, he will not recommend me to you.

### OBSERVATIONS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

The joining of the pronouns to one another gives rise to the following changes in their terminations:—

1. *mi*, *ti*, *ci*, *vi*, *si* change their *i* into *e* before either *lo*, *la*, *gli*, *li*, *le* or *ne*; as,

<i>me lo</i>	or	<i>melo</i>	} <i>darà</i> , he will give	{	it to me.
<i>te la</i>	„	<i>tela</i>			it to thee.
<i>ce gli</i>	„	<i>cegli</i>			them to us.
<i>ve li</i>	„	<i>veli</i>			them to you.
<i>se le</i>	„	<i>sele</i>			them to himself.
<i>se ne</i>	„	<i>sene</i>			some to himself.

2. *gli*, to him, and *le*, to her, both become *glie* before *lo*, *la*, *li*, *le*, *ne*, and join with them; as,

*glielo* or *gliela* *darò*, I shall give it to him or to her.

*glieli* or *gliele* *darò*, I shall give them to him or to her.

*gliene*<sup>b</sup> *darò*, I shall give some to him or to her.

<sup>a</sup> When two conjunctive pronouns follow the verb, they join together, and form but one word with the verb. If they precede the verb, they are never united to it, but are often joined to one another.

<sup>b</sup> For the dative feminine *le* also may be used before *ne*. See also Note *g*, p. 105.

3. The *o* of *lo*, and the *e* of *ne*, are frequently dropped before a consonant, except *s* followed by a consonant, when joined to one of the other pronouns; so, *mel*, *tel*, *sel*, *cel*, *vel*, *gliel*, *men*, *ten*, *sen*, *cen*, *ven*, *glien*, are used instead of *melo*, *telo*, &c. We find also *nol* for *non lo*, and *avendol* for *avendolo*.

## EXERCISE.

Substitute the proper pronouns for the nouns in italics in the following sentences (see N.B., p. 152):—

Io ho promesso un libro a Pompeo, e darò *quel libro a Pompeo*.—Voi avete un libro di *quel fanciullo*, rendete *codesto libro a questo fanciullo*.—Quella ficaia è bassa, potete da terra cogliere *i frutti di quella ficaia*.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS WHEN JOINED TO THE VERB OR THE WORD *ecco*.

1. When the pronoun is joined to the verb, if the latter is in the Infinitive, it drops the final *e* or the syllable *re*, if it ends in *rre*; as, *parlarle*, to speak to her; *condurvi*, to conduct you.

2. When the verb is of one syllable, and ends with a vowel; as, *dà*, he gives, or give thou; *ho*, I have; *è*, he is,—or has the accent on the final vowel; as, *parlò*, he spoke; *sentirò*, I shall hear,—then the consonant of all pronouns joined to it, except the *g* of *gli*, is doubled, and the accent suppressed; as, *dammelo*, give it to me; *hotti*, I have thee; *emmi*, to me is; *parlerolle*, I shall speak to her.

3. When the verb ends with *m* or *n* or *r*, followed by a vowel, the latter is dropped; thus we find *domandaronte* for *le domandarono*, they asked her; *dividiamle*, let us divide them; *ebbero caro*, they held him dear. Sometimes in similar cases the letters *m* and *n* are changed; as in

*Viemmi dietro*, for *vienmi dietro*, follow me.

*Amianci*, for *amiamci*, let us love one another<sup>a</sup>.

---

<sup>a</sup> See Reciprocal Verbs, p. 46.

4. The pronouns which follow the word *ecco*, 'here is, there is, here are, there are,' are in the accusative, and joined to it; as,

*eccomi, eccoti, eccolo, eccola*, here I am, here thou art, &c.

*eccoci, eccovi, eccoli, eccole, eccone*, here we are, &c.

It is also said—

*eccotelo, eccovelo*, &c., here it is before or for thee, here it is for you, &c.; as,

*Eccotel<sup>a</sup> pronto* (GUA.), here it is ready for thee.

*Eccoti il nappo* (GUA.), here is the cup for thee.

And likewise it is often said, *eccomi quì, eccovi quà, eccolo lì, eccola là*, &c.; the words *quì, quà, here, and lì, là, there*, being expletives<sup>b</sup>.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON SOME PECULIAR USES OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS, AND THE WORDS *ci, vi, ne*.

1. The words *mi, ti, ci, vi, si, egli, ella, la, le, gli, ne*, are very often found used as expletives<sup>b</sup>; as,

*Io medesimo non so quel ch' io mi voglio.* (PET.)

I myself do not know what I want (myself).

*Amor, che meco al buon tempo ti stavi.* (PET.)

Thou, love, who wast (thyself) with me in prosperous times.

*In un lettuccio assai piccolo si dormiva.* (BEM.)

He was sleeping (himself) in a very small bed.

*Andatevene<sup>c</sup> pei fatti vostri.*

Go (yourselves off) about your business.

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 3, p. 187.

<sup>b</sup> An expletive is a word the using of which makes a sentence more full of words than is necessary; *quì, quà, lì, là*, might be dispensed with in the above examples, for *ecco* means 'here is' and 'there is.'

<sup>c</sup> *Ne* is often idiomatically used with *mi, ti*, &c., in conjugating certain verbs. Notice the following model:—

Egli è grave a dismettere le usanze. (SEGN.)

It is hard to leave off habit.

Dovè poi mangiarsel senza sale. (PUL.)

He was obliged to eat it afterwards without salt.

2. *Ci* and *vi* signify sometimes 'of it,' 'to it,' 'for or about it,' 'in it,' 'at it,' 'upon it,' or 'to them,' &c.; and then they answer to the French *y*; as,

*Ora che ci penso*, now that I think of it.

*Riflettetevi bene*, reflect on it well.

*La necessità lo costrinse a consentirvi*, necessity constrained him to consent to it.

*Metteteci sopra la mano*, put your hand upon it.

3. *Lo* or *il*<sup>a</sup> is employed to render the English word 'so' which follows a verb; as,

*Fatelo*, do so. *Lo credo*, I think so.

4. *Mi*, *ti*, *ci*, *vi*, *si*<sup>b</sup>, when used with the verbs *salutare* or *riverire*, to salute or present one's compliments, *abbracciare*, to embrace, *baciare*, to kiss, have sometimes the meaning of the English possessive pronoun *my*, *thy*; sometimes *for me*, *for you*, &c.; as,

*Addio, mio caro, salutatemi gli amici*.

Good-bye, my dear, give my compliments to our friends.

*Non ho dimenticato di riverirvi il Signor B*

I have not forgotten to give many compliments for you to Mr. B.

Infinitive—*andarsene*, to go away.

Indicative Present.

*me ne vado*, I am going away. *ce ne andiamo*, we are going away.

*te ne vai*, thou art &c. *ve ne andate*, you are &c.

*se ne va*, he or she is &c. *se ne vanno*, they are &c.

And so in all the other moods and tenses. Several verbs may be conjugated in the above manner; as, *starsene*, to remain; *partirsene*, to depart, &c.

<sup>a</sup> *Il* for *lo* is more commonly used in poetry; it can neither follow the verb, nor be used before a verb beginning with a vowel or with *s* followed by a consonant.

<sup>b</sup> For other meanings of *si*, see Obs., pp. 42, 46, and 49.

5. *Ci* and *vi* are also used adverbially in the sense of 'here' or 'there'; as,

*Se voi andrete a Parigi, v' andrò anch' io.*

If you go to Paris, I shall go there too.

*Io sto a Londra perchè mi ci<sup>a</sup> trovo bene.*

I remain in London because I am well here.

6. Used as adverbs, *ci* means 'here,' and *vi*, 'there'; but *vi* is often used for 'here,' and *ci* for 'there,' to avoid the coming together of *ci*, here, with *ci*, us; and *vi*, there, with *vi*, you; as,

*Voi ci vi chiamaste*, you called us here.

*Chi vi ci<sup>b</sup> mandò?* who sent you there?

7. *Ci* and *vi* are used with third persons of the verb *essere*, in the same way that 'here' and 'there' are used in English; as,

*c' è*, or *v' è*, here is, or there is; *ci sono*, or *vi sono*, here are, or there are.

*c' era*, or *v' era*, here was, or there was; *c' erano*, or *v' erano*, here were, or there were, &c.

In Italian, however, *ci* or *vi* may be often omitted<sup>b</sup>; as,

*Erano in quel tempo tre papi, Gregorio, Benedetto, e Giovanni* (MAC.)

There were at that time three popes, Gregory, Benedict, and John.

8. *Ci* and *vi* are often found with *avere*; as,

*Non ci ha uomo il quale non ami d' esser felice*

There is no man that does not love to be happy

*In questo tempo v' ebbe in Roma diverse mutazioni.*

(G. VIL.)

At this time there were in Rome divers commotions.

N.B.—The verb *avere*, when thus employed, must be

<sup>a</sup> The place of *ci* and *vi*, when adverbs, in relation to the verb with which they are used, is the same as when these words are pronouns. The adverb, however, is generally near the verb.

<sup>b</sup> *Ci* and *vi* are never used before *essere* when this verb refers to a present or past time, and is followed by a quantitative or numeral adjective preceding a noun expressing time; but if the verb refers to a future time, *ci* and *vi* may be used. (See No. 30 and 31, pp. 177 and 178.)

in the singular number, whilst *essere*, when used in the same capacity, agrees in number with the noun.

9. *Ci*, *si* and *la* are used idiomatically with certain verbs, to which they give a new meaning; *entrare*, to enter, *entrarci*, to have to do; *mettere*, to put, *metterci*, to take (time); *avere*, to have, *averla*, to be angry; *passare*, to pass, *passarsela*, to get on (in life); as,

*Io non c' entro*, I have nothing to do with this.

*Ci ho messo un' ora a venire qui*.

It has taken me an hour to come here.

*Con chi l' avete?* With whom are you angry?

*Come ve la\* passate?* How do you get on?

10. *Ne* means also 'some,' 'any,' 'a few,' 'about it,' 'for it,' 'from it,' answering to the French *en*; as,

*Me ne rincresco*, I am sorry for it.

11. *Ne* must be used when the accusative is not repeated; as,

*Avete delle pere?* *Non ne ho*.

Have you some pears? I have none.

*Ne volete?* Do you want some?

#### OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONCORD OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. When the personal pronoun represents more than one singular noun of the same gender, it must be in the plural number, and agree in gender with the nouns; as,

*La vipera e la vespa mordono chi le stuzzica.* (SEGN.)

The viper and the wasp bite those who molest them

2. When the personal pronoun represents more than one noun of different genders, it must be in the plural masculine; as,

*Onorate il padre e la madre; se non fossero stati eglino, voi non sareste.*

Honour your father and mother; without them you would not have existed.

See also Note b, p. 185.

\* *La*, like *ne*, is used with *mi*, *ti*, &c., in conjugating certain verbs (see Note c, p. 188).



3. The accusative pronoun, instead of the nominative, must be employed in Italian—

(i.) After the verb *essere*, and the verbs *credere*, to believe, and *stimare*, to suppose, in a dependent sentence, when these verbs imply an idea of transmutation; as,

*Credendo ch' io fossi te* (Boc.), thinking that I was thee.

(ii.) In apostrophizing, in phrases similar to the following:—*Oh felice lei!* O happy she! *Beato lui!* blessed he!

(iii.) When used as a *predicate* after the verb *essere*; as,  
*L' amico è un altro* me, my friend is another I.

4. The person of the verb *essere* is different in Italian and in English in phrases such as the following:—*Sono io*, it is I; *sei tu*, it is thou; *siete voi*, it is you, &c.

5. After the *di* which follows a comparative, the genitive is used in Italian; as,

*Io sono più pigro di lei*,<sup>a</sup> I am more lazy than she.

6. *Lui*, *lei*, and *loro*, instead of *egli*, *ella*, *eglino* or *elleno*, are used after *come* or *siccome*, as or like, *quanto*, so much or as, when the verb, of which they might be the subjects, is not expressed; as,

*Costoro ch' erano come lui maliziosi* (Boc.), those who were like him malicious.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON POETICAL AND POPULAR LICENSES.

1. In common conversation *lei* is used instead of *ella*, and *loro* instead of *elleno*, and *lui* instead of *egli*; as,

*Come sta lei?*<sup>b</sup> How is she?

*Lei è giovine, ma lui è vecchio.*

She is young, but he is old.

*Vedono loro il lume?* Do they see the light?

2. The people in Tuscany, and the poets, often use *i* for *io*; as, *i non so*, I do not know.

Ex.: *I non so ben ridir com' io v' entrai.* (DAN.)  
How I entered there I cannot tell.

<sup>a</sup> Note a, p. 163.

<sup>b</sup> When we use the contracted forms of *ella* or *elle*, we say, *come la sta*, and *le vedono il lume*. (See Note j, p. 183.)

## 3. The poets use

*nui, vui, ello, elli or egli,*  
for *noi, voi, egli, eglino.*

Ex.: *Il cavalier ch' era con nui.* (ARI.)

The knight who was with us.

*Noi uderemo e parleremo a vui.* (DAN.)

We shall hear and speak to you.

*Ed ello abbia quella (la rendita) del mulino.* (SAC.)

And let him have that (the revenue) of the mill.

*Piangevan elli* (DAN.), they wept.

*Perchè egli stanno* (MAC.), because they remain.

4. *Ella* is used by poets in other cases besides the nominative; thus Ariosto has *memoria d' ella*, memory of her.

5. *Elle* has been used by Dante instead of *loro*.

Ex.: *E suon di man con elle*, and sound of hands with them.

6. *Gli* is employed in the dative plural, instead of *loro*.

Ex.: *Tutto il paese che il Soldano gli avea renduto.* (G. VII.)

All the country which the Sultan had restored to them  
(the Saracens).

7. *Li* has been used instead of *gli* in the dative singular masculine, meaning, 'to him.' (See Note j, p. 183.)

Ex.: *Domandolli poi se via c' era.* (ARI.)

He then asked him if there was any way.

8. *Lui* and *lei* are found in old writers used in the dative case without the preposition before them, where *gli* and *le* should have been used.

Ex.: *Risposi lui con vergognosa fronte.* (DAN.)

I answered him with a blushing countenance.

*On d' io risposi lei* (DAN.), therefore I replied to her.

## READING EXERCISE.

Narrano le antiche cronache ch' egli fu già\* in Portogallo un uomo dabbene, il quale avea un suo unico figliuolo da lui caramente amato: e vedendo ch' egli era

\* Formerly.

di animo semplice e inclinato al ben fare, stavagli<sup>a</sup> sempre con gli occhi addosso, temendo che non gli<sup>b</sup> fosse guasto da' corrotti costumi di molti altri. Di che spesso gli<sup>b</sup> tenea<sup>c</sup> lunghi ragionamenti, e gli<sup>b</sup> diceva che si guardasse molto bene dalle male compagnie; e gli facea<sup>c</sup> in quella tenerella età comprendere chi facea male, e perchè facea male. Il fanciullo udia le paterne ammonizioni; ma pure una volta gli disse: "Di che volete voi<sup>d</sup> temere? Io son certo che non mi si appiccherà mai addosso vizio veruno, e spero che avverrà il contrario, ch' essi<sup>e</sup> ad esempio di me diverranno virtuosi." Il buon padre, conoscendo che le parole non faceano<sup>c</sup> quel frutto ch' egli avrebbe voluto, pensò di ricorrere all' arte; ed empiuta una cestellina delle più belle e più vistose pere che si trovassero, gliene<sup>f</sup> fece un presente. Ma riconosciuto a certi piccoli segnali che alcune poche di esse eran vicine a guastarsi, quelle mescolò con le buone. Il fanciullo si ralleggrò, e come si fa in quell' età, volendo egli vedere quante e quali fossero le sue ricchezze, mentre che le<sup>g</sup> novera e mira, esclama, "Oh, padre! che avete voi<sup>d</sup> fatto? A che avete voi mescolate queste che hanno magagna con le sane?"

"Non pensar<sup>h</sup>, figliuol mio, a ciò<sup>i</sup>," risposegli<sup>a</sup> il padre; "queste pere sono di tal natura, che le sane appiccano la salute loro alle triste." "Voi<sup>d</sup> vedrete," ripigliò il fanciullo, "che sarà fra pochi giorni il contrario." Si sarà, non sarà; il padre lo<sup>b</sup> prega che le lasci per vederne<sup>b</sup> la sperienza. Il figliuolo, benchè a dispetto, se ne<sup>k</sup> contenta<sup>l</sup>. La cestellina si chiude in una cassa, il padre prende le chiavi. Il putto gli era di tempo in tempo intorno perchè riaprisse; il padre indugiava. Finalmente gli disse: "Questo è il dì, ecco le chiavi." Appena potea il fanciullo attendere che la<sup>m</sup> si voltasse nella toppa. Ma appena fu la cestellina aperta, che non vede più pere, le quali erano tutte coperte di muffa e guaste.

<sup>a</sup> N.B., p. 185.

<sup>b</sup> Rule III., p. 184.

<sup>c</sup> Obs. 8, p. 127.

<sup>d</sup> Excep. 2, p. 184.

<sup>e</sup> Note *a*, p. 11.

<sup>f</sup> Rule I., and Obs. 2, p. 186.

<sup>g</sup> Rule IV., p. 185.

<sup>h</sup> Note *c*, p. 14.

<sup>i</sup> That.

<sup>j</sup> Rule I., p. 184.

<sup>k</sup> Rule I., and Obs. 1, p. 186.

<sup>l</sup> The present is used instead of the past in a narrative, in order to bring the action more vividly before the reader.

<sup>m</sup> Note *k*, p. 183.

"Oh ! nol<sup>a</sup> diss'io," grida egli<sup>b</sup>, "che così sarebbe stato ? Non è forse avvenuto quello ch' io dissi ? Padre mio, voi l'<sup>c</sup> avete voluto." "Non è questa cosa che ti debba dare tanto dolore, rispose il padre baciandolo<sup>e</sup> affettuosamente. Ma tu<sup>d</sup> ti lagni ch' io<sup>d</sup> non abbia voluto credere a te<sup>e</sup> delle pere. E tu<sup>d</sup> qual fede prestavi a me<sup>e</sup> quando io<sup>d</sup> ti dicea che la compagnia dei tristi guasta i buoni ? Credi tu ch' io non possa compensarti di queste poche pere che hai perdute ? Ma io<sup>d</sup> non so chi potesse compensar me, quando tu mi fossi guasto e contaminato."

(GOZZI.)

## VOCABULARY.

host (landlord), <i>albergatore.</i>	to show in, <i>far entrare.</i>	to take, carry back, <i>riportare.</i>
to want, <i>avere bisogno di.</i>	to send for, <i>mandare a chiamare.</i>	to take off, <i>cavarsi.</i>
to wish, <i>bramare.</i>	to take the measure for, <i>prendere la misura di.</i>	boot, <i>stivale</i> (masc.)
to wish to know, <i>desiderare sapere.</i>	coat, <i>vestito.</i>	hat, <i>cappello.</i>
to charge, <i>fare pagare a.</i>	fashion, <i>moda.</i>	to accompany, <i>accompagnare.</i>
courier, <i>corriere.</i>	shoemaker, <i>calzolaio.</i>	guide-book, <i>guida.</i>
to pardon, <i>scusare.</i>	shoe, <i>scarpa.</i>	to deprive, <i>privare.</i>
master, <i>padrone.</i>	to show, <i>mostrare, far vedere.</i>	compliment, <i>complimento.</i>
to hear from, <i>ricevere nuove di or da.</i>	to try on, <i>provarsi.</i>	brother in law, <i>cognato.</i>
tailor, <i>sarto.</i>	tight, <i>stretto.</i>	favour, <i>favore.</i>
		to ask for, <i>domandare</i> (act.)

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

RULES I., II., III. } 1. How shall we go to Tivoli to-day ?  
 2. You<sup>d</sup> shall walk<sup>f</sup>, and I<sup>d</sup> will ride. Waiter ! 3. Do you want me, Sir ? 4. I do not want you, but I want  
 (use *volere*)  
 to speak to the host, because I wish to know why he  
*siccome*  
 charges me and – my courier more than<sup>e</sup> he ought for  
 (dative) *al mio* (Cond. of *dovere*.)

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 3, p. 187.<sup>b</sup> Excep. 4, p. 184.<sup>c</sup> Rule IV., p. 185.<sup>d</sup> See p. 11.<sup>e</sup> Rule III., p. 184.<sup>f</sup> See Phrases, p. 62.<sup>g</sup> Obs. 1, p. 163.

everything — we take. 5. I beg your pardon, Sir,  
*tutto ciò che* [Pardon, Sir]

but we charge you and him the same that we do  
 (dative) (dative) [as much as we charge]

others. 6. Tell — your master to<sup>a</sup> come to me<sup>b</sup>  
*agli altri al*

at once; I do not wish to speak to you, but to him.  
*subito* (use *volere*)

7. He is gone out, Sir.

RULE IV.} 8. Well-then, I will speak to him another  
*Allora* (Fut. of *parlare*) *un' altra*

time. 9. Courier, have you heard from your brother?

10. I<sup>c</sup> write to him often, but he<sup>c</sup> does not answer me.

11. Sir, the tailor wishes to see you. 12. Show him  
 (use *desiderare*)

in. 13. Good morning, Sir. 14. I have sent for

you, as I wish you to take my  
*siccome* (use *volere*) [that you may take to me the]

measure for a coat. 15. How do you wish it made?  
 (Pres. of *volere*)

16. Make it (according) to the latest fashion. 17. Very  
*ultima*

well, Sir, you shall have it. Good day. 18. Sir, the  
 [you will be served]

shoemaker — has brought your shoes.  
 [to you] [the]

RULE I.  
 OBS. 1 & 2, p. 186.}

19. Show them to me; I will try them  
 on. He has<sup>3</sup> made<sup>4</sup> them<sup>2</sup> too<sup>5</sup> tight<sup>6</sup> for me<sup>1</sup>. Take  
 [to me]

them back to him, and tell him to make me —<sup>d</sup> another  
*un altro*

pair. 20. Take them off, and I will carry them back  
 to him immediately.

*subito*

<sup>a</sup> Note *b*, p. 76.

<sup>c</sup> See p. 11.

<sup>b</sup> N.B., p. 183.

<sup>d</sup> Obs. 11, p. 191.

Obs. 4, } 21. Waiter! 22. Here I am. 23. Where  
p. 188. } have you put — my boots? 24. There they are.

*i miei*  
25. And where is — my hat? 26. There it is on the  
*il mio*

table. 27. Have — my friends come? 28. Here they  
[Are] *i miei*

are. 29. Oh! here you are, at last. 30. How do you  
*al fine.*

do? We are late; are we not? 31. It does not  
[is it not true]

matter. 32. Is — your courier in his room?  
*il nella sua*

Obs. 5 & 6, } 33. I do not know. Waiter, go and see if he  
p. 190. } is there. 34. He was there only just now. 35. Have  
[now now]

*or ora*  
you been to Tivoli before? 36. I have not yet been  
*avanti ancora*

there. 37. I shall be happy to accompany you there.

38. Have you a guide-book?

RULES AND } 39. I have<sup>s</sup> none<sup>l</sup>. 40. Would you  
Obs. 10 & 11, p. 191. } like to have one? Take this. 41. I do not wish to  
*questa*

deprive you of it. 42. I have two, so I can give you  
*così*

one. Here it is for you.

GENERAL RULES } 43. No, thank you, I know that my  
AND OBSERVATIONS. } sister has one. Here is my courier, I will tell him to  
(dative)

go to<sup>s</sup> her and ask her to lend it me. John, go to<sup>s</sup> my  
sister's; tell her that I should be glad if she  
(dative) [she would do me a favour]

would lend me — her guide to the environs of Rome.  
(use colore) *la sua guida* [of]

Give my compliments<sup>a</sup> to my brother-in-law, and if you see any roses in the garden, ask him for some.

44. I am going immediately.

[I go] 20

### QUESTIONS.

Come andrete in città domani? 2.—Quanto vi ha fatto pagare l'albergatore per una stanza? 5.—Quando avete scritto a vostro fratello?—Vi ha egli risposto?—Si è vostra zia fatta prender la misura d'una mantiglia o d'un vestito? 14.—Come se lo farà fare? 16.—Vi vanno bene le scarpe? 19.—Dove è la penna?—Ne avete una da prestarmi?—Dove siete?—Dove sono i vostri guanti?—Quanti cavalli avete? 42.—Avete detto al servo di venire da me? 6.—Che disse una volta il figlio al padre?<sup>b</sup>—Che presente fece il padre al figlio?—Come trovò le pere il figlio quando aperse la cassa?

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

There are in Italian six possessive pronouns, viz. :—

<i>mio</i> , my.	<i>nostro</i> , our.
<i>tuo</i> , thy.	<i>vostro</i> , your.
<i>suo</i> , his, her, its.	<i>loro</i> , their.

RULE I.—These pronouns are generally preceded by the definite article. They are used also as adjectives, and vary according to gender and number, as follows :—

Singular.		Plural.		As Adj.	As Subst.
Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.		
<i>il mio</i> ,	<i>la mia</i> ,	<i>i miei</i> ,	<i>le mie</i> ,	my,	mine.
<i>il tuo</i> ,	<i>la tua</i> ,	<i>i tuoi</i> <sup>c</sup> ,	<i>le tue</i> ,	thy,	thine.
<i>il suo</i> ,	<i>la sua</i> ,	<i>i suoi</i> <sup>c</sup> ,	<i>le sue</i> ,	{ his, her,	his, hers,
				{ its.	its.
<i>il nostro</i> ,	<i>la nostra</i> ,	<i>i nostri</i> ,	<i>le nostre</i> ,	our,	ours.
<i>il vostro</i> ,	<i>la vostra</i> ,	<i>i vostri</i> ,	<i>le vostre</i> ,	your,	yours.
<i>il loro</i> ,	<i>la loro</i> ,	<i>i loro</i> ,	<i>le loro</i> ,	their,	theirs.

RULE II.—The above pronouns agree in person with

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 4, p. 189.

<sup>b</sup> See Read. Ex., p. 194.

<sup>c</sup> The poets often use *tui* and *sui* for the sake of rhyme, instead of *tuoi* and *suoi*.

<sup>d</sup> Observe that *loro* is invariable.

the *possessor*, and in gender and number with the thing possessed; as,

*Ho la sua penna*, I have his pen.

*Ho il suo libro*, I have her book.

*Abbiamo le sue carte*, we have her papers.

*Abbiamo i suoi libri*, we have his books.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. Possessive pronouns are used without the article—

(i.) In addressing a person and in exclamations; as,

*Come state, amico mio?* how do you do, my friend?

*Oh, miei figli, che fate?* oh, my sons, what are you doing?

(ii.) Generally when immediately followed in the singular by the words—

<i>Signoria</i>	{ lordship, ladyship.	<i>nipote</i> , nephew, niece. <i>figlio, figlia</i> , son, daughter.
<i>Eccellenza</i> , excellency.		<i>fratello, sorella</i> , brother, sister.
<i>Eminenza</i> , eminence.		<i>cognato</i> , brother-in-law.
<i>Altezza</i> , highness.		<i>cognata</i> , sister-in-law.
<i>Maestà</i> , majesty.		<i>cugino, cugina</i> , cousin.
<i>Santità</i> , holiness.		<i>nonno</i> , grandfather.
<i>marito</i> , husband.		<i>nonna</i> , grandmother.
<i>moglie</i> , wife.		<i>suocero, suocera</i> , father-in-law, mother-in-law.
<i>padre</i> , father.		
<i>madre</i> , mother.		<i>genero, nuora</i> , son-in-law, daughter-in-law.
<i>zio, zia</i> , uncle, aunt.		

**Ex.:** *Favellando col Re diremo, vostra Maestà.* (CAS.)  
Speaking with the king, we will say, Your Majesty.

*Tristo chi abbandona suo padre.* (SEGN.)  
Wicked the man who abandons his father.

N.B.—The article (as well as the pronoun) must be used with any word in the above list—

In the plural, or in a diminutive form.

When the pronoun follows the noun; or is preceded by *signor*, *Mr.*, *signora*, *Mrs.*, *signorina*, *Miss*, or by an adjective.

Also when, instead of the above nouns of relations, the corresponding words—*sposo*, *sposa*, bridegroom, bride; *consorte*, husband or wife; *genitore*, *genitrice*, father, mother; *germano*, *ger-*



*mana*, brother, sister; *avo* or *avolo*, grandfather; *ava* or *avola*, grandmother—are used.

- Ex.:** *Sono le Signorie<sup>a</sup> vostre pronte?*  
Are your Ladyships ready?  
*È in casa il vostro fratellino?*  
Is your little brother at home?  
*È in casa il fratello vostro?*  
Is your brother at home?  
*Come sta il suo consorte?*  
How is your husband?  
*Come sta la vostra signora madre?*  
How is your mother?  
*Dov' è la vostra bella sorella?*  
Where is your pretty sister?  
*Il mio genitore è morto.*  
My father is dead.

(iii.) When the pronoun precedes a substantive used in apposition with a former noun.

- Ex.:** *Villani scrisse la storia di Firenze, sua patria.*  
Villani wrote the history of Florence, his native city  
*L' ho detto a Carlo, mio servitore.*  
I have told it to Charles, my servant.

(iv.) Generally in answering a question.

- Ex.:** *Di chi è questo libro? È mio<sup>b</sup>.*  
Whose book is this? It is mine.

(v.) When relating to a noun before mentioned, or followed by a noun taken in an indefinite sense.

- Ex.:** *Questo cavallo è mio, this horse is mine.*  
*Spero di ricevere presto vostre lettere.*  
I hope to receive a letter from you soon.

(vi.) In the following idiomatic expressions:—

1. *È persona di mia conoscenza,* He is well known to me.
2. *Salutate da parte mia,* Give my compliments to  
*or in nome mio,* him.
3. *Sta in vostro potere,* It is in your power.
4. *Per mio avviso,* In my opinion.
5. *Vostro danno se non venite,* So much the worse for you  
if you do not come.

<sup>a</sup> Possessive pronouns may precede or follow the noun in Italian; in the plural, however, when referring to titles, they must follow the noun.

<sup>b</sup> *È* *il mio* may be used, but then the expression becomes emphatic, or implies contrast; as, *Non è il mio, è il vostro.*

- |   |   |                                |
|---|---|--------------------------------|
| 6. <i>Lo farò suo malgrado,</i>             | } | I shall do it in spite of him. |
| 7. <i>Lo farò a suo dispetto,</i>           |   |                                |
| 8. <i>Parlerò io con vostra li-</i>         | } | I shall speak with your per-   |
| <i>cenza, or con vostra</i>                 |   |                                |
| <i>grazia,</i>                              |   | mission.                       |
| 9. <i>Questo mio<sup>a</sup> cappello è</i> |   | This hat of mine is useless.   |
| <i>inutile,</i>                             |   |                                |
| 10. <i>Vado a casa mia,</i>                 |   | I go to my own house.          |
| 11. <i>Egli sta in casa sua,</i>            |   | He stays in his own house.     |
| 12. <i>Vado io in sua vece,</i>             |   | I am going in his stead.       |
| 13. <i>Casa mia è casa vostra,</i>          |   | Dispose of my house as if      |
|   |   | it were your own.              |
| 14. <i>In vita mia,</i>                     |   | In all my life.                |
| 15. <i>Farò a modo suo,</i>                 |   | I shall do as he pleases.      |
| 16. <i>Fate a modo mio,</i>                 |   | Do as I tell you.              |
| 17. <i>È di mio gusto,</i>                  |   | It is to my taste.             |
| 18. <i>È colpa vostra,</i>                  |   | It is your fault.              |
| 19. <i>Fa tutto a suo capriccio,</i>        |   | He does everything ac-         |
| <i>a sua voglia or a suo</i>                |   | cording to his whim, his       |
| <i>piacere, a suo senno, a</i>              |   | will, his mind, his fancy,     |
| <i>suo talento, a suo agio</i>              |   | at his leisure or conve-       |
| <i>or comodo, di sua testa,</i>             |   | nience, his imagination,       |
| <i>per amor mio,</i>                        |   | for my sake.                   |
| 20. <i>Sono a vostra disposizione,</i>      |   | I am at your disposition.      |
| 21. <i>Comprate a conto mio,</i>            |   | Buy on my account.             |

N.B.—The following expressions admit of a double form :—

- |  |   |                          |
|--|---|--------------------------|
| <i>Un mio amico me lo disse,</i>       | } | A friend of mine told it |
| <i>Uno dei miei amici me lo disse,</i> |   |                          |
|  |   | to me.                   |
| <i>Un suo servitore v' andò,</i>       | } | One of his servants went |
| <i>Uno dei suoi servitori v' andò,</i> |   |                          |
|  |   | there.                   |
| <i>Molti miei amici v' erano,</i>      | } | Many of my friends were  |
| <i>Molti dei miei amici v' erano,</i>  |   |                          |
|  |   | there.                   |
| <i>Alcuni</i>                          | } | Several friends of       |
| <i>Alquanti</i>                        |   |                          |
| <i>Parecchi</i>                        |   |                          |
| <i>miei amici (or dei miei</i>         |   | mine are dead.           |
| <i>amici) son morti,</i>               |   |                          |

4. *Proprio<sup>b</sup> or propio, propria or propia,* answering to

<sup>a</sup> Observe that the possessive pronoun never takes the article, when immediately preceded by a demonstrative pronoun.

In answering a question in the affirmative, *proprio* is an adverb, and means 'exactly.'

the English word 'own,' are generally used with the article, and without the possessive pronoun before them.

Ex.: *Abbandonarono la propria città e le proprie case.* (Boc.)  
They abandoned their own city and their own houses.

5. *Mio, tuo, suo, nostro, vostro,\* loro*, with their feminines *mia, &c.*, and *miei, tuoi, suoi*, with their feminines *mie, &c.*, are often used substantively with the article before them, without reference to a noun previously mentioned. In these cases, a noun is understood; viz., in the singular masculine, *avere*, property, in the singular feminine, *lettera*, letter; and in the plural masculine, *compagni*, companions, *soldati*, soldiers, *parenti*, relations, or *concittadini*, countrymen, &c.; in the plural feminine, *lettere*, letters, *grazie*, thanks, &c.

Ex.: *Spendo il mio in metter tavola.* (Boc.)  
I spend my *wealth* in keeping open table.  
*Uscirono dalla città con molti dei suoi.* (DAV.)  
They went out of the city with many of his *soldiers*.  
*Ricevo la sua graziosissima dei 12.* (LEOP.)  
I have just received your very *kind letter* of the 12th.

6. When the pronoun refers to an object not belonging to the nominative, *di lui* and *di lei* must be used instead of *suo, sua, suoi, sue*, to avoid ambiguity.

Ex.: *Tito ama Cesare e i figli di lui* (or, *i di lui figli*).  
Titus loves Cæsar and *his* children (meaning Cæsar's children).  
*Sono di lei servo*, I am *her* servant.

7. In Italian, the possessive pronoun is left out, and the definite article substituted for it, when the noun which follows refers to the subject of the sentence.<sup>b</sup>

Ex.: *Il giovane udendo le parole della madre.* (Boc.)  
The youth hearing the words of *his* mother.

8. The dative personal pronoun is substituted for the possessive with nouns which refer either to the members of the body, or any part of the dress.

\* In familiar style, *nostro* and *vostro* are used to denote the person who remains in one's house to dine; as,  
*Per oggi vi contenterete ch' ella sia nostra.*

For to-day you will be content that she should dine with us.

<sup>b</sup> Note *i*, p. 17.

Ex.: *Ambo le mani per dolor mi morsi.* (DAN.)  
I bit both *my* hands for grief.

*Squarciossi i panni e si percosse il vis* (ARI.)  
She tore *her* clothes and struck *her* face.

9. In old writers and poets, the pronouns *mio, mia; tuo, tua; suo, sua*, are occasionally found changed into *mo, ma; to, ta; so, sa*, and suffixed to the words *fratello*, brother, *sorella* or *suora*, sister, *moglie*, wife, *signore*, master.

Ex.: *Sarei udito da fratello s' io l' aprissi.* (Boc.)  
I should be heard by *my* brother if I opened it.

*Allora disse la suorsa alla reina.* (FIOR.)  
Then said *his* sister to the queen.

*Ragazzo aspettato da signorso.* (DAN.)  
A boy expected by *his* master.

### MODES OF ADDRESS<sup>a</sup>.

In Italian there are three ways of addressing a person; viz.,

In the 2nd person singular, *tu*, thou, which is named,  
*dar del tu*, to use *thou*.

„ 2nd person plural, *voi*, you, which is named,  
*dar del voi*, to use *you*.

„ 3rd person singular feminine, *ella* or *lei*, named,  
*dar del lei*, to use *she*.

1. *Tu*, thou, is employed in cases of the greatest intimacy and nearest connection; in speaking to children; in authoritative and elevated style; by way of anger or scorn; and in poetry.

Ex.: *Dove sei tu?* or *dove sei?* where art thou?

2. *Voi*, you, is employed when speaking in a familiar way, and towards servants or dependants. It is usual also in commerce.

Ex.: *Dove siete andato?* where have you gone?

3. *Ella* or *lei*,<sup>b</sup> representing *vostra signoria*,<sup>c</sup> or *la*

<sup>a</sup> Note g, p. 16.

<sup>b</sup> Obs. 1, p. 192.

<sup>c</sup> For *vostra signoria* we may write the initials only, *V.S.* It is often contracted into *vossignoria*.

*signoria vostra*, your lordship, or your ladyship, *vostra maestà*, your majesty, &c., is used towards persons superior in rank, age, or office to the speaker, and also as a matter of politeness in speaking to a gentleman or lady with whom the speaker is not on terms of intimacy.

In this mode of address, the speech is supposed to be directed, not to the person spoken to, but to the title *vostra signoria*, represented by *ella*. This title being feminine, any adjective or past participle qualifying it must be likewise feminine. The possessive pronouns referring to the subject *ella*, must also be in the third person ; as,

*È ella stata in Francia?* have you been in France?  
literally, has she been in France?

*Come sta ella?* or *come sta?* how do you do?  
literally, how does she do?

*È contenta del suo maestro?*  
are you satisfied with your master?  
literally, is she satisfied with her master?

4. The same form of address is used in the 3rd person plural feminine, when speaking to more than one person, with *elleno* or *loro*, which represent *le signorie vostre*, your lordships, or your ladyships ; or *loro signori*, *loro signore*, you gentlemen, you ladies ; as,

*Come stanno elleno?* how do you do?  
literally, how do they do?

N.B.—In order to acquire a facility in employing the polite mode of address in the 3rd person singular feminine, *ella*, the pupil should take up the former translation exercises in this book one by one, and turn them from the 2nd person plural into the 3rd singular feminine, taking care to commit again to memory the verb or verbs which precede each exercise. This will afford an opportunity for reviewing all that has been done, and will increase the pupil's facility in employing the verbs.

The success of the pupil in mastering the language of Italian conversation will depend very much on the strict application of the above direction.

We subjoin a Model for the 1st Translation Exercise (See p. 16):—

ENGLISH.	DANDO DEL VOI. <sup>a</sup>	DANDO DEL LEI. <sup>b</sup>
1. Are you a native of Italy?	1. <i>Siete italiano (or italiana)?</i>	1. <i>È italiano (or italiana)?</i>
3. Of what country is your uncle?	3. <i>Di che paese è vostro zio?</i>	3. <i>Di che paese è suo zio?</i>
5. How long have you been in Italy?	5. <i>È un pezzo che siete in Italia?</i>	5. <i>È un pezzo che è in Italia?</i>
7. Where were you two years ago?	7. <i>Dov' eravate due anni sono?</i>	7. <i>Dov' era due anni sono?</i>
9. Were you in that country a long time?	9. <i>Siete stato in quel paese un pezzo?</i>	9. <i>È stata in quel paese un pezzo?</i>
14. Is it true that your parents are in the country?	14. <i>È vero che i vostri genitori sono in campagna?</i>	14. <i>È vero che i suoi genitori sono in campagna?</i>

### READING EXERCISE.

*Al Conte Leonardo Trissino.*

Recanati, 26 gennaio, 1821.

Veneratissimo<sup>c</sup> Signor Conte,

Ricevo la sua<sup>d</sup> graziosissima dei 12. Le mie<sup>d</sup> de' 13 e 23 di ottobre che rispondevano alle sue<sup>d</sup> pregiatissime de' 6 e dell' ultimo di settembre non so se le sieno state recapitate. Ma V.S.<sup>e</sup> mi contrista dicendo che non mi scrive frequentemente per non darmi noia. S' Ella non mi creda incapace di ogni retto giudizio e gusto<sup>f</sup>, non dee pensare ch' io non desideri il com-

<sup>a</sup> In the above Model, those sentences of the Exercise which require no change have of course been left out.

<sup>b</sup> In some parts of Italy the above mode of address is seldom used; but in Florence, which is the capital of Italy, the polite way, viz. *ella*, is constantly employed in addressing a lady or a gentleman with whom the speaker is not intimately acquainted. It will be unnecessary for the pupil to practise the other way of address, *tu*, thou, as a foreigner has very seldom occasion to employ it.

<sup>c</sup> When we write to a friend or a relation, the forms used in letters are—*caro amico*, dear friend, or *caro padre*, dear father; but in writing to some person superior in rank, age, or office, several other forms are used. (See Note *b*, p. 165.)

<sup>d</sup> Obs. 5, p. 202.

Note *c*, p. 203.

<sup>e</sup> Rule I<sup>II</sup>., p. 157.

mercio delle sue<sup>a</sup> lettere quanto si possa dire. Sebbene le obbligazioni che ho con V.S. sono già grandissime, tuttavia saranno maggiori quanto<sup>b</sup> le sue<sup>a</sup> lettere saranno più frequenti. V.S. non mi dà notizia veruna della salute sua; spero che sia conforme al mio desiderio. Della mia non ho cagione di lamentarmi più dell' ordinario anzi forse alquanto<sup>c</sup> meno. I voti ch' io fo per la felicità di V.S. desidero che sieno adempiuti molto più di quello ch' io brami l' adempimento dei suoi benevoli desideri intorno alla felicità mia. E ringraziandola ed abbracciandola riverentemente coll' animo, resto suo

Devotissimo servitore ed amico,  
LEOPARDI.

## VOCABULARY.

welcome, <i>benvenuto</i> .	to have at heart, <i>premere di</i> .	brother-in-law, <i>congnato</i> .
kindness, <i>bontà</i> .	welfare, <i>felicità</i> .	lately, <i>ultimamente</i> .
noise, <i>romore</i> .	kind, <i>cortese</i> .	to squander away, <i>scialacquare</i> .
drum, <i>tamburo</i> .	box, <i>scatola</i> .	to support, <i>mantenere</i> .
to be surprised, <i>maravigliarsi</i> .	to mistake, <i>sbagliare</i> .	to mind, <i>badare</i> .
to enquire after, <i>domandare di</i> .	to leave in charge of, <i>lasciare in consegna</i> .	to walk, <i>camminare</i> .
family, <i>famiglia</i> .	a.	to hurt, <i>far male a</i> .

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

[Dialogue between two Gentlemen addressing each other in the 3rd person singular feminine, *ella*. (See 3, p. 203.)]

1. Oh! welcome, my dear Mr.<sup>d</sup> D.; give me your<sup>e</sup> hand; I am glad to see you. 2. I am obliged to you for your kindness. 3. How does your wife do? [of] [stand]  
4. Very well, thank you; she told me to give you her compliments.<sup>f</sup> 5. And your little daughter,<sup>g</sup> how is [stands]  
(she)? 6. She is very well also. 7. And your little

<sup>a</sup> Rule I., p. 198.

<sup>b</sup> Obs. 1, p. 161.

<sup>c</sup> Somewhat.

<sup>d</sup> Excep. 1 to Rule VI., p. 149.

<sup>e</sup> Obs. 7, p. 202.

<sup>f</sup> No. 2, p. 200.

<sup>g</sup> N.B., p. 199.

son, does he continue to make a great noise with his  
[does he<sup>a</sup> always make]

drum? 8. Yes, as usual. 9. Do not be surprised  
*come il solito*

if I inquire after all your family, because I have your  
welfare and that of all your people<sup>b</sup> much at heart.<sup>c</sup>  
*di quella*

10. You are very kind indeed. 11. Have you taken  
my trunk with you? 12. Your trunk will arrive to-  
gether with mine. I have left all my boxes at the  
[to]

railway station in charge of Joseph, my servant. Here  
are your keys. 13. Thank you; are these mine?  
*queste*

14. Oh, no! wait a moment; I have given you the  
[I have mistaken  
wrong keys. Those are mine; here are yours. 15. Yes,  
keys] *Quelle*

you are right. Have you heard from your  
[Have you received news]

brother-in-law lately? 16. Yes, he has squandered  
away all his property<sup>b</sup>; and now he does not know how  
to support his wife and children. 17. I am sorry to  
hear it. 18. But it is his fault<sup>d</sup>; he would never do as  
I told him.<sup>e</sup> Instead of listening (to) my advice, he  
did everything according to his own fancy<sup>f</sup>; and now  
he is reduced to this (condition). So much the worse  
*questo*

for him.<sup>g</sup> 19. I will go and see what my servant is  
doing. 20. I will put on my hat<sup>h</sup> and coat, and will

<sup>a</sup> Excep. 1, p. 184.

<sup>d</sup> No. 18, p. 201.

<sup>g</sup> No. 5, p. 201.

<sup>b</sup> Obs. 5, p. 202.

<sup>e</sup> No. 16, p. 201.

Obs. 8, p. 202.

<sup>c</sup> Note *d.*, p. 86.

<sup>f</sup> No. 19, p. 201.



go<sup>a</sup> with you ; but mind, I cannot walk fast, I have a  
*presto*  
 boot that hurts my foot<sup>b</sup>: 21. Oh, here is my servant ;  
 we need not go out. 22. You will dine  
 [it is not necessary that we go out]  
 with us<sup>c</sup> to-day.

## QUESTIONS.

Come sta Ella?—Ha salutato sua sorella da parte mia? 4.—A chi lascerà in consegna il bagaglio quando arriverà a Parigi? 12.—Andò la Signorina B. al teatro col fratello o colla madre?—Ha sbagliato via nell' andare dalla Signora D.?—Come stanno i suoi? 9.—A quali lettere rispose il Leopardi il 26 gennaio, 1821?—Come finisce la lettera del Leopardi?—Come comincia la lettera?

N.B.—The pupil should put the questions following former Exercises to the master, addressing him with *Ella*. (See N.B., p. 204.)

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE I.—Demonstrative pronouns cannot be preceded by any article.

Some demonstrative pronouns are employed adjectively both for persons and things, and substantively for things only. Others can only be used substantively for persons.

*Demonstrative pronouns used adjectively and substantively for things.*

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.	
<i>questo</i>	<i>questa</i> <sup>d</sup>	this.	<i>questi</i>	<i>queste</i>	these.
<i>cotesto</i>	<i>cotesta</i>	} that.	<i>cotesti</i>	<i>coteste</i>	} those.
<i>quello</i>	<i>quella</i>		<i>quelli</i>	<i>quelle</i>	

<sup>a</sup> Note c, p. 121.

<sup>b</sup> Obs. 8, p. 202.

<sup>c</sup> Note a, p. 202.

<sup>d</sup> The poets use *esto*, *esta*, &c., for *questo*, *questa*, &c.; as,  
*D' esto secolo gli amici* (BET.), the friends of this century.

RULE II.—*Questo, questa, &c.*, are used to point out objects near the speaker ; as,

*Questo cappello è mio*, this hat is mine.

*Con queste penne non posso scrivere*, I cannot write with these pens.

RULE III.—*Cotesto, cotesta,\* &c.*, are employed to denote objects near the person addressed ; as,

*Prendete questo libro, e portatemi cotesto.*

Take this book, and bring me that one (meaning that near you).

RULE IV.—*Quello, quella, &c.*, are used to point out objects distant both from the speaker and the person addressed ; as,

*Andatemi a prendere quello specchio*, go and fetch me that looking-glass (meaning the looking-glass distant alike from you and me).

N.B.—The two last rules are disregarded in conversation, *quello* being used to indicate both the object near the person spoken to, and the one distant both from the speaker and the person to whom he speaks.

#### ORTHOGRAPHY OF *Quello, &c.*

*Quello, quelli* are used before *s* followed by a consonant, or *z*, and at the end of the sentence. Before any other consonants, *quel* for the singular, and *quei* for the plural, must be employed ; and before vowels *quell'* and *quegli* ; as,

##### Singular.

*Quello specchio è rotto.*

That looking - glass is broken.

*Quell' amico mio.*

That friend of mine.

*Quel libro è mio.*

That book is mine.

##### Plural.

*Quegli specchi sono rotti.*

Those looking - glasses are broken.

*Quegli amici miei.*

Those friends of mine.

*Quei libri sono miei.*

Those books are mine.

---

\* *Cotesto, cotesta*, are frequently spelt *codesto, codesta, &c.*

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Questo* and *quello* are used substantively for 'this thing' and 'that thing,' or 'this one' and 'that one'; as,  
*Fate questo, non fate quello*, do this thing, do not do that.

2. *Ciò* is a word which means the same as *questo* and *quello*; but it is invariable, and can only be used substantively; as,

*Chi ha fatto ciò?* who has done this (or that) thing?

3. *Questo* is found used alone, in some peculiar sentences, with a noun understood; as,

*In questo (momento understood) ella sopravvenne.*

At this (moment) she came up.

*Io son venuto a questo (fine, stato).*

I am come to this (end, condition).

4. *Quello* and *questo* are used as relative pronouns in the sense of 'the former' and 'the latter,' or 'the one' and 'the other'; as,

*Scegli fra la fortuna e la virtù; quella può farti ricco, questa solo felice.*

Choose between fortune and virtue; the former can make thee rich, the latter alone happy.

*Demonstrative pronouns, used substantively for persons only.*

Singular.		Plural.	
Masc.	Fem.	Masc. & Fem.	
<i>questi</i> } this man.	<i>costei</i> , this woman.	<i>costoro</i> { these men.	
<i>costui</i> }			{ these women.
<i>cotesti</i> } that man.	<i>cotestei</i> , that woman.	<i>cotestoro</i> { those men.	
<i>cotestui</i> }			{ those women.
<i>quegli</i> or <i>quei</i> } that man.	<i>colei</i> , that woman.	<i>coloro</i> { those men,	
or <i>que'</i> }			{ those women.
<i>colui</i>			

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. Instead of the pronouns under II., we may use, *questo* *signore*, *questo uomo*, this gentleman, this man; *quella*

*signora, quella donna*, that lady, that woman, &c. (See also Rules 1, 2, 3, p. 191.)

2. *Quegli* or *quei* or *que'*, and *questi*, may also be used for 'the former' and 'the latter' (see Obs. 4, p. 210); as,  
*Dante e Milton furono due grandi poeti: quegli fu italiano e questi inglese.*

Dante and Milton were two great poets: the former was an Italian and the latter an Englishman.

3. In conversation, *costui, colui, costei, costoro, coloro*, convey a meaning of contempt; as, *Chi è costui*, who is this fellow? In poetry, however, they are used in the sense of highest admiration. Thus Dante, speaking of Virgil, says, *Quando io vidi costui nel gran diserto*, when I saw this man in the great forest.

4. The above pronouns are found applied to anything, when the object is personified. Thus Dante, speaking of a lion, says, *Questi pareva che contra me venesse*, this lion seemed coming to meet me.

#### READING EXERCISE.

Leggesi del Re Currado che, quando era garzone, si<sup>a</sup> avea in compagnia dodici garzoni di sua etade. Quando lo<sup>b</sup> Re Currado fallava, li<sup>c</sup> maestri che gli erano dati a guardia non lo batteano, ma batteano questi garzoni suoi compagni<sup>d</sup>. E que<sup>e</sup> dicea: Perchè battete voi costoro? Rispondeano li maestri: Per li falli tuoi. E que' dicea: Perchè non battete voi me, chè<sup>e</sup> mia è la colpa? E li maestri rispondeano: Perchè tu se' nostro Signore. Ma noi battiamo costoro<sup>e</sup> per te. Onde<sup>b</sup> assai ti dee dolore se tu hai gentil cuore, ch' altri porti pena delle tue colpe. E perciò si dice che lo re Currado si guardava molto di fallire per la pietà di coloro<sup>e</sup>. (NOVELLINO, 13th century.)

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 1, p. 188.      <sup>b</sup> Excep. 3, p. 146.      <sup>c</sup> Excep. 2, p. 146.

<sup>d</sup> The above mode of punishment existed in England even at the time of King James I., it was called the "whipping-boy."

<sup>e</sup> Obs. 2, above.

<sup>f</sup> Chè, with the è accented, means 'because.'

<sup>g</sup> See p. 210.

<sup>h</sup> So that.

## VOCABULARY.

jeweller, <i>gioielliere</i> .	a piece of twenty	necklace, <i>collana</i> .
ring, <i>anello</i> .	francs, <i>un napo-</i>	shop, <i>bottega</i> .
window (of a shop), <i>vetrina</i> .	<i>leone d'oro</i> .	cheap, <i>a buon mercato</i> .
to set, <i>montare</i> .	water, <i>acqua</i> .	article, <i>articolo</i> .
stone, <i>pietra</i> .	dear, <i>caro</i> .	customer, <i>avventore</i> .
to cost, to be worth, <i>valere</i> .	plain, <i>semplice</i> .	chain, <i>catena</i> .
diamond, <i>diamante</i> (m.)	jewel, <i>gioiello</i> .	to deceive, <i>ingannare</i> .
	to buy, <i>comprare</i> .	earring, <i>orecchino</i> .
	bracelet, <i>braccialetto</i> .	brooch, <i>spillone</i> (m.)

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

[Dialogue between a lady and a jeweller.]

N.B.—The lady addresses in the 2nd person plural, and the jeweller in the 3rd person singular.

1. I should like to see some of those rings — you  
(conditional of *colere*)                      *alcuni*                      *che*  
have in your window. 2. Yes, madam; would you like  
one of these rings set in precious stones? They are now  
in fashion. 3. What is the price of this one<sup>a</sup>? 4. That  
[How much costs]  
one is worth forty twenty-franc pieces; as you see, the  
diamond is of the finest water. 5. It is too dear. Show  
me — one of those plain (ones). 6. These are  
[of them]  
each<sup>3</sup> worth ten<sup>1</sup> twenty-franc pieces<sup>2</sup>. 7. You sell  
[the one]  
your jewels very dear. I once bought a bracelet and a  
necklace in that shop opposite, and they did not charge  
*dirimpetto*  
me so much. 8. Those who sell their things cheap  
*che*  
cannot give good articles to their customers. Where  
did you buy that watch and that chain? 9. The man<sup>b</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 1, p. 210.

<sup>b</sup> Obs. 3, p. 211.

who sold me these<sup>a</sup> has deceived me. This<sup>a</sup> watch does *che* not go. 10. You see, then, madam, that it is as I tell *dunque* *che* you. Which will you have of these two? 11. I shall *Quale* take this one. 12. Would you like a pair of those earrings, or one of these brooches? 13. Not to-day, thank you.

## QUESTIONS.

Dove ha comprato il suo oriuolo? 7.—Quanto vale il suo spillone? 12.—L'<sup>b</sup>ha pagata cara la sua catena? 8.—Che regalo<sup>c</sup> farà a sua sorella?—Come farà montare il suo braccialetto? 2.—Quanti garzoni avea in compagnia il Re Currado?—Chi battevano i maestri quando il re fallava?—Che faceva il Re Currado per la pietà dei garzoni che aveva in compagnia?

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The relative pronouns are *che*, *cui*, *il quale*,<sup>d</sup> who, that, which; and all of them are applied both to persons and things. They are declined as follows:—

		SINGULAR.		
	M. & F.	Masc.	Fem.	
Nom.	<i>che</i> ,	<i>il quale</i> ,	<i>la quale</i> ,	who, that, which.
Gen.	<i>di cui</i> ,	<i>del quale</i> ,	<i>della quale</i> ,	of whom, that, which.
Dat.	<i>a cui</i> ,	<i>al quale</i> ,	<i>alla quale</i> ,	to whom, that, which.
Acc.	<i>che</i> , <i>cui</i> ,	<i>il quale</i> ,	<i>la quale</i> ,	whom, that, which.
	<i>da cui</i> ,	<i>dal quale</i> ,	<i>dalla quale</i> ,	from whom, that, which.
Abl.	<i>in</i> } <i>cui</i> ,	<i>nel</i> }	<i>quale</i> ,	&c.
	<i>per</i> }	<i>pel</i> }		
	<i>con</i> }	<i>col</i> }		
	&c.	&c.		
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	<i>che</i> ,	<i>i quali</i> ,	<i>le quali</i> ,	who, that, which.
Gen.	<i>di cui</i> ,	<i>dei quali</i> ,	<i>delle quali</i> ,	of whom, that, which.
Dat.	<i>a cui</i> ,	<i>ai quali</i> ,	<i>alle quali</i> ,	to whom, that, which.
Acc.	<i>che</i> , <i>cui</i> ,	<i>i quali</i> ,	<i>le quali</i> ,	whom, that, which.
Abl.	<i>da cui</i> ,	<i>dai quali</i> ,	<i>dalle quali</i> ,	from whom, that, which.
	&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.

<sup>a</sup> Rule III., p. 209.<sup>c</sup> Present.<sup>b</sup> Obs. 1, p. 188.<sup>d</sup> See p. 9.

**RULE I.**—*Che* is invariable, and is chiefly used in the nominative and accusative; but it is sometimes found used in other cases, instead of *cui*, when it relates to things.

**Ex.:** *La materia di che parlate.* (DAV.)  
The subject you are speaking of.

**N.B.**—The relative pronoun must always be expressed in Italian, even where it is understood in English; as,

*La lettera che scrivo,* the letter I write.

**RULE II.**—*Cui* is never employed in the nominative, and very seldom in the accusative. In the genitive and dative cases, when it precedes the noun to which it relates, it is generally used without the preposition, and often stands between the article and the noun.

**Ex.:** *Si scontrò in un gentiluomo, il cui nome era Torello.* (Boc.)  
He met a gentleman whose name was Torello.

*Voi cui fortuna ha posto il freno.* (PET.)  
You on whom fortune has placed the bridle.

**RULE III.**—*Quale*, as a relative pronoun, is always preceded by the definite article. It is used in all cases, and, as it agrees with the noun to which it relates, ought to be employed instead of *che* or *cui* when necessary for the clearness of the sentence.

**Ex.:** *Filomena la quale discretissima era.* (Boc.)  
Filomena who was very prudent.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON *Onde*, *Dove* OR *Ove*, *Donde*.

1. *Onde* is a word which includes within itself the preposition and the pronoun, and it has the same sense as that of *del quale*, *di cui*, *dalla quale*, *da cui*, *in cui*, *per cui*, *con cui*, relating to things.

**Ex.:** *Di lor progenie discese il buon e cortese Re Artù, onde i romanzi brettoni fanno menzione.* (VIL.)  
Of their lineage descended the good and courteous King Arthur, of whom the British romances make mention.

2. *Dove* or *ove* may be used for *a cui*, *da cui*, *per cui*, and *donde* for *da cui*, when the antecedent denotes place.

**Ex.:** *L'ellera se non avesse un muro dove attenersi e donde sugar l'alimento cadrebbe a terra.* (BART.)  
If ivy had not a wall to which to cling, and whence to draw nutriment, it would fall to the ground.

3. *Onde* and *donde* are also adverbs, and mean 'whence,' or 'from where'; as, *Donde venite?* whence do you come? *Onde* means also 'wherewith'; as, *Ho molti debiti, e non ho onde soddisfarli*, I have many debts, and I have not wherewith to pay them.

#### VARIOUS MEANINGS OF THE WORDS *Che* AND *Quale*.

1. *Che*, used substantively with or without the definite article before it, means, '*which thing*.'

Ex.: *Convien che i dotti siano modesti, il che forma la loro maggior gloria.*

It is necessary that learned men should be modest, *a thing which* forms their greatest glory.

*Bisogna esser docili, senza che non avrem pace.*

We must be obedient, without *which* we shall have no peace.

2. *Che*, used substantively with the indefinite article *un*, means, '*something*.'

Ex.: *Mi sento un non so che.*

I feel a '*something*,' I know not what.

3. *Che*, preceded by the demonstrative pronoun *quello* or *quel*, or *ciò*, is used to render 'that' or 'what' in the sense of 'that which.' (See Note, p. 17.)

4. *Che*, or *di cui*, *del quale*, *a cui*, &c., preceded by the demonstrative pronoun *quello* or *quella*, *colui* or *colei*, is used to render 'the one who,' 'which,' or 'that'; 'the one of whom,' or 'to whom,' 'which,' &c.

Ex.: *Che libro volete dire? Quello che mi regalaste.*

What book do you mean? The one that you gave me.

*Parlo di quella a cui diedi un fiore.*

I speak of the one to whom I gave a flower.

5. *Che* has also the meaning of *in cui* or *nel quale*, '*in which*.'

Ex.: *Mi trovai in una selva oscura che la diritta via era smarrita.* (DAN.)

I found myself in a dark forest in which the straight way was lost.



6. *Che*, with or without a grave accent on the *e*, is used in the sense of *perchè*, 'because' or 'for.'

Ex.: *Comandatemi, che io desidero servirvi.*  
Command me, *for* it is my wish to serve you.

7. *Che*, when coming after a verb conjugated negatively, means 'nothing' or 'but,' in the sense of 'only.'

Ex.: *Non avete che un cavallo*, you have but one horse.  
*Non ho che fare*, I have nothing to do.

8. *Chè*, with an accent on the *e*, is used as an interjection expressing denial; it may also be used as the interrogative 'why.'

Ex.: *Chè! non credete niente*, No! do not believe anything.  
*Chè non andate?* why do you not go?

9. *Che*, used to express comparison, means the same as the word 'than.' (See Rule IV., p. 163.)

10. *Che* is used as a conjunction in the sense of 'that,' and it is often expressed in Italian in cases where it is not necessary in English.

Ex.: *Credete che sia tardi?* Do you think it is late?  
*Spero che mi scriverete*, I hope you will write to me.

11. *Che*, when immediately preceded by the negative *non*, answers the purpose of the English conjunctions, 'much more,' 'much less,' 'as well as.'

Ex.: *Spero trovar pietà, non che perdono.* (PET.)  
I hope to find pity, as well as pardon.  
*Un volume non basterebbe, non che una lettera.* (BEN.)  
A volume would not be enough, much less a letter.

12. *Che* sometimes stands for 'as,' or 'when.'

Ex.: *Un giorno che veniva a visitarci.*  
One day as he was coming to visit us.

13. *Che* has the meaning of 'whether' in sentences like the following:—*Che veniate o no*, whether you come or no.

14. *Qual* or *quale* has sometimes the meaning of 'some,' and sometimes of 'such as,' or 'like.'

Ex.: *E qual lasciò ferito e qual ucciso.* (ARI.)  
And some he left wounded and some dead.  
*Quale i fioretti dal notturno gelo, &c.* (DAN.)  
Like the young flowers by the nightly frost, &c.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The interrogative pronouns are *chi?* who? *che?* what?<sup>a</sup> *quale?* pl. *quali?* which? as,

*Chi siete?* who are you?

*Di chi è la colpa?* whose<sup>b</sup> fault is it?

*Che volete?* what do you want?

*Quale<sup>c</sup> di queste penne è la vostra?*

Which of these pens is yours?

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Che*, as an interrogative, always means 'what'; *quale* may mean 'which,' 'what,' or 'who'; and *chi* has always the sense of 'who' or 'whom.'

2. *Che* and *quale* are used in an exclamatory way in the sense of 'what,' in which case no indefinite article is used in Italian<sup>d</sup>; as,

Ex.: *Che bella donna!* what a beautiful woman!

3. *Chi* is also used as a singular indefinite pronoun in the sense of 'he who,' 'she who,' 'the one who,' 'any person who,' 'some person who,' 'whoever,' 'whosoever.'

Ex.: *Chi va lontan dalla sua patria.* (ARI.)

He who goes far from his own country.

*Chi ha la sanità è ricco.* (PROVERB.)

Whoever enjoys health is rich.

*Nè sarà in Italia chi vi s' opponga.* (GUI.)

Nor will there be anyone in Italy who will oppose himself to it.

N.B.—'He who,' 'she who,' 'the man who,' 'the one

<sup>a</sup> *Che cosa* may be used to render 'what'; as,  
*Che cosa è sonno se non immagine di morte?*  
What is sleep but the image of death?

<sup>b</sup> Notice that the word 'whose' must be rendered in Italian by *di chi*, when it has an interrogative sense; and by *di cui* or *del quale* when used in a relative sense; as,

*Di chi son queste carte?* whose papers are these?

*Una donna la di cui virtù è celebre.*

A woman whose virtue is celebrated.

<sup>c</sup> *Quale* takes the definite article before it only when it is used as a relative pronoun.

<sup>d</sup> Rule V., p. 152.

who,' &c., may likewise be rendered in Italian by *colui* *che*, or *colei* *che*.

Ex.: *Vidi l'ombra di colui che fece per viltate il gran rifiuto.*  
(DAN.)

I saw the shade of him who through cowardice made  
the great denial.

See also 4, p. 215.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF THE WORDS  
*Che, Quale, Quali, Dove, and Onde.*

1. The relative pronoun *che*, when not referring to the word immediately preceding it, must have a comma before it.

Ex.: *Quegli non ama Dio, che si parte da' suoi comandamenti.*  
(S. GREG.)

He who does not keep the commandments does not love  
God.

2. *Che* is found in poetry spelt *c'* before the third person singular and plural of the present indicative of the verb *avere*,

Ex.: *Una palude fa c' ha nome Stige.* (DAN.)  
It makes a swamp which is named Styx.

3. *Quali*, plural of *quale*, before any letter except *s* followed by a consonant, may be spelt *quai* or *qua'*.

Ex.: *Alle qua' lettere io mi rimetto.* (CAS.)  
To which letters I refer.

4. *Dove* or *ove* and *onde* before vowels drop the final *e* and take an apostrophe; as, *Dov' eravate?* where were you? (See also Note c, p. 13, and Note g, p. 18.)

READING EXERCISE.

*A Giulia Lunga.*

Cara Giulia,

Ho veduto volentieri la tua lettera, per la quale<sup>a</sup> ti rallegrai meco del mio ritorno; e più volentieri vedrò te, se verrai quì, come scrivi, insieme con tuo marito; il quale<sup>a</sup> saluterai a nome mio. Madama Cecilia e la Morosina, le quali<sup>a</sup> ho salutate con la tua lettera, ti

• Rule III., p. 214.

risalutano. Elleno stanno bene, e ti aspettano con desiderio. Salutam<sup>a</sup> tuo cognato e tua<sup>b</sup> cognata; e venitevene<sup>c</sup> per questi bei tempi.

Agli 11 di marzo 1530, di Padova.

P. BEMBO.

### VOCABULARY.

intimate, <i>intimo</i> .	card, <i>biglietto di visita</i> .	paradise, <i>paradiso</i> .
countess, <i>contessa</i> .		to belong, <i>appartenere</i> .
to marry, <i>sposare</i>	to laugh, <i>ridere</i> .	lady, <i>signora</i> .
(active).	to mean, <i>voler dire</i> .	Venetian, <i>veneziano</i> .
gentleman, <i>signore</i> .	edition, <i>edizione</i> .	binding, <i>legatura</i> .

### TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

[Dialogue between two intimate friends. (See 1, p. 203.)]

1. Who knocks at the door? 2. It is I<sup>d</sup> who knock.  
3. Oh! come in, John; you know that I am always glad to see you. 4. Is it your sister who is playing (on) the harp? 5. No, it is the daughter of the countess whose<sup>e</sup> brother is going to marry my aunt. 6. Oh! the [will marry]

gentleman to whom I gave my card yesterday. 7. No, not the one<sup>f</sup> you gave your card to, but the gentleman who made us laugh. 8. I know whom you mean now. What a<sup>g</sup> beautiful edition of Milton's Paradise Lost you have here, Charles; to whom does it belong? 9. It belongs to the lady with whom we dined yesterday, and at whose<sup>e</sup> house I made your acquaintance. 10. You may as well say, the house I come from<sup>h</sup>, and in which  
*anche*

I live. This edition is better than the one that<sup>f</sup> I have at home. 11. Which do you mean? 12. The one<sup>f</sup> with the Venetian binding, which I showed you yesterday.

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 4, p. 189.

<sup>d</sup> Obs. 4, p. 192.

<sup>e</sup> Obs. 2, p. 217.

<sup>b</sup> Obs. 1 (ii.), p. 199.

<sup>c</sup> Note *b*, p. 217.

<sup>h</sup> Obs. 3, p. 215.

<sup>c</sup> Note *c*, p. 188.

<sup>f</sup> 4, p. 215.

## QUESTIONS.

A chi ha scritto stamane?—Donde<sup>a</sup> viene la sua serva?  
 —Chi sposò la sua amica? 5.—Crede che sia vero quel che dice suo fratello?—Può darmi l' indirizzo del signore la cui<sup>b</sup> figlia vidi ieri sera da lei?—Ha dato il suo biglietto di visita a quella signora che cantò od a quella che suonò l' arpa? 7.—Dove fece la conoscenza della signora che incontrai in casa sua? 9.—Di che si rallegrava Giulia Lunga in una sua lettera al Bembo.—Quale invito fa il Bembo a Giulia Lunga nella sua lettera degli 11 marzo 1530?

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

*Indefinite Pronouns* may be divided into four classes:—

- I. Those used substantively for *persons*.
- II.   "       "       substantively for *things*.
- III.   "       "       substantively for *persons and things*.
- IV.   "       "       adjectively for *persons and things*<sup>c</sup>.

## CLASS I.

RULE.—The indefinite pronouns used substantively for *persons* take no article before them.

Ex.: *Chi avrà misericordia di altrui, altri l' avrà di lui.*

Who has pity for another, others will have it for him.

N.B.—The word *altrui*, meaning 'property,' takes the article; as,

*Non toglier l' altrui.*

Do not take the property of others.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Altri* has no plural, is employed in the nominative and accusative cases only, and is sometimes used in the sense of 'some persons,' with the verb in the singular.

Ex.: *Altri cade, altri fugge, altri s' appiatta.* (ARI.)

Some fall, some flee, some crouch down.

2. In a familiar style, *altri* is used after *noi* and *voi*, as an expletive.

Ex.: *Noi altri fiorentini siamo ricchi.*

• *We Florentines are rich.*

*Voi altri siete pazzi, you are madmen.*

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 3, p. 215.

<sup>b</sup> Rule II., p. 214.

<sup>c</sup> See p. 10.

3. *Altrui* is used both for the singular and plural, has no nominative, and in the genitive and dative is often employed without a preposition.

Ex.: *Non fare altrui ciò che per te non vuoi.*

Do not do to others that which you do not wish for yourself.

4. *Chi*, like *altri*, is used for 'some,' with the verb in the singular.

Ex.: *A chi piace la chiesa, a chi la spada.* (ARI.)

Some prefer the church, some the army.

5. *Cui* is sometimes used for *chi*.

Ex.: *Chi a sè è rio, a cui può esser buono?* (CAS.)

Who is cruel to himself, to whom can he be good?

6. *Tutti* takes the verb in the plural.

Ex.: *Tutti lo dicono*, everybody says so.

7. *Chiunque*, *chicchessia*, and *chisivoglia* all mean the same; but *chiunque* is only used in the singular, whilst the two other pronouns have also the plural *chicchessiano* and *chisivogliano*. *Chicchessia* and *chisivoglia* are seldom used; but when employed they are followed by the conjunction *che*, and take the verb in the subjunctive, like *chiunque*\*. (See Note c, p. 70.)

8. For the different meanings of *si*, see Obs. 3, p. 49.

## CLASS II.

RULE.—Of the indefinite pronouns used substantively for *things*, *tutto*, *all*, *nulla* or *niente*, nothing, are found used with or without the article before them.

Ex.: *E quel savio gentil che tutto seppe.* (DAN.)

And that mild sage who knew all.

*Quel Dio che vede il tutto.* (DAV.)

That God who sees all.

*Tutto questo è un niente*, all this is nothing.

*Dio creò il mondo dal nulla.*

God created the world from nothing.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Nulla* and *niente* mean 'something,' 'anything,'

---

\* What has been said about *chiunque*, *chicchessia*, and *chisivoglia*, is applicable also to *chechè*, *chechessia*, *chechesivoglia*, indefinite pronouns used for things.

when they come after a verb not preceded by the negative *non*. (See Note e, p. 22.)

Ex.: *Volete niente?* do you want anything?  
*Direte nulla in mio favore?*  
 Will you say something in my favour?

2. *Nulla* and *niente*, when followed by an adjective, take the preposition *di*, and when followed by a verb, the preposition *da*.

Ex.: *Non avete niente di buono*, you have nothing good.  
*Non ho nulla da fare*, I have nothing to do.

### CLASS III.

RULE.—Of the indefinite pronouns used substantively for *persons and things*, *uno* is used in contrast with *altro*, takes the definite article, and can then also be employed in the plural.

Ex.: *Perfida l'una e l'altro è traditore.* (ARI.)  
 The one is perfidious, and the other a traitor.  
*Gli uni e gli altri son mille.* (TAS.)  
 literally, The ones and the others are a thousand.  
*Non conosco nè l'uno nè l'altro.*  
 I know neither the one nor the other.

### OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Altro* is used to render 'else.'

Ex.: *Datemi qualche cosa altro.*  
 Give me something else.  
*Non lo trovo in nessun altro luogo.*  
 I find him nowhere else.  
*La troverete in qualche altro luogo.*  
 You will find her somewhere else.

2. *Altro*, repeated in the same sentence, signifies 'one thing' and 'another thing.'

Ex.: *Altro è parlar di morte, altro è morire.* (MAF.)  
 It is one thing to talk of death, another thing to die.

3. *Altro* has often the meaning of 'something else,' 'anything else'; and when following a verb conjugated negatively, it means 'nothing else.'

Ex.: *Avete altro?* have you anything else?  
*Non ho altro*, I have nothing else.

4. *Per altro* signifies 'on the other hand,' 'however.'

Ex.: *È d' un temperamento collerico, per altro ha buon cuore.*  
He is of an irritable temper; however he has a good heart (is generous).

5. *Senz' altro* means 'undoubtedly.'

Ex.: *Egli verrà senz' altro*, he will come undoubtedly.

6. *Tutt' altro* has the signification of 'quite the contrary'; and *altro* is sometimes an interjection used in answering a question, and then means 'very.'

Ex.: *Siete tutt' altro di quel ch' eravate.*  
You are quite the contrary of what you were.

*È ricco il vostro amico? Altro!*  
Is your friend rich? Very!

7. *L' un l' altro* are used to express 'each other' or 'one another.' (See Note a, p. 46.)

#### CLASS IV.

RULE.—Of the indefinite pronouns used adjectively for *persons* and *things*, *stesso* or *medesimo*, self, only can take the article before them.

Ex.: *Egli fa sempre lo stesso sbaglio.*  
He always makes the same mistake.

#### OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Ogni*, every, *qualche*, some, and *qualunque*, any, are always followed by a singular noun; the word *Ognissanti*, All Saints' Day, and the nouns following cardinal numbers, excepted

Ex.: *Ogni beltà ha qualche neo*, every beauty has some fault.

2. *Tutto*, all, the whole,\* preceding a noun, is always followed by the definite article.

Ex.: *Tutto il mondo è sossopra*, the whole world is upside-down.  
*Tutte le donne sono angeli*, all women are angels.

N.B.—*Tutto*, used after the verb, and referring to the subject of the sentence, has no article.

Ex.: *Erano tutti uomini*, they were all men.

---

\* 'The whole,' taken substantively, is rendered by *il tutta*. (See Rule, p. 221.)



3. *Tutto* is often followed by the word *quanto*, and the expressions *tutto quanto* or *tutta quanta*, plural *tutti quanti* or *tutte quante*, are used to signify 'the whole without exception.'

Ex.: *Perirono tutti quanti*, all perished without exception.

4. *Tutti* and *tutte*, followed by a cardinal number, take the conjunction *e*.

Ex.: *Erano tutte e due morte*, both the women were dead.  
*Tutti e quattro perirono*, all four perished.

5. *Tutti* and *tutte* are not followed by any preposition in such expressions as the following:—

*tutte voi*, all of you; *tutti noi*, all of us.

6. *Tuttodì*, *tutto giorno*, are adverbial phrases which express 'continually.'

Ex.: *Queste cose si vedono tuttodì*.  
 These things are seen continually.

7. *Tutto tutto* or *tututto* is found used emphatically by writers for 'all.'

Ex.: *L' anima mia tututta gli apro*. (Boc.)  
 I open to her all my mind.

8. *Tale*, 'such,' *medesimo* or *stesso*, 'same,' are found used substantively.

Ex.: *È un tale che mi tormenta*, he is a person who torments me.  
*Avete veduto quel tale?* have you seen that so-and-so?  
*Non sono gli stessi*, they are not the same persons.

N.B.—We say also, *un certo tale*, *un certo Tedesco*, a certain person, a certain German.

9. *Tale* with *quale* is used to form a comparison. (See Obs. 3, p. 162.)

10. *Ambo*, *entrambi*, &c., 'both,' when preceding a noun, are followed by the definite article, but as the subject of a verb they are used without the article.

Ex.: *Ambo le mani per dolor mi morsi*. (DAN.)  
 I bit both my hands for grief.

*Furono entrambi condannati*, they were both condemned.

11. *Both* is sometimes expressed in Italian by repeating the conjunction *e*, and.

Ex.: *Essi sono e tristi e ostinati*.  
 They are both wicked and obstinate.

## ORTHOGRAPHY OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. *Tutto*, all, and *si*, one, they, people, may drop their final *o* and *i* before vowels, the elision being marked by an apostrophe.

Ex.: *Non è tutt' oro quel che luce.*  
It is not all gold that glitters.

2. Those ending in *un*, *uno*, or *una*, are subject to the same elisions as the definite article. (See p. 8.)

3. For *tale*, *cotale*, and *quale*, see page 10.

## READING EXERCISE.

*La lucciola.*

Non ho io, diceva ad alta voce una<sup>a</sup> lucciola, questo foco di dentro che risplende? Ora che fo io quì in terra? Chè non volo sulle sfere a ruotare questi miei nobilissimi raggi dal levante al ponente, e a formare una nuova stella fra le altre mie sorelle del cielo? Amica, le disse un vermicello che udì i suoi vantamenti, finchè con quel tuo splendido focherello stai fra le zanzare e le farfalle, verrai onorata; ma se sali dove tu di', sarai nulla.<sup>b</sup>

Questa favoletta ammonisca me e molti altri.<sup>c</sup>

GOZZI.

## VOCABULARY.

to spend (of time), <i>passare.</i>	world, <i>mondo.</i>	to be abroad, <i>viag-</i>
play, <i>commedia.</i>	appetite, <i>appetito.</i>	<i>giare.</i>
party, <i>serata.</i>	royal, <i>reale.</i>	library, <i>libreria.</i>
theatre, <i>teatro.</i>	sure, <i>certo.</i>	relation, <i>parente.</i>

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

[Dialogue between an English and an Italian gentleman.

They will address each other in the polite way.]

CLASS I. OF  
INDEF. PRON.

1. How do people<sup>d</sup> spend the evening in Milan? 2. Everybody<sup>e</sup> goes out to enjoy himself; some<sup>f</sup> go to the opera, some to the play, and others to a party. 3. Is it true that "La Scala" is the largest theatre in the world? 4. Everybody<sup>e</sup> says so. Have

<sup>a</sup> See p. 8.

<sup>d</sup> Obs. 3, p. 49.

<sup>b</sup> Rule, p. 221.

<sup>e</sup> Obs. 6, p. 221.

<sup>c</sup> See p. 10.

<sup>f</sup> Obs. 4, p. 221.

you not seen it yet? Whoever<sup>a</sup> comes to Milan  
should go to see it. 5. Do you know anybody  
use the Cond. of *dovere*.) *alcuno*

who could take me there<sup>b</sup>? 6. I know nobody.  
(Subj. of *potere*.) (use *condurre*.)

Did you not meet some one you know at Mrs. B.'s yesterday? 7. Nobody. A certain person spoke to me in Italian; but I could not understand him. 8. Was there no one who could speak English? 9. Nobody.

CLASS. II. OF  
INDEF. PRON. } 10. Have you had anything this morn-  
[taken]

ing? 11. I have eaten nothing yet. 12. Do you want anything? 13. No, thank you; whatever you may give me, I have no appetite. 14. Have you everything you want? 15. Everything.

CLASS III. OF  
INDEF. PRON } 16. Did you see any of your brothers yesterday? 17. I have seen neither (of them). 18. Are you sure that one of your two sisters will come to Italy next year? 19. Yes; either the one or the other will come undoubtedly<sup>c</sup>. 20. Does your eldest<sup>d</sup> sister know many languages? 21. Yes, she knows several<sup>e</sup> modern languages; however<sup>f</sup>, she does not speak them fluently, because she has not been abroad. 22. After – she  
*che*

has been in Italy, will she go somewhere else<sup>g</sup>? 23. She will go nowhere else next year. 24. Do you think your brother is better now than he was?  
(use *stare*) [stood]

25. Quite the contrary<sup>h</sup>; he is very poorly indeed, and always talks of death. 26. It is one thing to talk of death, and another<sup>i</sup> to die.

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 7, p. 221.

<sup>b</sup> Note *a*, p. 190.

<sup>c</sup> Obs. 5, p. 223.

<sup>d</sup> Obs. 2, p. 167.

<sup>e</sup> N.B., p. 156.

<sup>f</sup> Obs. 4, p. 223.

<sup>g</sup> Obs. 1, p. 222.

<sup>h</sup> Obs. 6, p. 223.

<sup>i</sup> Obs. 2, p. 222.

CLASS IV. OF INDEF. PRON. } 27. Have you any<sup>a</sup> books here?  
AND THE THREE OTHER CLASSES. }  
28. Yes, I have a few<sup>a</sup>. Should you like to read any,  
here is all my library. 29. Have you any<sup>b</sup> guide-book  
for Italy? 30. Yes, here is one.

## QUESTIONS.

Come sogliono passare la sera i Milanesi? 2.—Qual è il più gran teatro del mondo? 3.—Conosce Ella alcuno in Firenze? 5.—Non è venuto nessuno a trovarla oggi? —Chi le parlò alla serata della Signora B.?—Ha bisogno di niente? 12.—Che cosa ha?—Occupi Ella una parte o il tutto di questa casa?—Conosce Ella meglio Roma o Napoli?—Andrà in qualche luogo domani? 23.—Che disse un vermicello alla lucciola?

## CHAPTER IX.

## ADVERBS.

ADVERBS are not inflected in Italian. They are used to limit or modify the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; as,

*Ella canta bene*, she sings well.

*Il tenere il capo troppo caldo*, fa assai male.

Keeping the head too hot, is very hurtful.

RULE.—Many adverbs are formed by adding *mente* to the feminine adjective of quality ending either in *a* or *e*; as,

*generosa, generosamente*... generous, generously.

*felice, felicemente* ..... happy, happily.

N.B.—Adjectives ending in *le* or *re* drop the final *e* in forming the adverb; as,

*facile, facilmente* ..... easy, easily.

*regolare, regolarmente*... regular, regularly.

<sup>a</sup> See p. 10.

<sup>b</sup> Obs. 1, p. 223.

<sup>c</sup> Rule, p. 222.

## DIFFERENT CLASSES OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are classified according to their signification, as follows:—

*Adverbs of Place.*

1. The following adverbs denote locality in a manner corresponding with the three classes of demonstrative pronouns<sup>a</sup>:—

- (i.) Where the speaker or writer is.  
*cì<sup>b</sup>, quì, quà*, here.
- (ii.) Where the person addressed is.  

<i>costì, cotestì</i>	{	‘there,’ referring to a fixed place.
<i>costà, cotestà</i>	{	‘there,’ less deter- minately.
- (iii.) Distant from both the speaker and person addressed.  

<i>lì, colì</i>	}	there.
<i>là, colà</i>		
<i>vi<sup>b</sup>, ivi, quivi</i>		

2. Other adverbs of place denote—

- (i.) Rest in a place; as,  
*dove* or *ove*, where; *vicino*, near; *su*, up; *sopra*, upon, above; *giù*, down; *sotto*, under, below.
- (ii.) Motion to or from a place; as,  
*di lì* or *di là*, thither; *di quì* or *di quà*, hither; *indi*, thence; *quindi* or *quinci*, from thence; *costinci*, from thence, where you are; *onde* or *donde*, whence.
- (iii.) Place in a variety of relative positions; as,  
*entro* or *dentro*, within; *fuori* or *fuora*, without, outside; *avanti*, before; *dietro*, behind; *allato*, *accanto*, or *accosto*, aside, near; *attorno* or *intorno*, around; *rimpetto*, opposite; *lungi* or *lontano*, far; *oltre*, beyond; *altrove* or *altronde*, elsewhere; *dovunque* or *ovunque<sup>c</sup>*, wherever.

<sup>a</sup> See p. 209.

<sup>b</sup> Obs. 6, p. 190.

<sup>c</sup> *Unque* answers to the English ‘ever,’ in compound pronouns and adverbs.

## EXERCISE.

N.B.—Translate the following sentences, and point out the adverbs contained in them, giving their exact signification :—

Monsignor quì non c' è, ma ci siamo ben noi.—Scrivetemi e ditemi se il Giordani sia o no costì.—Il mercante che va di quà e di là portando la sua mercanzia si chiama merciaiuolo.—Dove non è pace vi è guerra.—Sedete accanto a me.—L'uomo adirato tutto si muta dentro e di fuori.

*Adverbs of Time.*

1. Adverbs of Time may refer to different relations of time.

(i.) Present; as,

*ora, adesso, or mo, now; testè, just now; oggi, to-day; ancora or tuttora, still; subito, immediately.*

(ii.) Past; as,

*dianzi, innanzi, prima, or pria, before; ieri, yesterday; allora, then; altre volte, once; già, already, in time past.*

(iii.) Future; as,

*tosto, soon; presto, quick; poi, indi, dopo, poscia, or appresso, afterwards; domani, to-morrow.*

(iv.) Duration or repetition; as,

*sempre or ognora, always, ever; mai or giammai, never; spesso or sovente, often; talvolta or talora, sometimes; adagio, slow; per tempo, early; tardi, late; intanto or frattanto, in the meantime; mentre, whilst; alfine, at last.*

EXERCISE. (See N.B., above.)

Vi ho detto ove sono, ora intendete che faccio.—Oggi voglio esser migliore di ieri.—Egli non ride mai.—Andate subito e tornate tosto.—A rivederci domani, intanto vi saluto.

*Adverbs of Quantity and Quality.*

1. These adverbs denote manner of degree and

quality, and are:—*più*<sup>a</sup>, more; *meno*, *manco*, less; *molt*, *assai*, much; *bene*, well; *male*, badly; *troppo*, too much; *guari*, not much; *tanto*, so much; *poco*, little; *affatto*, any, at all; *fino* or *sino*, till.

EXERCISE. (N.B., p. 229.)

Chi assai parla spesso falla.—Oggi non sto affatto bene.—Chi troppo vuole spesso perde anche il poco.

*Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation, Doubt, Choice, and Interrogative Adverbs.*

*Sì*, yes; *già*, indeed; *certo*, certainly; *bene*, well;—*no*, no; *non*, not; *mai*,  *giammai*, never; *mica*, *punto*, *affatto*, not at all;—*forse*, perhaps; *circa*, about; *davvero*, *difatti*, indeed, truly, in truth; *appunto*, exactly so; *pure*, yet; *presso*, about; *quasi*, almost;—*anzi*, *prima*, rather; *piuttosto*, *più presto*, sooner; *ecco*, behold; *eccoli*<sup>b</sup>, there is;—*ove*? where? *dove*? whither? *donde*? whence? *quando*? when? *che*? come? how? *perchè*? why? *quanto*? how much?

EXERCISE.—Read the Exercise at page 15, and point out all the adverbs contained in it.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The difference between *no* and *non* is, that *no* stands by itself, *non* is used to form a negative sentence.

Ex.: No; *non posso permetterlo*. No; I cannot allow it.

2. *Mai*<sup>c</sup> and  *giammai*, employed negatively, mean never, and are used with *non*, except when they stand by themselves in answer to a question.

Ex.: *Non l' avete mai visto*? *Giammai* (or *mai*).  
Have you never seen it? Never.

3. Employed interrogatively, and in conditional or

<sup>a</sup> Some of the above adverbs are used in comparison. (See pp. 161, 162, and 163.)

<sup>b</sup> See Obs. 4, p. 188.

<sup>c</sup> *Mai* is sometimes found used as an expletive with *sempre*, *si*, *no*; as,

*Giace mai sempre in ghiaccio.* (PET.)  
It lies for ever amidst the ice.

doubtful phrases, *mai* and *grammai* are used without *non*, and mean 'ever.'

Ex.: *L' avete mai veduta ?* have you ever seen her ?  
*Se mai la vedessi*, if ever I were to see her.

4. *Già*, certainly, already ; *bene*, well ; *punto*, at all ; *mica* or *miga*, no ; are often employed as expletives.

Ex.: *Non già che l' ami*, not that I love her.  
*Non è mica da scherzo*, it is not for a joke.

5. Some adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs, and, as such, are of course invariable. The following is a list of the principal adjectives thus used :

<i>chiaro</i> , clear.	<i>sodo</i> , firm.
<i>aperto</i> , open.	<i>felice</i> , happy.
<i>schietto</i> , free.	<i>sano</i> , healthy.
<i>dolce</i> , sweet.	<i>sommesso</i> , submissive, low.
<i>giusto</i> , just.	

Ex.: *Parlate chiaro*, speak plainly.  
*Vivete felice*, live happily.

6. Some words are sometimes adverbs and sometimes adjectives ; such as,

<i>alto</i> , high, or highly.	<i>basso</i> , low, lowly.
<i>caro</i> , dear, dearly.	<i>spesso</i> , frequent, frequently.
<i>diritto</i> , straight.	<i>presto</i> , quick, quickly.
<i>piano</i> { smooth, smoothly.	<i>troppo</i> , too-much, too.
{ slow, slowly.	<i>vicino</i> , near.
<i>rado</i> , rare, rarely.	<i>lontano</i> , far.
<i>solo</i> , alone, only.	<i>sicuro</i> , certain, certainly.

Ex.: *Avete pagato caro il vostro capriccio*.  
 You have paid dearly for your whim.

*Dove siete, cara sorella ?* where are you, sister dear ?

7. Some adjectives and nouns become adverbs by the addition of a preposition.

Ex.: *Avviene di rado*, it happens seldom.  
*L' ho fatto in fretta*, I have done it hurriedly.

*È fatto alla francese*, it is done after the French fashion.

#### DEGREES OF ADVERBS.

RULE I.—Adverbs formed from an adjective of quality (see Rule, p. 227) admit of the comparative and su-



perlative degrees, which are expressed in the same manner as the degrees of adjectives; as,

Comparative of Superiority: *più facilmente*, more easily.

„ Inferiority: *meno facilmente*, less easily.

Superlative { Relative: *il più facilmente*, the most easily.  
Absolute: *facilissimamente*, very easily.

Notice that the absolute adverbial superlative is expressed by adding *mente* to the feminine superlative adjective.

RULE II.—The following adverbs have particular forms in the comparative and superlative:

*male, peggio, pessimamente*; bad, worse, worst.

*bene, meglio, ottimamente*; well, better, best.

*poco, meno, minimamente*; little, less, least.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF ADVERBS.

1. The adverbs, *bene*, well, *male*, bad, *ora*, now, *talora*, sometimes, *ognora*, always, *ancora*, still, *meno*, less, *fino*, till, *pure*, yet, *solo*, only, *davvero*, indeed, *piano*, slow, *allfine*, at last, may lose their final vowel before any consonant, without taking an apostrophe; as,

*Chi mal fa male aspetti.* (PROV.)

Who does harm may expect harm.

2. *Quando*, when, *dove* or *ove*, where, *quanto*, how much, drop their final vowel, and take an apostrophe before vowels; as,

*Dov' era andata*, where she had gone.

#### ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS MOST COMMONLY IN USE.

(To be committed to memory by the pupil.)

<i>in appresso,</i>	} afterwards,	<i>da che,</i>	} since.
<i>dì poi,</i>		<i>da poi,</i>	
<i>fin d' allora,</i>	} since then,	<i>d' allora in poi,</i>	}
<i>d' allora in quà,</i>		<i>d' ora in avanti,</i>	
	} since.		henceforth.

\* 'Then,' in the sense of 'therefore,' is rendered by *dunque*, *quindi*, *perciò*.

*da quando in quà*, since when.

*da due mesi in quà*, two months since.

*da non molto*, not long since.

*da quì innanzi*,  
*da quà innanzi*, } from this  
*da questo punto* } time  
*in poi*, } forth.

*da indi innanzi*

*d' altronde*, besides.

*abbastanza*, enough.

*altrimenti*, otherwise.

*appena*, scarcely, hardly.

*attorno*, *circa*, } (about,  
*in circa*, *all' incirca*, } round  
} about.

*bel*, *lello*, softly, gently.

*per l' avvenire*, in future.

*a bocca*, } by word of mouth.  
*a voce*, }

*cioè*, } that is,  
*cioè a dire*, } that is to say.

*pur dianzi*, } not long ago,  
*poco fa*, } a little while  
*poc' anzi*, } ago.  
*non molto fa*, }

*molto tempo fa*, long ago.

*pochi giorni passati*, a few days ago.

*fra poco*, shortly, presently.

*in fatti*, in effect, in fact.

*di fatto*, really.

*finora*, } up to the pre-  
*fino*, } sent time,  
*infino ad ora* } till now.

*in fine*, } in short.  
*in somma*, }

*fin dove*, how far.

*a fondo*, thoroughly.

*quaggiù*, down there.

*da basso*, down stairs.

*di sopra*, up stairs.

*non guari*, not long.

*laggiù*, } below (there),

*lassù*, } above (there).

*quassù*, (here) above.

*di gran lunga*, by far.

*in quel mentre*, just then.

*niente affatto*, not at all.

*a destra* or  
*a mano destra*, } on or to the  
*a diritta*, } right hand.

*a manca* or  
*a mano manca*, } on the left.  
*a sinistra*, }

*presso a poco*, } nearly,  
*a un dipresso*, } almost,  
*pressochè*, } thereabouts.  
*quasi*, }

*di mano in*  
*mano*, } by degrees,  
} gradually.

*a poco a poco*, }

*ad onta*, in spite of.

*per lo passato*, }  
*per l' addietro*, } formerly.

*altre volte*, }

*piano, pian piano*, slowly.

*di quando in*  
*quando*, }  
*quando...quando*, } now and  
*tratto tratto* or } then.

*di tratto in tratto*, }

*di tanto in tanto*, }

*di tempo in tempo*, }

*a minuto*, in detail.

*all' improvviso*, suddenly,  
 unexpectedly.

*subito dopo*, soon after.

*tosto che*, as soon as.

*ad un tratto*, }  
*su due piedi*, } at once.

*per tutto*, } everywhere.  
*da per tutto*, }

*da banda*, } aside.  
*da parte*, }

<i>a buon mercato,</i> cheap.		<i>volentieri,</i> {willingly,
<i>da solo a solo,</i> } <i>tête-à-tête.</i>		<i>di buona voglia,</i> {with pleasure.
<i>a quattr'occhi,</i> }		<i>malvolentieri,</i> } unwillingly.
<i>in un batter</i> }		<i>di mala voglia,</i> }
<i>d'occhio,</i> } in a moment.		<i>per tempo,</i> } early.
<i>in un attimo,</i> }		<i>di buon ora,</i> }
<i>per esempio,</i> for instance.		<i>da capo,</i> } again.
<i>da prima,</i> } first, at first.		<i>di nuovo,</i> }
<i>in prima,</i> }		<i>invece,</i> instead, on the other
<i>il più presto possibile,</i> as soon		hand.
as possible.		
<i>a bello studio,</i> } on purpose.		<i>per ischerzo,</i> } in jest.
<i>apposta,</i> }		<i>da burla,</i> }
<i>ultimamente,</i> lately.		<i>di fretta,</i> hurriedly.
<i>da senno,</i> truly, indeed.		<i>alla fin delle fini,</i> last of all.

## READING EXERCISE.

Sono pochi giorni passati<sup>a</sup> che andò un uomo alla bottega d' un caffettiere che sta a . . . e dissegli: Subito<sup>b</sup> quattro caffè alla tal casa, chè io attendo quì<sup>c</sup> fuori<sup>d</sup>; e nominò un casato degno di rispetto. Mentre<sup>e</sup> che il caffè bolliva, metteva di quando in quando<sup>a</sup> il capo dentro<sup>d</sup> e dicea, Fate tosto per amor del cielo. Quando ogni cosa fu all' ordine, esce il giovane dalla bottega con una guantiera di metallo e quattro belle chicchere e un vaso di zucchero di porcellana, e trova l' uomo fuori, il quale gli dice: Il tè dov' <sup>f</sup> è? Risponde il giovane: Io non udii di tè. Oh sordi! grida l' altro; io vado di fretta<sup>e</sup> e quì si ha ancora ad indugiare. Tosto fa un tè e dà a me quello ch' è fatto, che io vado avanti. Così detto, prende la guantiera e dicea: Io ti prego, spicciati e col tè viemmi<sup>h</sup> dietro. Il giovane rientra, si sbriga, va alla casa, non trova ordine alcuno; che l' uomo aveva ordinato per sè e non per altri.—GOZZI.

## VOCABULARY.

kind, <i>cortese.</i>	through, <i>per.</i>	to stay at a country
already, <i>già.</i>	passage, <i>corrittio.</i>	seat, <i>villeggiare,</i>
regular, <i>regolare.</i>	to go abroad, <i>andare</i>	<i>fare villeggiatura.</i>
manner, <i>modo.</i>	all' estero.	vintage, <i>vendemmia.</i>
volume, <i>volume (m.)</i>	a country seat, <i>vil-</i>	to be over, <i>esser pas-</i>
reading, <i>lettura.</i>	<i>leggiatura.</i>	sato.

<sup>a</sup> See p. 233.<sup>d</sup> (iii.), p. 228.<sup>e</sup> See above.<sup>b</sup> (i.), p. 229.<sup>c</sup> I. (iv.), p. 229.<sup>h</sup> Obs. 3, p. 187.<sup>c</sup> I. (i.), p. 228.<sup>f</sup> Obs. 2, p. 232.

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

[Dialogue between an Italian and an English lady. They will address each other in the 3rd person singular, *Eller*.]

1. How do you do, Madam? You have done well to come early.<sup>a</sup> 2. Thank you; I have brought you back the book which you kindly<sup>b</sup> lent me the last time —

[that]

I was here. 3. Have you already finished — reading [of]

it? 4. I finished it long ago. 5. How have you ever<sup>c</sup>

been able to read all that so quickly? 6. Lately I read

regularly for three hours every evening, and in this

manner I can read nearly<sup>d</sup> three volumes in about<sup>3</sup> a<sup>1</sup>

week<sup>2</sup>. 7. And I, on the other hand,<sup>a</sup> can scarcely<sup>d</sup>

read one volume in a month. 8. Will you come down

now into the dining-room? 9. With pleasure. 10. I

will go before. Go slowly<sup>d</sup> through the passage, because

it is rather dark here. This is the dining-room. 11. The

windows look into the street, so whilst we dine we can

see the people pass. 12. Let us sit near each other, that

we may talk while we dine. How long<sup>d</sup> have you been

[Since when] [are you]

in this country? 13. — two years. 14. Have you

[Since]

never been to Italy since then<sup>e</sup>? 15. I go to see my

country now and then.<sup>d</sup> 16. Do you like England?

17. At first I did not like it, but gradually I became

accustomed to it. 18. Do Italians go abroad in the

summer? 19. They seldom go out of their country.

The rich have their country-seats; they go there to stay

through the summer, and return to town as soon as

[in]

the vintage is over.

<sup>a</sup> See p. 234.

<sup>b</sup> Rule, p. 227.

<sup>c</sup> Obs. 3, p. 230.

<sup>d</sup> See p. 233.

<sup>e</sup> See p. 232.

## QUESTIONS.

Tornerà a casa presto stassera? 1.—Che ha riportato alla Signora B. l'ultima volta che andò a trovarla? 2.—È già arrivato suo fratello? 3.—Da quando in quà studia l'italiano?—Va sua sorella malvolentieri alla scuola?—V'era molta gente alla serata della Signora D.?—Chi abita dirimpetto a casa sua?—Che faceva Ella mentre suo fratello leggeva?—Dove passano la state gl' Italiani ricchi?—Quando andò un uomo alla bottega d'un caffettiere?—Che disse egli?—Che faceva mentre il caffè bolliva?—Che aveva il giovine quando uscì dalla bottega?

## CHAPTER X.

## PREPOSITIONS.

THE Preposition is an uninflected part of speech.

We have already given, at page 8, all the prepositions which may be joined in one word with the definite article, and explained the use of *di*, *a*, *da*, in relation with the noun (p. 144); we will now point out the Italian prepositions most commonly in use.

Prepositions are classified according to their significations, as follows:—

I. PLACE.—Under place we have—

(i.) Rest in (the 'where'); as, *in*, in; *a*, at; *appo* or *appresso*, among, with; *per*, by.

(ii.) Motion with direction (the 'whence' and the 'whither'); as, *a*, to or unto; *in*, into, to; *oltre*, beyond; *verso*, *alla volta*, or *incontro*, towards; *a seconda*, in the direction of; *da*, from.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The preposition *a* is employed to express tendency

towards a person or thing, whether the motion be commenced, or ended, or merely implied; as,

*Vado a Roma*, I am going to Rome.

*Avvicinatevi a me*, come near me.

2. *A* is used to connect the word expressing the motive power with that expressing the object set in motion, and is also found in many adverbial expressions; as,

*Un mulino a vento*, a wind-mill.

*Una macchina a vapore*, a steam-engine.

*È dipinto a meraviglia*, it is painted wonderfully well.

(See also Note c, p. 62.)

3. *In* is used instead of the English *to*, before a name of a place, excepting that of a town, in speaking of going or having been to that place; as,

*Quando andrete in Italia?* when will you go to Italy?

*Siete stato in chiesa?* have you been to church?

(iii.) Place and direction:—*Sopra* or *sopra*, *su*, on, over, above; *di su*, *di sopra*, up;—the opposites of these are *sotto*, under, beneath; *di sotto*, *giù*, down, below. *Per*, through (idea of passage); *lungo* or *lunghezzo*, along; *rasente*, close to; *avanti*, *davanti*, or *prima*, before (with or without proximity);—opposed to these are *apresso*, *dietro*, after; *di dietro*, behind. *Fra*, *tra*, *infra*, between or among; *in mezzo*, *entro*, amidst, as opposed to *fuori*, *di fuori*, without. *Attorno*, round; *intorno*, *d'intorno*, *circa*, about; *presso* or *vicino*, near (in proximity to); *lungi*, *lontano*, or *discosto*, far; *contra*, *di contro*, or *rincontro*, close by; *rimpetto* or *a fronte*, opposite.

#### OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Per* is used to express 'motion through a place,' 'the reason why,' 'the cause by which,' 'the manner in which,' and 'the purpose for which,' a thing is accomplished; as,

*Entrò per la finestra*, he entered through the window.

*Scrivo per compiacervi*, I write to please you.

*Per le continue pioggie*, because of the continual rains.

*Viaggio per la posta*, I am travelling by post.

*È per amor vostro*, it is for your sake.

2. *Per*, followed by an infinitive after the verbs *stare* and *essere*, signifies 'to be about,' 'to be on the point of'; as,

*Sto per partire*, I am about to depart.

*Io era per partire*, I was on the point of departing.

(See also Note *g*, p. 30, and Note *b*, p. 49.)

#### EXERCISE.

Translate the following sentences, and point out the prepositions of *place* contained in them:—

Le stelle si veggono in cielo.—Appo\* gl' Italiani si fa molto uso di caffè.—Ogni acqua va al mare.—Sul mare canta il nocchiero.—Fra l' armi dorme il guerriero.—Una pecora perduta fuor dell' ovile va belando per i campi.

II. TIME:—*Da*, since; *fin*, *fino* or *sino*, till, until; *dopo*, after; *durante*, during. Many prepositions of *place* may be applied to time by governing a noun of time; as, *in*, in, *prima*, before, *da*, by, &c.

#### OBSERVATIONS.

1. *In* is used in phrases denoting passing from one time to another; as,

*L' aspettiamo di giorno in giorno*.

We expect him from day to day.

2. *In* is elegantly used before *su* by good writers.

Ex.: *Gli parve in sulla mezzanotte sentire d' in sul tetto*, &c. (Boc.)  
He thought he heard at midnight, on the roof, &c.

III. AGENCY, END, and MANNER:—*Con*, with; *da*, by; *per*, for, by; *affine*, for the sake of; *di*, of, from; *a modo*, *a guisa*, or *alla foggia*, after the manner, according to.

IV. ORIGIN, SEPARATION, and EXCLUSION:—*Di*, of; *da*, from; *senza*, without; *salvo*, save; *eccetto* or *tranne*, except.

#### OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Di* is found in many elliptical phrases; as,

*Fu punito di morte*

(i.e., *colla pena di morte*).

He was punished with death.

*Dare del lei a uno* } To address one with *lei*.  
 (i.e., *il titolo di lei*).

2. *Di* is often used instead of *da*, after verbs expressing separation or removal, when the noun has no article ; as,

*È uscito di casa*, he is gone out of the house.

*Levatevi di tavola*, leave the table.

*Mi cade di mano la penna*, the pen falls out of my hand.

N.B.—If the noun is preceded by the article, *da* is generally used ; as, *Levatevi dalla tavola*. But examples occur in good writers of the use of *di*, even with the article.

Ex. : *Cacciata avea il sole del cielo già ogni stella*. (Boc.)

The sun had already chased every star from the heavens.

3. *Di* is found in phrases in which 'in,' 'by,' 'to,' 'at,' 'with,' or 'on,' are used in English ; as,

*Abbondante di ricchezze*, abounding in riches.

*Viaggio di giorno, di notte*, I travel by day, by night.

*Egli è segretario del re*, he is secretary to the king.

*Mi meravigliai di vederlo*, I was surprised at seeing him.

*Sono contento di voi*, I am satisfied with you.

*Egli vive di solo pane*, he lives on bread alone.

(See also p. 144, and Note b, p. 76.)

4. *Da* expresses a relation of dependence, origin, or departure ; as,

*Dipende da voi*, it depends on you.

*Leonardo da Vinci*, Leonardo from Vinci.\*

*È partito dalla villa*, he has left the country-seat.

5. *Da* is used to indicate the agent ; as,

*È tormentato da mille timori*, he is tormented by a thousand fears.

*Fu fatto da Pietro*, it was done by Peter.

(See also Note b, p. 49 ; p. 144 ; and N.B. above.)

V. INCLINATION, CONFORMITY, and SUBSTITUTION :—*Per*, for ; *secondo*, according to ; *invece*, instead of ; *in cambio*, or *in luogo*, in place of, &c.

N.B.—Some words are both prepositions and adverbs.

---

\* *Vinci*, a castle near Florence, was the birth-place of *Leonardo*.



A preposition is known by its governing a noun, or a phrase corresponding to a noun; as, *al suo arrivo a casa*, on his arriving at home.

### EXERCISE.

Translate the following sentences, and point out the prepositions contained in them:—

Dalla luna d'ottobre a quella di gennaio si potano gli alberi.—Le piante nascono da semi.—L'involto si lega collo spago.—Il padre è amato dal figlio.—Morirono tutti tranne due.—Tutta la terra è circondata dall'aria.

### OBSERVATIONS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF PREPOSITIONS.

The prepositions *sino* or *fino*, till, *fuori*, beside, *senza*, without, may be spelt *sin*, *fin*, *fuor*, *senz'*.

(See also p. 8, and Obs., 1, p. 147.)

### GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.

Most Italian prepositions govern the noun or phrase (see above) by another preposition which follows them; other prepositions are used alone; others, again, may govern the noun indifferently by any one out of two or more different prepositions; whilst others may or may not take another preposition.

I. The prepositions which require *di* after them are—*alla volta*, towards; *a seconda*, in the direction of; *prima*, before; *a modo* or *a guisa*, after, in manner of; *invece*, *in cambio*, or *in luogo*, instead of, in place of.

Ex.: *Egli ride invece di piangere*, he laughs instead of weeping.

II. Those which require *a* after them are—*accanto* or *allato*, near, by the side of; *dietro*, behind; *presso* or *attorno*, about; *sino*, *fino*, as far as; *rimpetto*, opposite; *rincontro*, against.

Ex.: *Accanto al bene ci sta il male.* (SEGN.)  
Good and evil go side by side.

III. Those which require *da* after them are—*di quà*, this side; *di là*, that side; *lungi*, far; *in fuori*, besides.

Ex.: *State lungi dai cattivi compagni.*  
Keep far from bad companions.

IV. The following prepositions require no other prepositions after them:—*eccetto*, *salvo*, or *tranne*, except; *lunghezza* or *rasente*, close to, or along; *mediante*, by means; *per*, for; *in*, in; *tra* or *fra*, between; *su*, on; *giusto* or *secondo*, according.

Ex.: *Sono per le vie e sui ponti della città.*

They are about the streets and on the bridges of the city.

V. The following prepositions may take either *di* or *a* after them:—*a rispetto* or *per rispetto*, on account of; *a lato*, aside; *a rincontro*, against; *vicino*, near; *attorno*, round.

Ex.: *Sedete vicino di (or a) me*, sit near me.

VI. The following may take either *a* or *da*:—*di dietro*, behind; *discosto*, distant from.

Ex.: *Trovai due miglia discosto dalla (or alla) città.*

It is two miles distant from the city.

VII. The following may take either *di*, or no preposition at all:—*verso* or *inverso*, towards; *salvo*, except; *senza*, without.

Ex.: *Non fanno niente senza del (or il) padre.*

They do nothing without the father.

VIII. The following may take either *a*, or no preposition at all:—*di contra*, or *addosso*, on, against; *entro*, into, within; *anzi*, before; *dirimpetto*, opposite.

Ex.: *Non andate entro (a) quella stanza.*

Do not go into that room.

IX. The following may take either *di*, *a*, or *da*:—*di fuori*, without; *di lungi*, from far.

Ex.: *Erano di fuori dalla (or della, or alla) città.*

They are without the city.

X. The following may take *di* or *a*, or no preposition:—*appo*, with or among; *oltre*, beyond; *appresso* or *dopo*, after; *sopra* or *sovra*, upon; *contra* or *contro*, against; *lungo*, along; *circa*, about; *presso* or *accosto*, near.

Ex.: *Appo noi non si fa uso di tè*, with us tea is not used.

XI. The following may take *a*, *da*, or no preposition:—*di costa*, close; *dietro*, after, behind; *dianzi* or *innanzi*, before.

Ex.: *Egli era innanzi a noi*, he was before us.

XII. Lastly, the following prepositions may take either *di*, *a*, or *da*, or no preposition:—*avanti*, forward, before; *intorno*, around; *dentro*, within, inside; *di sotto*, under; *di sopra*, upon, above; *fuori*, outside.

Ex.: *Essi erano avanti di noi*, they were before us (*or* in advance).

### READING EXERCISE.

Carlo di Valois, brutto<sup>a</sup> di<sup>b</sup> tanti delitti, al principio del 1302 andò a<sup>c</sup> Roma per aver consiglio del Papa, e gli chiese danari. Bonifazio rispose che mandandolo a Firenze lo avea messo nella<sup>d</sup> *fonte dell' oro*. Risposta che bene spiega la qualità delle sue intenzioni. Dai fatti che seguitarono apparisce che allora fu stabilito definitivamente l'esilio de' Bianchi. In effetto Carlo tornò a Firenze, e sapendo che ivi era la *fonte dell' oro*, saziò a quella fonte le bramose voglie<sup>e</sup>, fece altre rapine, dette sentenze di morte pubblicò i beni e arse le case ad alcuni che falsamente e con empio artificio furono accusati di aver cospirato per<sup>f</sup> ucciderlo. Poi per mezzo del Potestà (aprile, 1302) procedè alle condanne del bando, ed esiliò oltre a 600 cittadini delle principali casate dei Bianchi che si sparsero per<sup>f</sup> Toscana e l'Italia, e fecero causa comune coi Ghibellini. Fra questi esuli fu anche Dante che, citato a comparire per essere stato dei Bianchi e per aver contrastato alla venuta dello straniero, non si presentò, ed ebbe arse le case, confiscati i beni, e condanna di morte.—VANNUCCI.

### VOCABULARY.

bonnet, <i>cappellino</i> .	chaplain, <i>cappellano</i> .	the break of day, <i>to</i>
straw, <i>paglia</i> .	to come near, <i>avvicinarsi</i> .	<i>spuntar del giorno</i> .
to ask after one, <i>domandare di uno</i> .	boat, <i>battello</i> .	as far as, <i>fino</i> .
to take away, <i>condurre via</i> .	steam, <i>vapore</i> .	opposite, <i>dirimpetto</i> .
glass, <i>vetro</i> .	Christmas, <i>Natale</i> .	behind, <i>dietro</i> .
		near, <i>vicino</i> .
		origin, <i>origine</i> (f.)

<sup>a</sup> Obs. 5, p. 127.

<sup>b</sup> Obs. 3, p. 239.

<sup>c</sup> Obs. 1, p. 236.

<sup>d</sup> I. (i.), p. 236.

<sup>e</sup> Like the *lupa* (wolf) of Dante, *Inf. c. I., v. 98*. <sup>f</sup> Obs. 1, p. 237.

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

[Dialogue between two young ladies.—They will address each other in the 3rd person with *Elle*.]

PREPOSITION } di. 1. Where is your straw<sup>a</sup> bonnet? 2. It is

in my sister's<sup>a</sup> room. 3. Is your brother gone out of<sup>b</sup> the house? 4. Yes; Mr. D. came to ask after him, and took him away. 5. How did you break the glass of your gold watch? 6. It fell out of<sup>b</sup> my hands. 7. Did you travel by<sup>c</sup> day or by night, when you came to London?

*a*

8. I travelled by night: we were three friends; the daughter of Mr. B., chaplain to the Queen, Mrs. D.'s niece, and myself.

[I]

PREPOSITION } a. 9. Is your room on<sup>d</sup> the ground floor or on

the first floor? 10. It is on the third floor. 11. Where will you go next summer? 12. I shall go to Leghorn.<sup>e</sup> 13. How will you go — ? 14. I shall go to Liverpool, [there]

and thence by steam-boat to Leghorn. 15. Will you

*per*

be able to make yourself understood when you are at Leghorn? 16. I hope so. 17. When did you begin to learn Italian? 18. Last year, at Christmas.

PREPOSITION } da. 19. From whom do you learn Italian?

20. From an Italian gentleman.

PREPOSITIONS } GENERALLY. 21. When do you start for France? [will]

22. To-morrow morning at day-break. 23. And when will you arrive at Paris? 24. Before<sup>e</sup> night. 25. I have been in France twice, but I never went so far as<sup>f</sup> Paris.

<sup>a</sup> Obs., p. 144.

<sup>d</sup> I. (i.), p. 238.

<sup>b</sup> Obs. 2, p. 239.

<sup>e</sup> I., p. 240.

<sup>c</sup> Obs. 3, p. 239.

<sup>f</sup> II., p. 240.

26. Who lives opposite to<sup>a</sup> your house? 27. I do not know; but I am well acquainted with the lady who lives behind<sup>b</sup> my house; she has been in Italy, and says that the country near<sup>c</sup> Florence is beautiful. Not far from the city, out<sup>d</sup> of "Porta San Gallo," is Fiesole, (a) town from which Florence had its origin.

### QUESTIONS.

Che cappello porta Ella d' estate? 1.—Chi è venuto a domandare di suo fratello? 4.—Quando le piace viaggiare? 8.—Di chi è segretario il Signor B.? 8.—Che mulini si usano in Inghilterra<sup>e</sup>?—Dove fa conto di andare la state prossima?—Quando arrivò a Londra suo zio?—Come andrà a casa sua?—Chi fu fra gli esuli fiorentini esiliati nel 1302?—Perchè fu Dante citato a comparire?—Che cosa gli fecero?

---

## CHAPTER XI.

### CONJUNCTIONS.

I. CONJUNCTIONS are uninflected. They join together sentences and single words; as,

*Francesco ama la virtù e odia il vizio.*

Francis loves virtue and hates vice.

*Pietro e Paolo, Peter and Paul.*

II. Conjunctions are divided into—*copulative, augmentative or adjunctive, negative, alternative, conditional, arrestive, exceptive, adversative, and causal.*

---

<sup>a</sup> VIII., p. 241.

<sup>d</sup> XII., p. 242.

II., p. 240.

Obs. 2, p. 237.

<sup>e</sup> V., p. 241.

1. *Copulative* conjunctions unite sentences or clauses, and are—

*e, ed, (et), and.*                      *anco or ancora, also, even,*  
*anche, also, as well as.*              *likewise.*

as,        *Il tempo passa, e non torna più.*  
             Time passes, and returns no more.

OBS.—The conjunction *e* is sometimes omitted, and then it is understood; as,

*Cerca il bene, dispregia il male.*  
 Seek after the good, and despise the evil.

2. The *Adjunctive* are conjunctions which, in connecting sentences, give especial emphasis to the union; these are—

<i>di più,</i>	} besides.	<i>oltrechè</i>	} besides this
<i>in oltre or</i>		<i>oltracciò</i>	
<i>innoltre,</i>		<i>ancora, again.</i>	
<i>d'altronde,</i>		<i>pure or altresì, also.</i>	
<i>non solo, not only.</i>			

as,        *La modestia oltrechè è virtù è pure bellezza.*  
             Modesty, besides being a virtue, is also grace.

3. The *Negative* conjunctions place the second sentence or clause in some kind of opposition to what precedes; they are—

<i>no, not.</i>	<i>neppure<sup>a</sup>,</i>	} neither.
<i>non già, not at all.</i>	<i>nemmeno,</i>	
<i>anzi, on the contrary.</i>	<i>tampoco,</i>	
<i>nè, ned<sup>b</sup>, nor, neither.</i>	<i>nettampoco,</i>	

as,        *Non ispargere disuguali nè troppo spesse le sementi dei grani.*

Do not scatter unequally, neither too thick, the seeds of corn.

4. *Alternative* conjunctions unite contrary sentences or words; they are—

<sup>a</sup> *e* is used before any consonant; *ed* before vowels; *et* is obsolete.

<sup>b</sup> *ned* is seldom used for *nè*. See Note *h*, p. 183.

<sup>c</sup> *neppure*, &c., are conjunctions compounded of *ne* and *pure*, &c.; so also we can say *eppure*, instead of *e* and *pure*.

*o, ossia, or ovvero, or.*

*anzi,*

*innanzi,*

*meglio,*

*piuttosto,*

*più presto,*

*anzichè,*

} sooner.

*prima, first.*

*nè, nor, neither.*

*anzi che no, rather than.*

*più volentieri, more wil-  
lingly.*

OBS.—*o, or ossia*, sometimes expresses a mere alternative name or synonym ; as,

*Le pecchie traggono dalla citronella o citragine mele  
delicatissimo.*

Bees extract from mint very sweet honey.

5. *Conditional* conjunctions express that a thing is stated, not absolutely, but under a certain condition or supposition ; they are—

*se, if.*

*se mai,* } if, if even.

*se pure,* }

*posto che,* supposing that.

*dato che,* granting that.

*ancorchè,* even although.

*a meno che,* unless.

*ogni volta che,* } any time

*tutte le volte che,* } that.

*purchè, provided.*

*con patto che,* } on con-  
*con questo però,* } dition.  
*a condizione che,* }

*ove, dove, or quando,* when.

*quand' anche,* even when,  
whenever.

*solamente che,* only that.

as, *Sarete sano se sarete sobrio.*

You will enjoy good health if you are sober.

6. The *Arrestive* and *Exceptive* conjunctions suggest a pause to hear what is to be said by way of exception or opposition to what precedes ; they are—

*ma or però, but.*

*pure, still, even (only).*

*nondimeno, yet.*

*nulladimeno, however.*

*tuttavia, nevertheless.*

*tuttavolta, notwithstanding.*

*con tutto ciò,* } for all that,

*ciò non ostante,* } in spite of

*ciò non dimeno,* } that.

*non per questo,* notwith-  
standing this.

*salvo,*

*eccetto,*

*tratto,*

*tranne,*

*fuori,*

*in fuori,*

*fuor di,*

*fuorchè,*

} save or except.

*se non,* } if not,

*se non che,* } otherwise,  
but.

- as, *Gli onori ti possono esser tolti, ma la virtù mai ti può esser tolta.* (DA RIP.)  
Honour can be taken from you, but of virtue you can never be deprived.

## OBSERVATIONS.

- (1) *Ma*, used as correlative to *non solo*, *non che*, means 'still,' 'also'; as,

*La cicala non solo canta, ma nel cantare è importuna.*  
The grasshopper not only chirps, but also annoys by its chirping.

- (2) *Pure* is often used in the signification of 'only'; as,  
*Natura non aveva ivi pur dipinto.*  
Nature had not only painted there.

7. *Causal* conjunctions express *end*, *reason*, and *purpose*; and are—

<i>chè</i> ,	} for,	<i>sicchè</i> , so.
<i>perchè</i> ,		<i>di manierachè</i> ,
<i>poichè</i> ,	because, since.	<i>di modo che</i> ,
<i>posciachè</i> ,	because, since.	<i>in guisa che</i> ,
<i>perciò</i> ,	therefore.	<i>perocchè</i> ,
<i>perciocchè</i> ,	} for which	<i>imperocchè</i> ,
<i>imperciocchè</i> ,		reason,
<i>conciossiachè</i> ,	because,	<i>per tanto</i> ,
<i>dunque</i> ,	as.	<i>per la qual cosa</i> ,
<i>adunque</i> ,	} then.	<i>in somma</i> , in short.
<i>cosichè</i> ,		<i>in fine</i> ,
<i>chè</i> ,	} wherefore.	<i>per fine</i> ,
		in conclusion.

as, *Ogni giorno riceviamo 'da Dio benefici, dunque ogni giorno noi dobbiamo ringraziarlo.*

Every day we receive benefits from God, therefore every day we must thank Him.

N.B.—For the conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood after them, see Note c, page 70.

\* For the different meanings of *che*, see pp. 215, 216.



## OBSERVATIONS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF CONJUNCTIONS.

1. The conjunctions *e, o*, followed by a word beginning with a vowel, often take a *d* after them; as,

*Dure ed aspre battaglie*, hard and severe battles.

2. *Pure, eppure, oppure, almeno, nemmeno, ora, ancora*, followed by a consonant, drop the last vowel; as,

*Che il cuor mi preme già pur pensando.*

Which to think of, oppresses my heart.

## READING EXERCISE.

La monarchia cristiana è popolare, in quanto mira al bene del popolo e<sup>a</sup> specialmente delle classi più numerose ed infelici, nelle quali, ad esempio di Cristo suo istitutore, essa pone il suo affetto e<sup>a</sup> le sue compiacenze. L'aristocrazia, nei regni bene ordinati, è un semplice mezzo, di cui il popolo, e soprattutto la plebe, è l'ultimo fine. La plebe è la parte più sacra delle nazioni, perchè<sup>b</sup> è la più degna insieme e la più misera; la più degna, perchè i suoi sudori alimentano tutto lo stato, e senza di essi il potente, il nobile, il ricco non potrebbero vivere non che<sup>c</sup> ozicare e godere; la più misera perchè a lei tocca un minimo frutto delle sue fatiche.

## VOCABULARY.

cabman, *vetturino*.  
to drive, *condurre*.  
comfortable, *comodo*.  
sitting-room, *stanza di ricevere*.  
crown, *scudo*.  
to breakfast, *far colazione*.  
table d' hôte, *tavola rotonda*.  
to show, *condurre*.  
to show in, *fare entrare*.

sofa, *sofà* (m.)  
arm chair, *poltrona*.  
to inquire after, *domandare di*.  
to take, *condurre*.  
to play an opera, *dare un' opera*.  
ticket, *biglietto*.  
pit, *platea*.  
box, *paleo*.  
overture, *sinfonia*.  
curtain, *sipario*.  
scenery, *decorazioni*.

splendid, *splendido*.  
tenor, *tenore*.  
sweet, *dolce*.  
melodious, *melodioso*.  
duet, *duetto*.  
to have success, *incontrare*.  
act, *atto*.  
ballet, *ballo*.  
to fail, *far fiasco*.  
to drop, *calarsi*.  
to be over, *esser finito*.

## TRANSLATION EXERCISE.

[Arriving at an Hotel.]

1. Cabman, drive me to the best hotel. 2. This is the best hotel, sir. 3. Tell the host — I want two [that]

<sup>a</sup> 1, p. 245.

<sup>b</sup> 7, p. 247.

<sup>c</sup> Obs. 11, p. 216.

good rooms. 4. Yes, sir; here is the host. 5. Have you a comfortable bed-room and a sitting-room? 6. Yes, sir. 7. How much do you charge (by) the week? 8. Ten crowns. 9. Very well; I will break-fast at ten o'clock, and dine at the table d'hôte. 10. How long will you stay here, sir? 11. I shall stay about a month. Show me to my rooms. 12. These

*circa*

are your rooms, sir. 13. Have you a sofa to put in my

*da*

sitting-room? 14. No; but I can give you an arm-chair. 15. Let me also have a writing-table. 16. A gentleman has come to inquire after you, sir. 17. Show him in. 18. Oh! how do you do, Mr. D.? 19. Very well, thank you: I have come to take you to the theatre. 20. To what theatre shall we go? 21. Where you like. 22. Let us go to the opera. 23. What opera do they play this evening? 24. The new opera, "L'Africaine." 25. They say it is a good opera. 26. Let us take tickets for the pit. 27. We will go into my box. 28. What a number of people! How do you like this

*Quanta gente!*

theatre? 29. I like it very much: I like it more than any I have seen. 30. What a good orchestra! This overture is very beautiful. 31. The curtain is rising. 32. The scenery is very splendid. 33. Who is the tenor? 34. It is Signor A.; have you ever heard him? 35. I have not yet heard him. 36. He sings very well. 37. Who is the prima donna? 38. It is Signora B.; you will hear what (a) beautiful voice (she has). 39. What (a) sweet and melodious voice the soprano has! 40. Now she will sing a duet with the prima donna. 41. This duet is very beautiful. 42. I never

heard such a beautiful voice. 43. She is the best Italian soprano. 44. The first act is over. 45. It is very warm here; let us go out for a few minutes. 46. We shall come back again before the second act; before the ballet. 47. This opera has great success. 48. The ballet has failed. 49. The curtain is dropping. 50. The opera is over; let us go. 51. To-morrow evening I am invited to a ball at Mrs. C.'s. 52. I am invited there also. 53. Good-bye, then, till to-morrow evening. 54. Till we see each other again.

[To see each other again]

A

#### QUESTIONS.

Dove vuole che il vetturino la conduca? 1.—A che ora farà colazione domani?—Vorrebbe qualche cos' altro nella sua stanza da ricevere? 15.—In che parte del teatro andò suo fratello? 27.—Le piacque la sinfonia del Guglielmo Tell quando l' udì la prima volta?—Aveva la prima donna bella voce?—A che ora si alzò ed a che ora si calò il sipario? 31.—Come le piacquero le decorazioni? 32.—Ha fatto fiasco il tenore? 48.—Al bene di quali classi di popolo mira la monarchia cristiana?

## CHAPTER XII.

### INTERJECTIONS.

INTERJECTIONS are classified according to their meaning, as follows:—

Of Grief and Surprise:

*oh!* } *oh!*  
*ahi!* }  
*aimè* or *ahime!* } *alas!*  
*oimè* or *ohime!* }  
*ah!* *oh!*

*lasso!* }  
*lasso me!* } *alas!*  
*ahi lasso!* }  
*povero me!* poor me!  
*misero me!* wretched me!

## Of Joy :

*ah ah ! ha ha !*  
*bene ! well !*  
*buono ! good !*

*oh ! oh !*  
*O che allegrezza ! oh what*  
*joy !*

## Of Desire and Beseeching :

*deh ! ah !*  
*pure ! yet !*  
*oh se ! oh if !*  
*mercè ! mercy !*  
*non più ! enough !*

*di grazia !* { pray ! I beseech  
                                 you !  
                                 if you please.  
*per carità !* for charity's  
                                 sake !

## Of Anger, Aversion, and Indignation :

*doh ! oh !*  
*oh ! oh !*  
*eh ! eh !*  
*deh ! pshaw !*

*puh ! pooh !*  
*via ! away !*  
*oibo ! fye !*

## Of Approbation :

*sì ! yes !*  
*così !* } yes certainly.  
*già !* }  
*bene ! ebbene ! well !*

*buono ! good !*  
*bravo ! bravo !*  
*viva !* } well done !  
*evviva !* }

## Of Admiration :

*o ! oh ! oh !*  
*come ! why !*  
*bello ! fine !*

*capperi !* } aye ! hey day !  
*cappita !* } marry !  
*poffare !* }

## Of Encouragement :

*sù !* }  
*orsù !* } come !  
*via !* }

*animo !* } courage !  
*coraggio !* } cheer up !  
*fate cuore !* }

## Of Warning :

*guai a voi ! woe to you !*  
*badate !* } take care !  
*state all' erta !* } mind !  
*state fresco ! you are in*  
*a fine predicament.*

*piano !* }  
*adagio !* } slowly.  
*fermati olà !* } hold !  
*ferma ! ferma !* } hold !  
*dalli ! dalli !* }

## Of Calling :

<i>oh ! oh !</i>	<i>ehi !</i> } oh hey !
<i>chi è di là ?</i> who is there ?	<i>ola !</i> } ho there !

## Of Silencing :

<i>zi !</i> hist !	<i>silenzio !</i> silence !
<i>zitto !</i> hush !	<i>tacete !</i> peace then !
<i>cheto !</i> be still !	<i>basta !</i> enough !

## Of Cheering :

<i>Viva l' Italia !</i> Long live	<i>evviva il Re !</i> hurrah for the
Italy !	King !

OBS.—The same interjection may express different affections. The event which it precedes determines its signification.

Ex :     *Oh qual soave incanto nelle virtù si chiude !*  
           *Ah ! what sweet enchantment there is in virtue !*  
           *Oh quanto male sta il cuor dell' empio !*  
           *Ah ! how wretched is the heart of the wicked !*

## CHAPTER XIII.

## EXPLETIVES, ELLIPSIS, COLLOCATION OF WORDS.

The different *expletives* have been already mentioned. See Obs. 1 and Note b, p. 188 ; Note c, p. 230 ; and Obs. 4, p. 231.

Italian admits also of many *ellipses*. Of these, the most remarkable are :—

1. The omission of the personal pronoun in the nominative ; as,

*Sono felice di vedervi,* I am happy to see you.

2. The suppression of the present participle of the auxiliary verb in sentences which relate the occurrence of events following in immediate succession ; as,

*Vedutala l' amò,* having seen her, he loved her.

3. The omission of the relative pronoun *che* or *il quale*, and the auxiliaries *essere* and *avere* when used in the indicative mood, the past participle agreeing with the subject; as,

*Non so le cose dette o fatte*; i. e., *le cose che son state dette o fatte*; I do not know the things which have been said or done.

4. The omission of *che* before the verb of a dependent sentence, after *temere*, to fear, *dubitare*, to doubt, *sperare*, to hope, and *volere*, to wish (see Note b, p. 34); as,

*Spero non sia vero*, I hope it is not true.

See also Obs. 1 to Class IV., p. 238, and Obs., p. 245.

But what renders the Italian language most difficult to foreigners is the great freedom used, especially by the poets, in the *collocation of words*. There are no unvarying rules for the order of words in a sentence; but by observation of good authors, and accurate analysis of sentences, the student will soon master the difficulties of Italian construction.

*Read the following passage by MONTI:—*

Ottimo divisamento degli antichi saggi fu quello di consecrare con monumenti di pubblica e religiosa riconoscenza la memoria di tutti coloro che furono di un' arte, comunque giovevole, ritrovatori, o che, mediante lo scoprimento di alcun segreto della natura, la ragione umana aiutarono, e somma gloria a se stessi e alla patria partorirono; reputando essi quegli uomini sapientissimi, niuno potersi rendere della patria più benemerito che colui, il quale di utili ritrovati la vantaggiasse, e splendor le crescesse fra le nazioni. Perciò niun pittore in Atene ebbe iscrizioni più onorevoli d' Apollodoro, solo perchè trovò egli l' arte di comporre i colori e cavarne le ombre; e fecero di un zoppo e povero fabbro nulla meno che un Dio, perchè primo foggì il ferro in servizio dell' uomo; e concessero divini onori a Trittolemo, artefice dell' aratro; e infinite ammirabili cose favoleggiarono di Mercurio, inventore della grammatica e della musica, e di Prometeo, scopritore del fuoco, e di Atlante, primo contemplatore del cielo.

## CHAPTER XIV.

## MAXIMS AND FIGURES OF SPEECH.

<i>Andare a monte un affare,</i> To go to a mountain a business.	To be broken off (of an engagement).
<i>Andare col calzare di piombo,</i> To go with a leaden boot.	To be cautious.
<i>Andare a fronte scoperta,</i> To go with one's brow uncovered.	To have nothing to be ashamed of.
<i>Andar colla testa nel sacco,</i> To go with the head in the bag.	To rush into anything blindly.
<i>Non aver da far cantare un cieco.</i> Not to possess enough to make a blind man sing.	Not to have enough to buy salt for one's porridge.
<i>Aver grilli in capo,</i> To have grasshoppers in the head.	To be whimsical.
<i>Aver il cuore in bocca,</i> To have the heart in the mouth.	To be sincere.
<i>Avere gusto (or caro),</i> To have taste (or dear).	To be glad.
<i>Avere voglia,</i> To have will.	To desire, long.
<i>Avere fumo,</i> To have smoke.	To be proud.
<i>Aver la testa altrove,</i> To have the head somewhere else.	To think of other things.
<i>Aver la testa dura,</i> To have a hard head.	To be thick-headed.

*Non aver sale in zucca,*  
To have no salt in the head.

*Battersi la guancia,*  
To smite one's own cheek.

*Cascare il cacio sui maccheroni,*  
To have cheese falling on the  
macaroni.

*Cercare il pelo nell' uovo,*  
To seek for hair on an egg.

*Ci va la vita,*  
It concerns life.

*Comprarsi brighe a denari con-*  
*tanti,*  
To buy troubles with cash.

*Dar la voce ad uno,*  
To give the voice to one.

*Dare il capo d'anno,*  
To give the head of the year.

*Darsi della scure sul piede,*  
To cut one's own foot with  
the axe.

*Essere l' occhio dritto di uno,*  
To be the right eye of anyone.

*Essere di buona (or larga) bocca,*  
To be of a good (or large)  
mouth.

*Essere benveduto,*  
To be well seen.

*Essere malveduto,*  
To be badly seen.

*Essere in grado di,*  
To be in condition of.

*Essere a buon porto,*  
To be at a good harbour.

*Essere a cavallo,*  
To be on horseback.

To be weak-minded.

To repent.

To be unexpectedly for-  
tunate.

To be very particular in  
everything.

Life is at stake.

To make one's own  
troubles.

To call anyone aloud.

To wish a happy new  
year.

To bite one's own nose  
off.

To be the favourite of  
anyone.

To have a good appetite.

To have a good repu-  
tation.

To be of ill repute.

To be able to.

To be nearly out of  
trouble.

To be out of danger.



<i>Non vi è caso,</i> There is no chance.	It is impossible.
<i>Non esser pane pei denti di qualcuno,</i> Not to be bread for one's teeth.	To be out of one's reach.
<i>Essere una cosa da dozzina,</i> To be a thing by the dozen.	To be something very common.
<i>Farla pagare con usura,</i> To exact payment with usury.	To make one pay dearly for an injury.
<i>Far tanto di cuore,</i> To make so big a heart.	To rejoice greatly.
<i>Fare la gatta morta,</i> To play the dead cat.	To pretend to be quiet.
<i>Fare il dottore,</i> To play the doctor.	To lay down the law in company.
<i>Farsi caso (or specie),</i> To make to oneself a case.	To be astonished.
<i>Farsi cuore (or animo),</i> To make to one's self heart (or mind).	To take courage.
<i>Fare una cosa a pennello;</i> To do a thing with a brush.	To do a thing perfectly.
<i>Fare uno sproposito,</i> To make a blunder.	To do something rash.
<i>Guardare colla coda dell'occhio,</i> To look with the tail of the eye.	To cast sheep's eyes.
<i>Inarcare le ciglia,</i> To arch the eyebrows.	To be dumbfounded.
<i>Lasciar la lingua a casa,</i> To leave the tongue at home.	To remain silent.
<i>Lavorare sott' acqua (or sotto mare),</i> To work under water.	To work underhand.
<i>Mettersi nei panni di uno,</i> To put oneself in anyone's clothes.	To put oneself in an- other's place.

<i>Mettersi la mano al cuore,</i> To place one's hand on one's heart.	To consult one's conscience
<i>Misurar tutto collo stesso braccio,</i> To measure everything with the same arm.	Not to allow any distinction.
<i>Non vedo l' ora di partire,</i> I do not see the hour of leaving.	I long to leave.
<i>Pagare di cattiva moneta,</i> To pay in bad money.	To be ungrateful.
<i>Parlar sotto voce,</i> To speak under voice.	To whisper.
<i>Pensare alla pelle,</i> To think to the skin.	To have regard to one's life.
<i>Perder d' occhio qualcuno,</i> To lose some one from the eye.	To lose sight of one.
<i>Perder la bussola,</i> To lose the (mariner's) compass.	To be at a loss.
<i>Piantare alcuno,</i> To plant anyone.	To leave anyone suddenly.
<i>Portare acqua al mare,</i> To bring water to the sea.	To carry coals to Newcastle.
<i>Promettere mari e monti,</i> To promise seas and mountains.	To be prodigal of promises.
<i>Salvare la capra e i cavoli,</i> To save both the goat and the cabbage.	To have one's cake and eat it too.
<i>Sapere di latino,</i> To know of Latin.	To be a Latin scholar.
<i>Son tanto occupato, che non so da che parte voltarmi,</i> I am so busy, I do not know which way to turn.	I have so many things to do, that I do not know how to commence.
<i>Stare colle mani in mano,</i> To stand with the hands in hand.	To stand idle.

*Stare alla larga,*  
To stand at a great distance.

*Studiare il passo,*  
To study the pace.

*Tenere a bada alcuno,*  
To keep any one at bay.

*Tenere uno sulla corda,*  
To keep one on the rope.

*Tenere uno in croce,*  
To keep one on the cross.

*Tirare per le lunghe,*  
To draw by long ways.

*Toccare una cosa con mano,*  
To touch a thing with one's  
own hand.

*Toccar sempre lo stesso tasto,*  
To play always the same note.

*Un luogo fuor di mano,*  
A place out of hand.

*Voltare le spalle,*  
To turn the shoulders.

*Il fine corona l'opera,*  
The end crowns the work.

To keep aloof.

To quicken one's pace.

To keep in uncertainty.  
To delay giving an answer.

To keep anyone in a  
state of suspense.

To torture one with  
anxiety.

To delay anything, to  
make slow work of  
anything.

To see a thing with  
one's own eyes.

To harp on the same  
string.

A remote place.

To withdraw, to retreat.

All's well that ends  
well.

ire.

**1st F VERBS IN ERE (SHORT)** which have two forms either the Perfect or Past Participle, or both; one form being irregular and the other generally regular. (p. 104.)

ive.

Perfect.

Past Participle.

concessi or concedei	concesso or conceduto
connessi or connettei	connesso or connettuto
difesi or difendei	difeso or difenduto
fessi or fendei	fesso or fenduto
fissi or fisi	fisso, fitto, or fiso
fusi or fondei	fuso or fonduto
nascosi	nascoso or nascosto
persi or perdei	perso or perduto
piovve or piové	piovuto
presi or prendei	preso
rasi or raddei	raso
redensi or redimeî	redento
resi or rendei	reso or renduto
rilussi or rilucci	No Past Participle.
{risolsi, risolvei, or (risolvetti	risolto or risoluto
scersi or scernei	scerso or scernuto
vissi	vissuto or vivuto

### 3rd Conjugation.

**E.—Pres. Ind.** apparisco or appaio, apparisci, appa-  
or appare, appariamo\*, c, t, h, i. **Perf.** apparii or ap-  
or apparsi. **Past Part.** apparito or apparso.

—**Perf.** aprii or apersi. **Past Part.** aperto.

—**Pres. Ind.** cucio, cuci, cuce, cuciamo.

**CONVERTIRE and SOVERTIRE.—Perf.** conversi and sovversi.  
**Past Part.** converso and sovverso.

**Pres. Ind.** dico\*, dici, dice, diciamo. **Imperf.** diceva.  
dissi. **Past Part.** detto. See Note e, p. 32.

—**Pres. Ind.** empio or empisco, empî or empisci,  
o or empisce, empiamo.

**E and DIGERIRE.—Past Part.** esaurito or esausto,  
ito or digesto.

**E.—Perf.** instrussi or instruii. **Past Part.** instrutto  
struito.

—**Pres. Ind.** muoio or muoro, muori, muore, muoi-  
or moriamo.

**E or OFFRIRE.—Perf.** offerii or offrii or offersi. **Past**  
offerto.

—**Pres. Ind.** salgo or salisco, sali or salisci, sale or  
e, saliamo or sagliamo. **Perf.** salii or salsi.

—**Pres. Ind.** seguo or sieguo, segui or siegui, segue  
egue, seguiamo.

**IRE.—Past Part.** seppellito or sepolto.

—**Pres. Ind.** odo, odi, ode, udiamo.

—**Pres. Ind.** esco, esci, esce, usciamo.

**ST** is conjugated like tenere.

**Defective Verbs, Orthography of Verbs, Poetical and**  
**Obsolete Forms, see pp. 122, 126, 129, and 131.**



## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

N.B.—The verbs in parentheses are the models of conjugation.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

	Page		Page
<i>Addarsi</i> , to perceive, ( <i>dare</i> )....	59	<i>Ridare</i> , to give again, ( <i>dare</i> )...	59
<i>Affarsi</i> , to suit, ( <i>fare</i> ).....	60	<i>Rifare</i> , to do again, ( <i>fare</i> ).....	60
<i>Andare</i> , to go .....	57	<i>Ristare</i> , to stop, ( <i>stare</i> ) .....	61
<i>Assuefare</i> , to accustom, ( <i>fare</i> )..	60	<i>Soddisfare</i> , to satisfy, ( <i>fare</i> )...	60
<i>Confarsi</i> , to agree, ( <i>fare</i> ) .....	60	<i>Sopraffare</i> , to overpower, ( <i>fare</i> )..	60
<i>Contraffare</i> , to counterfeit ( <i>fare</i> )	60	<i>Soprastare</i> , to temporize,	
<i>Contrastare</i> , to stand close		( <i>stare</i> ) .....	61
against, ( <i>stare</i> ) .....	61	<i>Stare</i> , to stand .....	60
<i>Dare</i> , to give .....	58	<i>Strafare</i> , to do more than is	
<i>Fare</i> , to do, to make, 59, 130, 131		necessary, ( <i>fare</i> ).....	60
<i>Liquefare</i> , to melt, ( <i>fare</i> ) .....	60	<i>Stupefare</i> , to stupify, ( <i>fare</i> ) ...	60
<i>Misfare</i> , to do wrong, ( <i>fare</i> )...	60	<i>Trasandare</i> , to pass over,	
<i>Riandare</i> , to go again, to re-		( <i>andare</i> ) .....	58
pass, ( <i>andare</i> ).....	58		

See N.B., p. 61.

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION IN *ERE* (long.)

<i>Accadere</i> , to happen, ( <i>cadere</i> )..	73	<i>Disvolere</i> , to refuse, to say no,	
<i>Antivedere</i> , to foresee, ( <i>vedere</i> )..	76	( <i>volere</i> ) .....	67
<i>Appartenere</i> , to belong, ( <i>tenere</i> )..	83	<i>Divedere</i> , to demonstrate, ( <i>ve-</i>	
<i>Assedere</i> , to be sitting, ( <i>sedere</i> ,		<i>dere</i> ).....	76
Perf. <i>assisi</i> , & past part.		<i>Dolere</i> , to grieve, complain,	
<i>assiso</i> ) .....	75	( <i>dolersi</i> ) .....	78
<i>Astenere</i> , to abstain, ( <i>tenere</i> )..	83	<i>Dovere</i> , to owe, to be obliged.	67
<i>Attenere</i> , to attain ( <i>tenere</i> ) ...	83	<i>Equivalere</i> , to equal in worth,	
<i>Avere</i> , to have .....	19, 130, 131	( <i>valere</i> ) .....	80
<i>Avvedere</i> , to perceive, ( <i>vedere</i> )..	76	<i>Giacere</i> , to lie down .....	72
<i>Cadere</i> , to fall, drop .....	73	<i>Interteners</i> , to entertain, ( <i>te-</i>	
<i>Compiacere</i> , to please, ( <i>giacere</i> )..	73	<i>nerere</i> ) .....	83
<i>Condolere</i> , to condole, ( <i>dolere</i> )..	80	<i>Invalere</i> , to obtain, ( <i>valere</i> ) ...	81
<i>Contenere</i> , to contain, ( <i>tenere</i> )..	82	<i>Mantenere</i> , to keep ( <i>tenere</i> ) ...	83
<i>Decadere</i> , to decline, ( <i>cadere</i> )..	73	<i>Ottenere</i> , to obtain, ( <i>tenere</i> ) ...	83
<i>Detenere</i> , to detain, ( <i>tenere</i> )...	73	<i>Parere</i> , to appear .....	78
<i>Disparere</i> , to contest, ( <i>parere</i> )..	78	<i>Permanere</i> , to persevere, ( <i>ri-</i>	
<i>Dispiacere</i> , to displease, ( <i>giac-</i>		<i>manere</i> ) .....	82
<i>care</i> ) .....	73	<i>Persuadere</i> , to persuade .....	74
<i>Dissuadere</i> , to dissuade, ( <i>per-</i>		<i>Piacere</i> , to please, ( <i>giacere</i> ) ...	72
<i>suadere</i> ) .....	74	<i>Possedere</i> , to possess, ( <i>sedere</i> )..	75

	Page		Page
<i>Potere</i> , to be able.....	65, 130	<i>Rivedere</i> , to see again ( <i>vedere</i> ) ..	76
<i>Presedere</i> , ( <i>sedere</i> ) .....	75	<i>Rivolere</i> , to wish again ( <i>vo-</i>	
<i>Prevalere</i> , to prevail ( <i>valere</i> ) ..	81	lere) .....	67
<i>Prevedere</i> , to foresee ( <i>vedere</i> ) ..	76	<i>Sapere</i> , to know .....	68
<i>Provvedere</i> , to provide ( <i>vedere</i> ) ..	76	<i>Scadere</i> , to decay ( <i>cadere</i> ) ...	73
<i>Rattenere</i> , to arrest ( <i>tenere</i> ) ...	83	<i>Sedere</i> , to sit .....	74
<i>Ravvedere</i> , to repent ( <i>vedere</i> ) ..	76	<i>Soggiacere</i> , to succumb ( <i>giacere</i> ) .....	73
<i>Riavere</i> , to have back ( <i>avere</i> ) ...	19	<i>Sopressedere</i> , to temporize	
<i>Ricadere</i> , to fall again ( <i>cadere</i> ) ..	74	( <i>sedere</i> ) .....	75
<i>Ridolersi</i> , to complain again		<i>Sostenere</i> , to sustain ( <i>tenere</i> ) ..	83
( <i>dolere</i> ) .....	80	<i>Spiciere</i> , to displease ( <i>giacere</i> ) ..	73
<i>Ridovere</i> , to be obliged again		<i>Sprovedere</i> , not to provide for	
( <i>dovere</i> ) .....	68	( <i>vedere</i> ) .....	75
<i>Rimanere</i> , to remain .....	81	<i>Ticere</i> , to be silent ( <i>giacere</i> ) ..	73
<i>Ripiacere</i> , to please again ( <i>giacere</i> ) .....	68	<i>Tenere</i> , to hold .....	82
<i>Ripotere</i> , to be able again ( <i>potere</i> ) .....	66	<i>Trattenere</i> , to entertain ( <i>tenere</i> ) ..	83
<i>Risapere</i> , to know again ( <i>sapere</i> ) .....	60	<i>Travedere</i> , to see indistinctly	
<i>Riscdere</i> , to reside ( <i>sedere</i> ) ...	75	( <i>vedere</i> ) .....	76
<i>Ritenere</i> , to withhold ( <i>tenere</i> ) ..	83	<i>Valere</i> , to be worth.....	80
		<i>Vedere</i> , to see .....	76
		<i>Volere</i> , to be willing .....	66, 130

### VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION IN *ERE* (short).

N.B.—In this List are comprised also the verbs in *ere* short which differ from *credere* in the formation of the Perfect and Past Participle.

<i>Accendere</i> , to light, I. ....	98	<i>Apporre</i> , to put to ( <i>porre</i> ),	
<i>Accingersi</i> , to prepare oneself, II. ....	98	(Obs.) .....	92
<i>Accogliere</i> or <i>accorre</i> , to make welcome ( <i>cogliere</i> ), (Obs.) ...	90	<i>Ardere</i> , to burn, I. ....	98
<i>Accorgersi</i> , to perceive, II. ...	98	<i>Arrendersi</i> , to give oneself up, I. ....	98
<i>Accorrere</i> , to run to ( <i>correre</i> ), I. ....	98	<i>Arridere</i> , to smile, I. ....	98
<i>Accrescere</i> , to increase ( <i>crescere</i> ), VII. ....	98	<i>Ascendere</i> , to ascend, I. ....	98
<i>Addurre</i> (or <i>adducere</i> ), to bring. ....	87	<i>Ascondere</i> , to hide, (Obs. 5) ...	104
<i>Affigere</i> , to fix, (Obs. 3) .....	104	<i>Ascrivere</i> , to ascribe, III. ....	99
<i>Affligere</i> , to afflict, II. ....	98	<i>Aspergere</i> , to besprinkle, II. <sup>4</sup> ...	98
<i>Aggiungere</i> , to add, II. ....	98	<i>Assistere</i> , to assist, VII. <sup>8</sup> .....	99
<i>Alludere</i> , to allude, I. ....	98	<i>Assolvere</i> , to absolve, (Obs. 8). ....	104
<i>Anmettere</i> , to admit ( <i>mettere</i> ), VI. ....	98	<i>Assorbere</i> , to absorb, VII. ....	99
<i>Ancidere</i> , to kill, I. ....	98	<i>Assumere</i> , to undertake, V. ...	99
<i>Annettere</i> , to annex, (Obs. 2). ....	104	<i>Astergere</i> , to rub clean, II. ....	98
<i>Anteporre</i> , to prefer ( <i>porre</i> ) ...	92	<i>Astrarre</i> or <i>astrare</i> , to abstract	
<i>Appendere</i> , to hang, I. ....	98	( <i>trarre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	95
		<i>Astringere</i> , to constrain, II. ...	98
		<i>Attendere</i> , to attend, I. ....	98
		<i>Attingere</i> , to draw water, II. ...	98

	Page		Page
<i>Attorcere</i> , to twist ( <i>torcere</i> ), VII. <sup>12</sup> .....	99	<i>Contendere</i> , to contend, I.....	98
<i>Attrarre</i> , to attract ( <i>trarre</i> )....	95	<i>Contorcere</i> , to twist ( <i>torcere</i> ), VII. <sup>12</sup> .....	99
<i>Avvincere</i> , to tie ( <i>vincere</i> ), VII. <sup>12</sup> .....	99	<i>Contraporre</i> or <i>contraponere</i> , to oppose ( <i>porre</i> ).....	92
<i>Avvolgere</i> , to wrap, II. ....	98	<i>Contrarre</i> or <i>contraere</i> , to contract ( <i>trarre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	95
<i>Bevere</i> , to drink .....	88	<i>Convellere</i> , to cause distension, VII. <sup>9</sup> .....	99
<i>Chiedere</i> , to ask, I. <sup>1</sup> .....	98	<i>Convincere</i> , to convince ( <i>vincere</i> ), VII. <sup>12</sup> .....	99
<i>Chiudere</i> , to shut, I. ....	98	<i>Corre</i> , to gather .....	89
<i>Cingere</i> , to gird, (Obs.) .....	93	<i>Correggere</i> , to correct, II. ....	98
<i>Circoncidere</i> , to circumcise, I. ....	98	<i>Correre</i> , to run, I. ....	98
<i>Circonscrivere</i> , to circumscribe, III. ....	99	<i>Corrispondere</i> , to correspond ( <i>rispondere</i> ), I. ....	98
<i>Cogliere</i> or <i>corre</i> , to gather ...	89	<i>Corrodere</i> , to corrode, I. ....	98
<i>Commettere</i> , to commit ( <i>mettere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99	<i>Corrompere</i> , to corrupt, V.....	99
<i>Commuovere</i> , to move ( <i>muovere</i> ).....	91	<i>Cospargere</i> , to strew, II. <sup>4</sup> .....	98
<i>Compiangere</i> , to lament, pity, II.....	98	<i>Costringere</i> , to constrain, II... ..	98
<i>Comporre</i> , to compose ( <i>porre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	92	<i>Crescere</i> , to grow, VII. ....	99
<i>Comprendere</i> , to comprehend, I. ....	98	<i>Crocifiggere</i> , to crucify, (Obs. 3) .....	104
<i>Comprimere</i> , to press, IV.....	99	<i>Cuocere</i> , to cook .....	90
<i>Compromettere</i> , to compromise ( <i>mettere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99	<i>Decidere</i> , to decide, I.....	98
<i>Compungere</i> , to afflict, II.....	98	<i>Decrescere</i> , to decrease ( <i>cre-scere</i> ), VII. <sup>6</sup> .....	99
<i>Concedere</i> , to grant .....	104	<i>Dedurre</i> , to deduce ( <i>addurre</i> )....	86
<i>Conchiudere</i> or <i>concludere</i> , to conclude, I.....	98	<i>Deludere</i> , to delude, I. ....	98
<i>Concorrere</i> , to run together, I. ....	98	<i>Deporre</i> , to depose ( <i>porre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	92
<i>Concuocere</i> , to concoct ( <i>cuocere</i> ) .....	91	<i>Deprimere</i> , to depress, IV.....	99
<i>Concutere</i> , to shake, VII. <sup>7</sup> .....	99	<i>Deridere</i> , to deride, I.....	98
<i>Condiscendere</i> , to condescend, I. ....	98	<i>Descrivere</i> , to describe, III. ...	99
<i>Condurre</i> , to lead ( <i>addurre</i> ) ...	88	<i>Desistere</i> , to desist ( <i>existere</i> ), VI. <sup>8</sup> .....	99
<i>Configgere</i> , to fasten together, (Obs. 3) .....	104	<i>Detrarre</i> , to detract ( <i>trarre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	95
<i>Confondere</i> , to confound, (Obs. 4) .....	104	<i>Difendere</i> , to defend .....	104
<i>Congiungere</i> , to join with, II. ....	98	<i>Diffondere</i> , to spread ( <i>fondere</i> ), (Obs. 4) .....	104
<i>Connettere</i> , to connect .....	104	<i>Dimettere</i> , to discontinue ( <i>mettere</i> ), VI. <sup>10</sup> .....	99
<i>Conoscere</i> , to know, VII.....	99	<i>Dipignere</i> or <i>dipingere</i> , to depict, (Obs.) .....	93
<i>Conquidere</i> , to conquer, I. ....	98	<i>Dirigere</i> , to direct ( <i>negligere</i> ), II.....	98
<i>Consistere</i> , to consist ( <i>existere</i> ), VI. <sup>8</sup> .....	99	<i>Disapprendere</i> , to unlearn, I... ..	98
<i>Conspargere</i> or <i>cospargere</i> , to strew, II. <sup>4</sup> .....	98	<i>Discendere</i> , to descend, I. ....	98
<i>Consumere</i> , to consume, V. ...	99	<i>Disciogliere</i> or <i>disciorre</i> , to untie ( <i>cogliere</i> ), (Obs.) .....	90



	Page		Page
<i>Discorrere</i> , to discourse, I.....	98	<i>Illudere</i> , to deceive, I. ....	98
<i>Discutere</i> , to discuss, VII.....	99	<i>Imbevare</i> or <i>imbere</i> , to imbibe	
<i>Disgiungere</i> , to disjoin, II.....	98	( <i>bevare</i> ), (Obs.) .....	89
<i>Dismettere</i> , to dismiss ( <i>mettere</i> ), VI. <sup>10</sup> .....	99	<i>Immergere</i> , to dip, II. <sup>4</sup> .....	99
<i>Dismuovere</i> , to move ( <i>muovere</i> ),		<i>Impellere</i> , to impel ( <i>espellere</i> ),	
(Obs.) .....	91	VII. <sup>9</sup> .....	99
<i>Disperdere</i> , to scatter, (Obs. 6). 104		<i>Imporre</i> , to impose ( <i>porre</i> ),	
<i>Dispergere</i> , to disperse, II.....	98	(Obs.) .....	92
<i>Disporre</i> , to dispose ( <i>porre</i> ),		<i>Imprimere</i> , to print, IV.....	99
(Obs.) .....	92	<i>Includere</i> or <i>includere</i> , to in-	
<i>Dissolvere</i> , to dissolve, (Obs. 8). 104		clude, I. ....	98
<i>Distendere</i> , to distend, I. ...	98	<i>Incidere</i> , to engrave, I. ....	98
<i>Distinguere</i> , to distinguish, II. 98		<i>Incorrere</i> , to incur, I. ....	98
<i>Distogliere</i> or <i>distorre</i> , to dis-		<i>Increscere</i> , to displease ( <i>cre-</i>	
suaue ( <i>cogliere</i> ) .....	90	<i>scere</i> ), VII. <sup>6</sup> .....	99
<i>Distrarre</i> , to distract ( <i>trarre</i> ). 85		<i>Incutere</i> , to strike, VII. <sup>7</sup> ....	99
<i>Distruggere</i> , to destroy, II.....	98	<i>Indurre</i> , to induce ( <i>addurre</i> )... 88	
<i>Disvellere</i> or <i>divellere</i> , to tear		<i>Infiggere</i> , to drive in, (Obs. 3). 104	
asunder ( <i>svellere</i> ), (Obs.) ... 94		<i>Infingere</i> , to feign, II.....	98
<i>Dividere</i> , to divide, I.....	98	<i>Infondere</i> , to infuse, (Obs. 4)... 104	
<i>Eleggere</i> , to elect, II.....	98	<i>Infrangere</i> , to break, II.....	98
<i>Elidere</i> , to contract, I. ....	98	<i>Inframettere</i> , to put between	
<i>Eludere</i> , to elude, I. ....	98	( <i>mettere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99
<i>Ergere</i> , to erect, II. ....	98	<i>Ingiungere</i> , to enjoin, II. ....	98
<i>Erigere</i> , to raise up, II.....	98	<i>Inscrivere</i> , to inscribe, III.....	99
<i>Escludere</i> , to exclude, I. ....	98	<i>Insistere</i> , to insist ( <i>esistere</i> ),	
<i>Esigere</i> , to exact, II. <sup>4</sup> .....	98	VII. <sup>8</sup> .....	99
<i>Esistere</i> , to exist, VI.....	99	<i>Insorgere</i> , to rise up, II.....	98
<i>Espellere</i> , to expel, VII.....	99	<i>Intendere</i> , to hear, I. ....	98
<i>Esporre</i> , to expose ( <i>porre</i> ),		<i>Intercedere</i> , to intercede (Obs.	
(Obs.) .....	92	1) .....	104
<i>Esprimere</i> , to express, IV. ....	99	<i>Intermettere</i> , to discontinue	
<i>Essere</i> , to be ..... 12, 129, 131		( <i>mettere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99
<i>Estendere</i> , to extend, I. ....	98	<i>Interporre</i> , to interpose ( <i>porre</i> )	
<i>Estinguere</i> , to extinguish, II... 98		<i>Interrompere</i> , to interrupt, VI. 99	
<i>Estrarre</i> , to extract ( <i>trarre</i> ) ... 85		<i>Intingere</i> , to dip, II. ....	98
<i>Fendere</i> , to split .....	104	<i>Intraprendere</i> , to undertake, I. 98	
<i>Figgere</i> , to fix .....	104	<i>Intridere</i> , to dilute, I.....	98
<i>Fingere</i> , to feign, II. ....	90	<i>Introdurre</i> , to introduce ( <i>ad-</i>	
<i>Fondere</i> , to melt .....	104	<i>durre</i> ) .....	88
<i>Frammettere</i> , to put between		<i>Intramettere</i> , to interpose ( <i>met-</i>	
( <i>mettere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99	<i>tere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99
<i>Frangere</i> , to break, II. ....	98	<i>Intrudere</i> , to intrude, I.....	98
<i>Frapporre</i> , to put between		<i>Invadere</i> , to invade, I. ....	98
( <i>porre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	92	<i>Ledere</i> , to offend, I.....	98
<i>Friggere</i> , to fry, II.....	98	<i>Leggere</i> , to read, III. ....	99
<i>Genuflettere</i> , to bend the knee,		<i>Manomettere</i> , to manumit, to	
VI. <sup>7</sup> .....	99	emancipate ( <i>mettere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> 99	
<i>Giugnere</i> or <i>giungere</i> , to arrive,		<i>Mergere</i> , to plunge ( <i>torgere</i> ),	
II.....	98	II. <sup>3</sup> .....	98
		<i>Mettere</i> , to put, VII. ....	99

	Page		Page
<i>Mordere</i> , to bite, I.....	98	<i>Proporre</i> , to propose ( <i>porre</i> ),	
<i>Muovere</i> , to move, (Obs.) .....	91	(Obs.) .....	92
<i>Mungere</i> , to milk, II. ....	98	<i>Prorompere</i> , to break forth, VI.	99
<i>Nascere</i> , to be born, VII. ....	99	<i>Prosciogliere</i> , to untie ( <i>cogliere</i> )	90
<i>Nascondere</i> , to hide, I. ....	98	<i>Proscrivere</i> , to proscribe, III...	99
<i>Negligere</i> , to neglect, II. <sup>3</sup> .....	98	<i>Prostendere</i> , to prostrate, I. ...	98
<i>Nuocere</i> , to hurt, VII. (Obs.)...	99	<i>Proteggere</i> , to protect, III. ...	99
<i>Occorrere</i> , to occur, to require,		<i>Protrarre</i> , to prolong ( <i>trarre</i> ),	
I. <sup>2</sup> .....	98	(Obs.) .....	95
<i>Offendere</i> , to offend, I.....	98	<i>Pungere</i> , to prick, II. ....	98
<i>Omettere</i> , to omit ( <i>mettere</i> ),		<i>Raccendere</i> , to light again, I...	98
VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99	<i>Racchiudere</i> , to shut up, I.....	98
<i>Opporre</i> , to oppose ( <i>porre</i> ),		<i>Raccogliere</i> or <i>raccorre</i> , to ga-	
(Obs.) .....	92	ther again ( <i>cogliere</i> ) .....	90
<i>Opprimere</i> , to oppress, IV.....	99	<i>Radere</i> , to shave.....	104
<i>Percorrere</i> , to run over, I. ....	98	<i>Raggiungere</i> , to rejoin, II. ....	98
<i>Percuotere</i> , to strike, (Obs.) ...	91	<i>Ravvolgere</i> , to fold, II. ....	98
<i>Perdere</i> , to lose .....	104	<i>Reassumere</i> or <i>riassumere</i> , to	
<i>Permettere</i> , to permit ( <i>mettere</i> ),		re-assume, V. ....	99
VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99	<i>Recidere</i> , to cut, I. ....	98
<i>Persistere</i> , to persist ( <i>esistere</i> ),		<i>Redimere</i> , to redeem .....	104
VII. <sup>8</sup> .....	99	<i>Reggere</i> , to rule, III. ....	99
<i>Piangere</i> , to weep, II. (Obs.)...	93	<i>Rendere</i> , to render .....	104
<i>Pingere</i> or <i>pignere</i> , to paint, II.		<i>Repellere</i> , to repel, VII. <sup>9</sup> .....	99
<i>Piovare</i> , to rain .....	104	<i>Reprimere</i> , to repress, IV. ....	99
<i>Porgere</i> , to present, II. ....	98	<i>Rescrivere</i> or <i>riscrivere</i> , to write	
<i>Porre</i> , to put .....	91	again, III. ....	99
<i>Posporre</i> , to think less of		<i>Resistere</i> , to resist ( <i>esistere</i> ),	
( <i>porre</i> ) .....	92	VII. <sup>8</sup> .....	99
<i>Precedere</i> , to cut off, I. ....	98	<i>Respingere</i> , to drive back, II...	98
<i>Precorrere</i> , to forerun, I. ....	98	<i>Riaccendere</i> , to light again, I.	98
<i>Prefiggere</i> , to prefix, (Obs. 3)...	104	<i>Riardere</i> , to burn again, I.....	98
<i>Premettere</i> , to premise ( <i>met-</i>		<i>Richiedere</i> , to require, I.....	98
<i>tere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99	<i>Richiudere</i> , to shut up, I. ....	98
<i>Prendere</i> , to take .....	104	<i>Ricingere</i> , to surround, II.....	98
<i>Preporre</i> , to prefer ( <i>porre</i> ).....	92	<i>Ricogliere</i> , to gather ( <i>cogliere</i> )	90
<i>Prescegliere</i> , to choose ( <i>cog-</i>		<i>Ricomporre</i> , to compose again	
<i>liere</i> ) .....	90	( <i>porre</i> ) .....	92
<i>Prescrivere</i> , to prescribe, III...	99	<i>Ricondurre</i> , to conduct back	
<i>Presumere</i> , to presume, V. ...	99	( <i>addurre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	88
<i>Pretendere</i> , to pretend, I. ....	98	<i>Ricongiungere</i> , to rejoin, II. ...	98
<i>Pretermettere</i> , to omit ( <i>met-</i>		<i>Riconoscere</i> , to recognise ( <i>co-</i>	
<i>tere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99	<i>noscere</i> ), VII. <sup>5</sup> .....	99
<i>Produrre</i> , to produce ( <i>addurre</i> )	88	<i>Ricorrere</i> , to have recourse to, I.	98
<i>Profondere</i> , to dissipate ( <i>fon-</i>		<i>Ricorreggere</i> , to correct again,	
<i>dere</i> ), I. ....	98	III. ....	99
<i>Promettere</i> , to promise ( <i>met-</i>		<i>Ricrescere</i> , to increase ( <i>ores-</i>	
<i>tere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99	<i>cere</i> ), VII. <sup>6</sup> .....	99
<i>Promovere</i> , to promote ( <i>muo-</i>		<i>Ricuocere</i> , to cook again ( <i>cuo-</i>	
<i>vere</i> ), (Obs.).....	91	<i>cere</i> ), (Obs.) .....	91

	Page		Page
<i>Ridere</i> , to laugh, I.....	98	<i>Scegliere</i> or <i>scerre</i> , to choose, (cogliere), (Obs.).....	90
<i>Bidurre</i> , to reduce ( <i>addurre</i> )...	88	<i>Scendere</i> , to descend, I.....	98
<i>Rifondere</i> , to repay ( <i>fondere</i> ), (Obs. 4) .....	104	<i>Scernere</i> , to discern .....	104
<i>Rifrangere</i> , to reflect or refract, II.....	98	<i>Schiudere</i> , to open, I.....	98
<i>Rifriggere</i> , to fry anew, III. ...	99	<i>Scindere</i> , to sever, I. <sup>1</sup> .....	98
<i>Rifulgere</i> , to shine, II. <sup>4</sup> .....	98	<i>Sciogliere</i> or <i>sciorre</i> , to untie (cogliere) .....	90
<i>Rigiugnere</i> or <i>rigiungere</i> , to rejoin, II.....	98	<i>Scomettere</i> , to bet ( <i>mettere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99
<i>Rileggere</i> , to read anew, III....	99	<i>Scomporre</i> , to derange ( <i>porre</i> ) .....	92
<i>Rilucere</i> , to shine .....	104	<i>Sconfiggere</i> , to conquer, (Obs.3) .....	104
<i>Rimettere</i> , to differ ( <i>mettere</i> ), VI. <sup>10</sup> .....	99	<i>Sconfondere</i> , to confound, (Obs. 4) .....	104
<i>Rimordere</i> , to bite again, I. ...	98	<i>Sconnettere</i> , to disjoin, (Obs. 2) .....	104
<i>Rimuovere</i> , to remove, (Obs.) ..	91	<i>Scontorcere</i> , to wrest ( <i>torcere</i> ), VII. <sup>12</sup> .....	99
<i>Rinascere</i> , to be born anew ( <i>nascere</i> ), VII. <sup>11</sup> .....	99	<i>Sconvolgere</i> , to overturn, II. ...	98
<i>Rinchiudere</i> , to shut in, I. ....	98	<i>Scorgere</i> , to perceive, II. ....	98
<i>Rincredere</i> , to displease ( <i>credere</i> ), VII. <sup>6</sup> .....	99	<i>Scrivere</i> , to write, III.....	99
<i>Rinvolgere</i> , to envelope, II. ...	98	<i>Scuotere</i> , to shake off, (Obs.) ..	91
<i>Ripercuotere</i> , to strike anew, (Obs.) .....	91	<i>Sedurre</i> , to seduce ( <i>addurre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	88
<i>Riporre</i> , to replace ( <i>porre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	92	<i>Smungere</i> , to drain, II. ....	98
<i>Riprendere</i> , to retake, I.....	98	<i>Smuovere</i> , to remove, (Obs.)...	91
<i>Riprodurre</i> , to reproduce ( <i>addurre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	88	<i>Socchiudere</i> , to half shut, I. ...	98
<i>Ripromettere</i> , to promise anew ( <i>mettere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99	<i>Soccorrere</i> , to succour, I. <sup>2</sup> ....	98
<i>Riscrivere</i> , to write anew, III. ...	99	<i>Soggiungere</i> or <i>soggiugnere</i> , to add to, II.....	98
<i>Riscuotere</i> , to demand, (Obs.) ..	91	<i>Sommergere</i> , to sink, II.....	98
<i>Risolvere</i> , to resolve .....	104	<i>Sommettere</i> , to submit ( <i>mettere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99
<i>Risorgere</i> , to rise again, II.....	98	<i>Sopporre</i> , to subdue ( <i>porre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	92
<i>Rispingere</i> } to drive back }	98	<i>Sopraggiungere</i> , to supervene, II.....	98
<i>Rispingere</i> } again, II. }	98	<i>Sopraporre</i> , to put over ( <i>porre</i> ) ..	92
<i>Rispondere</i> , to reply, I. ....	98	<i>Soprascrivere</i> , to superscribe, III. ....	99
<i>Ristringere</i> , to restrain, tie, II. ...	98	<i>Sopravvivere</i> , to survive, (Obs. 10) .....	104
<i>Ritingere</i> , to die again, II.....	98	<i>Sopprimere</i> , to suppress, IV....	99
<i>Ritogliere</i> , to retake ( <i>cogliere</i> ) ..	90	<i>Soprintendere</i> , to superintend, I. ....	98
<i>Ritorcere</i> , to retort ( <i>torcere</i> ), VII. <sup>12</sup> .....	99	<i>Sorgere</i> , to rise, II.....	98
<i>Ritrarre</i> , to withdraw ( <i>trarre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	95	<i>Sorprendere</i> , to surprise, I.....	98
<i>Rivivere</i> , to revive, (Obs. 10) ...	104	<i>Sorreggere</i> , to sustain, III.....	99
<i>Rivolgere</i> , to turn back, II.....	98	<i>Sorridere</i> , to smile, I.....	98
<i>Rodere</i> , to gnaw, I.....	98	<i>Soscrivere</i> , to subscribe, III....	99
<i>Rompere</i> , to break, VI. ....	99		

	Page		Page
<i>Sospendere</i> , to suspend, I.....	98	<i>Sussistere</i> , to subsist ( <i>esistere</i> ), VII. <sup>8</sup> .....	99
<i>Sospingere</i> or <i>sospignere</i> , to push, II. ....	98	<i>Svellere</i> or <i>sverre</i> , to tear up... ..	98
<i>Sottintendere</i> , to leave understood, I. ....	98	<i>Svolgere</i> , to turn away, II.....	98
<i>Sottomettere</i> or <i>sommettere</i> , to submit ( <i>mettere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99	<i>Tendere</i> , to extend, I.....	98
<i>Sottoporre</i> , to put under ( <i>porre</i> )	92	<i>Tergere</i> , to wipe, II. <sup>4</sup> .....	98
<i>Sottoscrivere</i> , to subscribe, III.	99	<i>Tingere</i> , to dye, (Obs.) .....	98
<i>Sottrarre</i> , to subtract ( <i>trarre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	95	<i>Togliere</i> or <i>torre</i> , to take ( <i>cogliere</i> ), (Obs.) .....	90
<i>Sovraggiungere</i> , to come upon, II.....	98	<i>Torcere</i> , to twist, VII.....	99
<i>Spandere</i> , to spill, I. <sup>1</sup> .....	98	<i>Tradurre</i> , to translate ( <i>ad-durre</i> ) .....	88
<i>Spargere</i> , to scatter, II. <sup>4</sup> .....	98	<i>Trafiggere</i> , to pierce, (Obs. 3)... ..	104
<i>Spegnere</i> or <i>spengere</i> , to extinguish .....	92	<i>Tramettere</i> , to put between ( <i>mettere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99
<i>Spendere</i> , to spend, I.....	98	<i>Trarre</i> or <i>traere</i> , to draw .....	94
<i>Spergere</i> , to disperse, II. <sup>3</sup> .....	98	<i>Trascegliere</i> or <i>trascerre</i> , to choose ( <i>cogliere</i> ) .....	90
<i>Spingere</i> or <i>spignere</i> , to push, II.....	98	<i>Trascendere</i> , to surpass, I.....	98
<i>Sporgere</i> , to project, II.....	98	<i>Trascorrere</i> , to go beyond, I... ..	98
<i>Stendere</i> , to stretch, II.....	98	<i>Trascrivere</i> , to transcribe, III.	99
<i>Storcere</i> , to wrest ( <i>torcere</i> ), VII. <sup>12</sup> .....	99	<i>Trasfondere</i> , to transfuse, (Obs. 4) .....	104
<i>Stracciucere</i> , to overcook ( <i>cuocere</i> ), (Obs.) .....	91	<i>Trasmettere</i> , to transmit ( <i>mettere</i> ), VII. <sup>10</sup> .....	99
<i>Stravolgere</i> , to twist round, II.	98	<i>Trasporre</i> , to transpose ( <i>porre</i> )	92
<i>Stringere</i> or <i>strignere</i> , to bind, II. <sup>3</sup> .....	98	<i>Travolgere</i> , to turn upside down, II.....	98
<i>Struggere</i> , to dissolve, III.....	99	<i>Uccidere</i> , to kill, I. ....	98
<i>Subdividere</i> , to subdivide, I... ..	98	<i>Ungere</i> or <i>ugnere</i> , to anoint, (Obs.) .....	93
<i>Succedere</i> , to succeed, (Obs. 1)	104	<i>Vilipendere</i> , to despise, I.....	98
<i>Suggere</i> , to suck, III. <sup>5</sup> .....	99	<i>Vincere</i> , to conquer, VII. ....	99
<i>Supporre</i> , to suppose ( <i>porre</i> ), (Obs.) .....	92	<i>Vivere</i> , to live .....	104
		<i>Volgere</i> , to turn, II. ....	98

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IRE*.

<i>Addivenire</i> , to suit ( <i>venire</i> ) ...	119	<i>Benedire</i> , to bless ( <i>dire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	111
<i>Apparire</i> , to appear .....	108	<i>Circonvenire</i> , to circumvent ( <i>venire</i> ) .....	119
<i>Aprire</i> , to open .....	109	<i>Comparire</i> , to appear ( <i>apparire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	109
<i>Assalire</i> , to assault ( <i>salire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	115	<i>Consequire</i> , to obtain ( <i>seguir</i> ), (Obs.) .....	116
<i>Assorbire</i> , to absorb ( <i>assorbere</i> ), VIII.....	91		
<i>Avvenire</i> , to happen ( <i>venire</i> )...	119		

	Page		Page
<i>Construire</i> or <i>costruire</i> , to con- strue ( <i>instruire</i> ), (N.B.) .....	113	<i>Riapparire</i> , to re-appear ( <i>ap- parire</i> ) .....	108
<i>Contradire</i> , to contradict ( <i>dire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	111	<i>Riaprire</i> , to re-open ( <i>aprire</i> ), (N.B.) .....	109
<i>Contravvenire</i> , to contravene ( <i>venire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	119	<i>Ribenedire</i> , to bless anew ( <i>dire</i> ) .....	111
<i>Convenire</i> , to suit ( <i>venire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	119	<i>Ricoprire</i> , to cover anew ( <i>ap- rire</i> ) .....	109
<i>Convertire</i> , to convert .....	110	<i>Ricucire</i> , to sew again ( <i>cucire</i> ), (N.B.) .....	110
<i>Coprire</i> , to cover ( <i>aprire</i> ), (N.B.) .....	109	<i>Ridire</i> , to say anew ( <i>dire</i> ) .....	111
<i>Cucire</i> , to sew .....	110	<i>Blescire</i> , to go out again ( <i>us- cire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	118
<i>Digerire</i> , to digest .....	112	<i>Rinvenire</i> , to find again ( <i>venire</i> ) .....	119
<i>Dire</i> , to say .....	111	<i>Risalire</i> , to go up again ( <i>salire</i> ) .....	115
<i>Discoprire</i> , to discover ( <i>aprire</i> ) .....	110	<i>Risovvenire</i> , to remember ( <i>ve- nire</i> ) .....	119
<i>Disconvenire</i> , to be unfit ( <i>ve- nire</i> ) .....	119	<i>Rivenire</i> , to return ( <i>venire</i> ) ..	119
<i>Discucire</i> , to unsew ( <i>cucire</i> ), (N.B.) .....	110	<i>Riuscire</i> , to succeed ( <i>uscire</i> ) ..	118
<i>Disdire</i> , to unsay ( <i>dire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	111	<i>Salire</i> , to go up .....	114
<i>Divenire</i> , to become ( <i>venire</i> ) ..	119	<i>Scomparire</i> , to disappear ( <i>ap- parire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	109
<i>Empire</i> , to fill .....	112	<i>Sconvenire</i> , to be unfit ( <i>venire</i> ) ..	119
<i>Esaurire</i> , to exhaust .....	112	<i>Scoprire</i> , to discover ( <i>aprire</i> ) ..	109
<i>Escire</i> , to go out ( <i>uscire</i> ) .....	117	<i>Scucire</i> , to unsew ( <i>cucire</i> ); (N.B.) .....	110
<i>Inseguire</i> , to prosecute ( <i>se- guire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	116	<i>Sdrucire</i> or <i>sdruscire</i> , to rip a seam ( <i>cucire</i> ), (N.B.) .....	110
<i>Instruire</i> , to instruct, (N.B.) ..	113	<i>Seguire</i> , to follow .....	115
<i>Interdire</i> , to interdict ( <i>dire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	111	<i>Seppellire</i> , to bury .....	116
<i>Intervenire</i> , to intervene ( <i>ve- nire</i> ) .....	119	<i>Soffrire</i> or <i>sofferire</i> , to suffer ( <i>offrire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	114
<i>Invenire</i> , to find ( <i>venire</i> ) .....	119	<i>Sopravvenire</i> , to supervene ( <i>ve- nire</i> ) .....	119
<i>Maldire</i> , to speak ill of ( <i>dire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	111	<i>Sovvenire</i> , to assist ( <i>venire</i> ) ..	119
<i>Morire</i> , to die .....	113	<i>Sovvenirsi</i> , to remember ( <i>ve- nire</i> ) .....	119
<i>Offrire</i> , to offer .....	114	<i>Sovvertire</i> , to subvert .....	110
<i>Pervenire</i> , to reach ( <i>venire</i> ) ..	119	<i>Sparire</i> , to disappear ( <i>ap- parire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	109
<i>Predire</i> , to predict ( <i>dire</i> ) .....	111	<i>Sussequire</i> , to follow imme- diately after ( <i>sequire</i> ) .....	116
<i>Premorire</i> , to die before ( <i>mo- rire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	114	<i>Svenire</i> , to faint ( <i>venire</i> ) .....	119
<i>Prevenire</i> , to anticipate ( <i>venire</i> ) ..	119	<i>Udire</i> , to hear .....	116
<i>Prosequire</i> , to follow on ( <i>sequire</i> ), (Obs.) .....	116	<i>Uscire</i> , to go out .....	117
<i>Provenire</i> , to come from ( <i>ve- nire</i> ) .....	119	<i>Venire</i> , to come .....	118

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

	Page		Page
<i>Algere</i> , to be cold, freeze .....	122	<i>Molcere</i> , to soothe .....	124
<i>Ambire</i> , to crave.....	126	<i>Olire</i> , to be fragrant .....	124
<i>Angere</i> , to afflict.....	122	<i>Pavere</i> , to fear .....	124
<i>Ardire</i> , to dare .....	126	<i>Recere</i> , to be sick .....	124
<i>Arrogere</i> , to add .....	122	<i>Riedere</i> , to return .....	124
<i>Calere</i> , to care.....	123	<i>Serpere</i> , to creep.....	124
<i>Capere</i> , to contain .....	123	<i>Silere</i> , to be silent .....	125
<i>Cherere</i> , to ask .....	123	<i>Soffolcere</i> , to support .....	125
<i>Colere</i> , to worship, revere.....	123	<i>Solere</i> , to be wont .....	125
<i>Estollere</i> , to raise, exalt.....	123	<i>Stupere</i> , to be astonished .....	125
<i>Fiedere</i> , to smite.....	123	<i>Tangere</i> , to touch .....	125
<i>Folcire</i> , to prop up .....	123	<i>Tollere</i> , to take away.....	125
<i>Gire</i> , to go .....	123	<i>Torpere</i> , to become numb .....	125
<i>Ire</i> , to go.....	124	<i>Urgere</i> , to press .....	125
<i>Licere</i> or <i>lecere</i> , to be lawful...	124	<i>Vigere</i> , to be vigorous .....	126
<i>Lucere</i> , to shine .....	124		

# VOCABULARY.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

act. ... active.	imp. .... impersonal.	p. .... page.
adj. ... adjective.	ind. .... indefinite.	pl. .... plural.
adv. ... adverb.	m. .... masculine.	pron. .... pronoun.
conj. .... conjunction.	No. .... number.	sing. .... singular.
f. .... feminine.	n. .... noun.	v. .... verb.
	neut. .... neuter.	

## I. ENGLISH-ITALIAN.

### A.

A, *un, uno, una, un'*. See p. 145.

Abandon (to), *abbandonare*.

Able (to be), *potere*.

About, *circa, all' incirca*; (= concerning), *intorno a*.

Abroad (adj.), *in viaggio*.

Abroad (to be or go), *viaggiare*.

Accompany (to), *accompagnare*.

According to, *secondo*.

Account, *informazione*; (= bill), *conto*; (= story), *racconto*.

Accustom oneself to (to), *abituarsi a, avvezzarsi a*.

Accustomed (to be), *esser solito, solere*.

Ache (to), *dolere*. See Note e, p. 79.

Acquaint (to), (act.), *far conoscere a, or sapere a*.

Acquaintance, *conoscenza*.

Acquainted with (to be), *conoscere, sapere*. See Note b, p. 68.

Act, *atto*.

Add, *aggiungere*.

Address, *indirizzo, recapito*.

Admiral, *ammiraglio*.

Adonis, *Adone*.

Adorn (to), *adornare*.

Advice, *avviso, consiglio*.

Afraid (to be), *avere paura, temere*.

After, *dopo*; afterwards, *in appresso, poi*; (= according to), *secondo*.

Afternoon, *dopopranzo*.

Again, *ancora, da capo, di nuovo*.

Ago, *fa*.

Agree (to), *convenire*.

Air, *aria*.

Albert, *Alberto*.

Alfred, *Alfredo*.

All, *tutto, -a*; ind. pron., *tutto* (for things), *tutti* (for persons).

Allowed (to be), *licere*.

Almost, *quasi, pressochè*.

Already, *già*.

Also, *anche*.

Always, *sempre*.

Amount, *montante* (m.).

Amuse (to), *divertire*.

Amusement, *divertimento*.

Ancient, *antico, -a*.

And, *e*. Obs. 1, p. 248.

Animal, *animale* (m.).  
 Another, *un altro, un' altra*.  
 Answer (to), *rispondere* (neut.).  
 Anteroom, *anticamera*.  
 Any (indef.), *alcuno, qualche, qualunque*; (partitive), *del, dei, &c.*  
 Any body, any one, *alcuno, -a*; *qualcuno, -a*.  
 Any thing, *niente, nulla*.  
 Apartment, *stanza*.  
 Appear (to), *parere*.  
 Appetite, *appetito*.  
 Apple, *mela*.  
 Architecture, *architettura*.  
 Armchair, *poltrona*.  
 Arrive (to), *arrivare, giungere*.  
 Art, *arte* (f.).  
 Article, *articolo*.  
 As, *come, siccome*. See p. 161.  
 As far as, *fino a*.  
 As if, *quasi*.  
 As much...as, *tanto...quanto*.  
 As soon as, *tosto che*.  
 Ascend (to), *salire su*.  
 Ashamed (to be), *avere vergogna, vergognarsi*.  
 Ask (to), *chiedere, domandare a*; ask after, *domandare di*; ask for, *domandare* (act.).  
 Aspect, *aspetto*.  
 Ass, *asino*.  
 Assist (to), *aiutare, assistere*.  
 Astronomer, *astronomo*.  
 At, *a*; at Paris, *in Parigi*; at what o'clock, *a che ora*; at seven o'clock, *alle sette (ore)*; at all, *punto*.  
 At first, *in prima, da prima*; at last, *al fine*.  
 At least, *almeno*.  
 At once, *subito*.  
 At present, *adesso, ora*.  
 At the, *al, &c.* See p. 8.  
 Attic, *soffitta*.  
 Aunt, *zia*.  
 Autumn, *autunno*.  
 Awake (to), *svegliare* (act.); to awake one's self, *svegliarsi*.  
 Axe, *scure* (f.).

## B.

Bad, *cattivo, -a*; badly, *male*.  
 Baker, *fornaio*.  
 Ballet, *ballo*.  
 Baptism, *battesimo*.  
 Bark (to), *abbaiare, latrare*.  
 Bat (anim.), *pipistrello*.  
 Be, *essere*; to be afraid, *temere, avere paura*. In idioms, *stare, &c.* See Voc., p. 63; to be off, *partire*; to be over, *esser passato, finito*.  
 Beat (to), *battere*.  
 Beautiful, *bel, &c.* (see p. 157); *vago*; beautifully, *vagamente, a meraviglia*.  
 Beauty, *bellezza*.  
 Because, *perchè*.  
 Become accustomed (to), *avvez- zarsi*.  
 Bed, *letto*.  
 Bee, *ape* (f.).  
 Before (of time), *avanti, prima*; (of place), *davanti, dinanzi*.  
 Begin (to), *cominciare, mettersi a*.  
 Behave well (to), *diportarsi bene*.  
 Behind, *dietro*.  
 Believe (to), *credere*.  
 Bellow (to), *muggire*.  
 Belong, *appartenere*.  
 Berlin, *Berlino*.  
 Besides (conj.), *e poi, d' al- tronde*.  
 Best, *il migliore, ottimo*.  
 Better (adj.), *migliore*; (adv.) *meglio*; I am better, *sto me- glio*.  
 Beyond, *al di là, fuori, oltre*.  
 Bid (to) (= command), *imporre a*.  
 Bill (= account), *conto, cartello*.  
 Binding, *legatura*.  
 Bird, *uccello*.  
 Black, *nero*.  
 Blanc (white), *bianco*; Mont Blanc, *Monte Bianco*.  
 Bleat (to), *belare*.  
 Blow (to), *soffiare, spirare*.  
 Boast (to), *vantarsi*.  
 Boat, *battello*.



Boil (to), *bollire*.  
 Bone, *osso*, (pl. m.) *ossi*, (pl. f.) *ossa*.  
 Bonnet, *cappellino*.  
 Book, *libro*.  
 Boot, *stivale* (m.).  
 Born (to be), *nascere*.  
 Both, *ambo*, -e; *ambeduo*, -e;  
*l'uno e l'altro*; *tutti e due*;  
*entrambi*.  
 Box, *scatola*; (of a theatre),  
*palco*.  
 Boy, *ragazzo*.  
 Bracelet, *braccialetto*.  
 Bray (to), *ragliare*.  
 Bread, *pane* (m.).  
 Break (to), *rompere*.  
 Break of day, *spuntar del*  
*giorno*.  
 Breakfast, *colazione*; to break-  
 fast, *far colazione*.  
 Bride, *sposa*.  
 Bridegroom, *sposo*.  
 Bring (to), *portare*.  
 Brooch, *spillone* (m.).  
 Brother, *fratello*; brother-in-  
 law, *cognato*.  
 Build (to), *fabbricare*.  
 Builder, *muratore*, *mastro mura-*  
*tore*.  
 Building, *fabbricato*, *edificio*.  
 Bunch, *grappolo*.  
 Burn (to), *abbruciare*; to burn  
 down the house, *abbruciare la*  
*casa*.  
 Bury (to), *seppellire*.  
 Business, *affare* (m.).  
 But, *ma*, *però*.  
 Buy (to), *comprare*.  
 By (denoting agent, and after  
 passive participle), *da*, *con*;  
 denoting means, *per*; by  
 sight, *di vista*.  
 By the bye, *a proposito*.

## C.

Cabman, *vetturino*.  
 Café, *caffè* (m.).  
 Cake, *focaccia*.  
 Call (to), *chiamare*; to call on  
 a person, *passare da uno*.

Can (I), *posso*. See p. 65.  
 Cap (man's), *berretta*.  
 Capital, *capitale* (f.).  
 Capitol, *Campidoglio*.  
 Card (visiting), *biglietto di vi-*  
*sita*.  
 Care (to), *calere*.  
 Carpet, *tappeto da (pavimento)*.  
 Carriage, *carrozza*; in a car-  
 riage, *in carrozza*.  
 Carry (to), *portare*; to carry  
 back, *riportare*.  
 Carve (to), *intagliare*; to carve  
 at table, *trinciare*.  
 Carved, *intagliato*.  
 Case, *cassa*.  
 Castle, *castello*.  
 Cat, *gatto*.  
 Cathedral, *cattedrale* (f.); the  
 cathedral of St. Peter's at  
 Rome, *la basilica di San*  
*Pietro di Roma*; Milan ca-  
 thedral, *il duomo di Milano*.  
 Celebrated, *celebre*.  
 Central, *centrale*.  
 Century, *secolo*.  
 Certainly, *certamente*.  
 Chain, *catena*.  
 Chaplain, *cappellano*.  
 Charge (to), *fare pagare a*.  
 Charge, *consegna*; to deliver  
 into the charge of, *dare in*  
*consegna a*.  
 Charles, *Carlo*, *Carlino* (dim.).  
 Cheap, *a buon mercato*.  
 Cheerfulness, *ilarità*.  
 Chest, *petto*.  
 Chiefly, *principalmente*.  
 Child, *fanciullo*, *figlio*, *bambino*.  
 Chirp (to), *garrire*.  
 Christmas, *Natale* (m.).  
 Church, *chiesa*.  
 Citizen, *cittadino*.  
 City, *città*.  
 Clean, *pulito*.  
 Clear, *chiaro*.  
 Clever, *bravo*.  
 Climate, *clima* (m.).  
 Cloth, *panno*.  
 Clothes, *vestiti* (pl.); linen  
 clothes, *pannilini*; bed clothes,  
*coltre* (f. sing.).

Cluck (to), *chiocciare*.  
 Coach, *veitura*; mail-coach, *posta, diligenza*.  
 Coat, *vestito*.  
 Cock, *gallo*.  
 Coffee, *caffè* (m.); coffee-house, (*bottega di*) *caffè*.  
 Cold (to be), *aver freddo*; to be cold weather, *far freddo*; to have a cold, *avere un' infreddatura*.  
 Cold (adj.), *freddo, -a*; a cold, *un' infreddatura* (n.).  
 Come (to), *venire*; to come again, *ricomire*; to come near, *avvicinarsi di*; to come to, *ammontare*; come in, *avanti*.  
 Commit, *confetto*.  
 Comfort, *comodo*.  
 Comfortable, *comodo, -a*.  
 Commence (to), *cominciare, principiare*.  
 Commerce, *commercio*.  
 Company, *compagnia*.  
 Complain (to), *lagnarsi*.  
 Compliment, *complimento*.  
 Comply with anyone's request (to), *contentare uno*.  
 Compose (to), *comporre*.  
 Concert, *concerto*.  
 Confuse (to), *confondere*.  
 Connoisseur, *conoscitore*.  
 Consist (to), *consistere*.  
 Consul, *consolo*.  
 Contain (to), *contenere*.  
 Contented (to be), *contentarsi*.  
 Continent, *continente* (m.).  
 Continual, *continuo*.  
 Contrary (on the), *anzi*.  
 Convenient, *conveniente*.  
 Convince (to), *convincere, persuadere*.  
 Coo (to), *tubare*.  
 Cool, *frecco, -a*.  
 Coral, *corallo*.  
 Cord, *spago*.  
 Corn, *grano*.  
 Cost (to), *valere*.  
 Could. See *potere*, p. 65.  
 Count, *conte*; countless, *contessa*.  
 Country, *pasce, campagna, pa-*

*tris*; countryman, *contadino*; country seat, *villeggiatura*.  
 Courier, *corriere*.  
 Cover (to), *coprire*.  
 Cow-keeper, *vaccaro*.  
 Cross (to), *varcare, attraversare*.  
 Crow (to), *cantare*.  
 Crowd, *folla*.  
 Crown, *corona*; (money), *scudo*.  
 Crystal, *cristallo*.  
 Cup, *tazza, chiochera*.  
 Curious, *curioso, -a*.  
 Curtain, *tenda*; (of a theatre), *sipario*.  
 Custom, *costume* (m.); *uso*.  
 Customer, *avventore*.  
 Cut (to), *tagliare*; cut off (in surgery), *amputare*.

## D.

Daisy, *margheritina*.  
 Dark, *buio, oscuro*; to get dark, *farsi buio*.  
 Daughter, *figlia, figliuola*.  
 Day, *giorno*.  
 Dear, *caro, -a*.  
 Deaf, *sordo, -a*.  
 Death, *morte* (f.).  
 Deceive (to), *ingannare*.  
 Decisive, *assoluto, -a*.  
 Decorate (to), *decorare*.  
 Decorated, *adorno, -a*.  
 Delay, *indugio*.  
 Depart (to), *partire*.  
 Deposit (to), *depositare*.  
 Deprive (to), *privare*.  
 Derive (to), *ricavare*.  
 Describe (to), *descrivere*.  
 Description, *descrizione*.  
 Deserve (to), *meritare*.  
 Diamond, *diamante* (m.).  
 Die (to), *morire*.  
 Different, *diverso, -a*.  
 Difficult, *difficile*.  
 Diligent, *diligente*.  
 Dine (to), *desinare, pranzare*.  
 Dining-room, *stanza da mangiare*.  
 Dinner, *pranzo*.  
 Directly, *subito*.

Dish, *piatto*; earthen pie-dish, *teggia*.  
 Dislocate (to), *dislogare*.  
 Disobey (to), *disubbidire*.  
 Distress, *miseria*.  
 Do (to), *fare*; (of health), *stare*; as auxiliary, not translated.  
 Doctor, *medico*.  
 Dog, *cane* (m.).  
 Door, *porta, uscio*.  
 Doubt, *dubbio*.  
 Dove, *colomba*.  
 Down, *giù, da basso*.  
 Drachm, *dramma*.  
 Draw (to), *disegnare*; to draw out, *tirare, estrarre*.  
 Drawer, *tiratoio*.  
 Drawing, *disegno*.  
 Drawing-room, *salotto*.  
 Dress, *abito, vestito*.  
 Dress oneself (to), *vestirsi*.  
 Drink (to), *bevere, bere*.  
 Drive (to), *condurre, guidare, andare in carrozza*.  
 Drop. (to), *calarsi, cadere*. See No. 16, p. 54.  
 Drum, *tamburo*.  
 Duet, *duetto*.  
 During, *durante*.

## E.

Each, *ogni, ciascuno, -a*.  
 Early, *per tempo, di buon mattino*.  
 Ear-ring, *orecchino*.  
 Earth, *terra*.  
 Easy, *facile*.  
 Eat (to), *mangiare*.  
 Eclipse, *ecclissi*.  
 Edinburgh, *Edimburgo*.  
 Edition, *edizione* (f.).  
 Egg, *uovo* (m.); pl. *uova* (f.).  
 Eight, *otto*.  
 Eighteenth, *decimo ottavo*.  
 Either, *o l' uno o l' altro*.  
 Eldest (of brothers or sisters), *maggiore*.  
 Eleven, *undici*.  
 Else, *altro*; elsewhere, *altrove*.

Embroidered, *ricamato, -a*.  
 Enduring, *perenne*.  
 Enemy, *nemico*.  
 England, *Inghilterra*.  
 English, *inglese*; an Englishman, (un) *Inglese*; an Englishwoman, (una) *Inglese*.  
 Enjoy (to), *godere di*; to enjoy oneself, *divertirsi*.  
 Enough (to be), *bastare*; enough! *basta! abbastanza!*  
 Enquire after (to), *domandare di*.  
 Entertainment, *trattamento*.  
 Entirely, *interamente*.  
 Environs, *contorni, dintorni*.  
 Eternal, *eterno, -a*.  
 Europe, *Europa*.  
 Even (conj.), *anche*.  
 Evening, *sera*; this evening, *stassera*.  
 Ever, *mai*.  
 Every, *ogni*; everybody, *ognuno, tutti*; everything, *tutto*; everywhere, *da per tutto*.  
 Exactly, *a pennello, precisamente*; exactly so, *per l' appunto*; it is exactly three o'clock, *sono le tre precise*.  
 Excepting (adv.), *salvo, tranne*.  
 Excuse (to), *scusare*; to be excused a thing, *esser dispensato di una cosa*.  
 Exercise, *tema* (m.); *esercizio*.  
 Expect (to), *aspettarsi*.  
 Express (to), *esprimere*.  
 Exterior, *esterno*.  
 Eye, *occhio*.

## F.

Face, *volto*.  
 Fail (to), *mancare*; (of an undertaking), *far fiasco*.  
 Fall (to), *cadere*; to fall asleep, *addormentarsi*.  
 Family, *famiglia*.  
 Famous, *famoso, -a*; *rinomato, -a*.  
 Far, *lontano, distante, lungi*.  
 Farm, *podere* (m.).  
 Fashion, *moda*.

Fast, *presto*.  
 Father, *padre*; father-in-law, *suocero*; fatherly, *paterno*.  
 Favour, *favore* (m.).  
 Fear, *paura*; to fear, *temere*.  
 Feed (to), *pascolare* (neut.); *pascolare* (act.).  
 Feel (to), *sentire*; well or unwell, *sentirsi bene o male*.  
 Fetch (to), *andare a prendere*, or *prendere*; to come to fetch, *venire a prendere*.  
 Fever, *febbre* (f.).  
 Few (a), *pochi*, -e; *alcuni*, -e, *dei*, *delle*.  
 Field, *campo*.  
 Fifty, *cinquanta*.  
 Fig, *fico*; (tree), *ficaia*.  
 Find (to), *trovare*.  
 Fine, *bello*, -a; the fine arts, *le belle arti*.  
 Finish (to), *finire*.  
 Finger, *dito* (m.); pl. *dita* (f.).  
 Fire, *fuoco*, *incendio*.  
 First, *primo*, -a.  
 Five, *cinque*.  
 Flee (to), *fuggire*.  
 Flock, *gregge* (m. & f.).  
 Floor (in elevation), *piano*; (as a surface), *pavimento*, *spazzo*.  
 Florence, *Firenze*.  
 Flow (to), *scorrere*.  
 Flower, *fiore* (m.).  
 Fluently, *correntemente*.  
 Fond of (to be). See *piacere*, Note a, p. 72.  
 Foot, *pie*de (m.); on foot, *a piedi*; footstep, *calpestio*; foot soldier, *fante*.  
 For, *per*, *perchè*, *siccome*.  
 Forenoon, *antimeridiane*.  
 Forget (to), *dimenticare*.  
 Forecourt, *cortile* (m.).  
 Foreigner, *forestiero*.  
 Former (the), *quello*, -a. See pp. 210 and 211.  
 Formerly, *altre volte*, *già*.  
 Fortnight, *quindici giorni*.  
 Forty, *quaranta*.  
 Forward (to), *inciare*, *mandare*.  
 Found (to), *fondare*.

Four, *quattro*.  
 Franc, *franco*, *lira*; twenty-franc piece, *napoleone d'oro*.  
 France, *Francia*.  
 Freeze (to), *gelare*.  
 Fresh, *fresco*, -a.  
 French, *francese*; a Frenchman, (un) *francese*; a Frenchwoman, (una) *francese*.  
 Friday, *venerdì*.  
 Friend, *amico*.  
 From, *da*, *di*.  
 Fruit, *frutta*.  
 Full, *pieno*, -a.

## G.

Gain (to), *guadagnare*.  
 Garden, *giardino*.  
 Gardener, *giardiniera*.  
 Gather (to), *cogliere*.  
 General, *generale*.  
 Generally, *per solito*.  
 Generous, *generoso*.  
 Genius, *genio*.  
 Genoa, *Genova*.  
 Gentleman, *signore*.  
 German, *tedesco*, -a; pl. -*chi*, -*che*.  
 Germany, *Germania*.  
 Get ready (to), *allestirsi*; — angry, *adirarsi*; — tired, *stancarsi*; — ill, *ammalarsi*.  
 Get up (to), *alzarsi*, *levarsi*.  
 Girl, *ragazza*.  
 Give (to), *dare*; to give back, *rendere*.  
 Glad (to be), *rallegrarsi di*; glad, *contento*, -a.  
 Glass, *vetro*; a glass of water, *un bicchier d'acqua*; wine-glass, *bicchierino*.  
 Glitter (to), *lucere*.  
 Glove, *guanto*.  
 Go (to), *andare*; go abroad, *andare all'estero*, *viaggiare*; go down (a street), *scendere per*; go in, *entrare*; go out, *andar fuori*, *uscire*; go up, *salire su*, *ascendere*; go, *venire* (see Note c, p. 121); go for a ride, *an-*

*dare a cavallo* ; to go to rest,  
*coricarsi*.  
 Goat, *capra*.  
 Gold, *oro*.  
 Good, *buono*, -a ; good morning,  
*buon giorno* ; good-bye, *addio*.  
 Gradually, *a poco a poco*.  
 Grandfather, *nonno*, *avo*, *avolo*.  
 Grandmother, *nonna*, *ava*, *avola*.  
 Grammar, *grammatica*.  
 Grant (to), *accordare*, *concedere*.  
 Grapes, *uva* (f. sing.)  
 Grass, *erba*.  
 Great deal, *molto*.  
 Greek, *greco*, -a.  
 Greenhouse, *serra*.  
 Grief, *dolore* (m.).  
 Grieve (to), *dispiacere*.  
 Ground, *terreno*.  
 Grunt (to), *grugnire*.  
 Guide, guide-book, *guida*.

## H.

Hail (to), *grandinare* (of weather).  
 Half, *mezzo*. See Note c, p. 175.  
 Hall, *vestibolo*.  
 Hand, *mano* (f.) ; on the other hand, *invece*.  
 Handsome, *bello*, -a.  
 Hang (to), *appendere* (act.) ; to have hung, *fare appendere*.  
 Happen, *avvenire*, *accadere*, *succedere*, *nascere*.  
 Happy, *felice*, *contento*, -a.  
 Harp, *arpa*.  
 Haste, *fretta* ; make haste ! *fate presto* !  
 Hat, *cappello*.  
 Have (to), *avere* ; to have at heart, *premere di* ; see Note d, p. 86 ; to have success, *incontrare*.  
 He, *egli*, *ei*, *esso*.  
 Head, *testa*, *capo* ; headache, *mal di capo*.  
 Health, *salute* (f.).  
 Hear (to), *sentire*, *udire* ; hear from, *ricevere nuove di* or *da* ; hear of *sentire parlare*.

Help (to), *aiutare*, *assistere*.  
 Hen, *gallina*.  
 Here, *qui*, *quà*, *ci*, *vi* ; here is..., *ecco...* Obs. 4, p. 188.  
 Hide (to), *nascondere*.  
 High, *alto*, -a ; highly (to mark absolute superlative), *molto-simo*, *sommo*.  
 Hill, *colle* (m.).  
 Him, *lo*, &c. See p. 183.  
 His, *suo*, &c. See p. 198.  
 Home (at), *a casa* ; to go home, *andar a casa*.  
 Honey, *miele* (m.).  
 Hope (to), *sperare*.  
 Horse, *cavallo*.  
 Host, *albergatore*.  
 Hot, *caldo*, -a.  
 Hotel, *albergo*.  
 Hothouse, *serra*.  
 Hour, *ora*.  
 House, *casa*.  
 How, *come* ; how much, *quanto*, -a ; how many, *quanti*, -e ; how far is it ? *quanto -è distante* ? how do you do ? *come state* ?  
 However, *per altro*, *tuttavia*.  
 Howl (to), *urlare*.  
 Hundred, *cento*.  
 Hunger, *fame* (f.).  
 Hungry (to be), *aver fame*.  
 Hurry, *fretta* ; to hurry a person, *far fretta a uno*.  
 Hurt (to), *far male a*.  
 Husbandman, *agricoltore*.  
 Hush ! *zitto* !

## I.

Ice (to eat), *sorbetto*.  
 If, *se*.  
 Ill, *ammalato*, -a ; *malato*, -a.  
 Immediately, *subito*.  
 Impose (to), *imporre a*.  
 In, *in* ; in the, *nel*, &c. (see p. 8) ; after superlatives, *di* ; in addition to, *oltre a* ; in short, *insomma* ; in the meantime, *intanto*, *frattanto*.  
 Indeed ! *davvero* !

India, *India*.  
 Inform (to), *informare*.  
 Information, *informazione*.  
 Inhabitant, *abitante*.  
 Ink, *inchiostro*.  
 Inkstand, *calamaio*.  
 Inquire after (to), *domandare di*;  
     to inquire for, *cercare*.  
 Instead, *invece*.  
 Institute (to), *istituire*.  
 Intend (to), *far conto di*.  
 Interest (to), *interessare*.  
 Interesting, *interessante*.  
 Interpreter, *interprete*.  
 Intimate, *intimo*, -a.  
 Into, *in*.  
 Introduce (to), *introdurre*.  
 Invite (to), *invitare*.  
 It. See p. 182.  
 Its. See p. 198.  
 Italian, *italiano*, -a.  
 Italy, *Italia*.

## J.

Jewel, *gioiello*.  
 Jeweller, *gioielliere*.  
 John, *Giovanni*.  
 Joseph, *Giuseppe*.  
 Journey, *viaggio*.  
 Just, *appunto*.

## K.

Keep (to), *tenere*; (preserve,  
     nourish), *mantenere*.  
 Key, *chiave* (f.).  
 Kind, *genere* (m.).  
 Kind (adj.), *cortese, gentile*.  
 Kindness, *bontà*.  
 Kindly, *cortesemente*.  
 Knock (to), *battere*.  
 Know (to), *sapere, conoscere*.  
     See Note b, p. 68.

## L.

Lady, *signora*.  
 Lamb, *agnello*.  
 Language, *lingua*.  
 Large, *grande*. See p. 158.

Last, *fine* (m. and f.).  
 Last (adj.), *passato*, -a; *scorso*,  
     -a; last night, *ieri sera*;  
     (=latest), *ultimo*.  
 Lately, *finalmente*.  
 Late, *tardi*; to be late, *esser in*  
     *ritardo*.  
 Lately, *ultimamente*.  
 Latest, *ultimo*.  
 Latin, *latino*.  
 Latter, *questo*, -a.  
 Laugh (to), *ridere*.  
 Laundress, *lavandaia*.  
 Laura, *Laura*.  
 Lay (to), *porre*; to lay the  
     cloth, *apparrecchiare la tavola*.  
 Lead (to), *condurre*.  
 Learn (to), *imparare*.  
 Least (at), *almeno*.  
 Leave (to), *lasciare* (act.); to  
     leave in charge of, *lasciare in*  
     *consegna a*; to leave (neut.),  
     *partire*; leave off, *tralasciare*.  
 Left, *sinistro*, -a.  
 Lemon, *limone* (m.).  
 Lend (to), *prestare*.  
 Less, *meno*.  
 Lesson, *lezione* (f.).  
 Let (to) people know, *far sapere*  
     *a uno*.  
 Letter, *lettera*; a man of letters,  
     *un dotto*.  
 Lewis, *Luigi*.  
 Library, *biblioteca, libreria*.  
 Lie down (to), *giacere*.  
 Light (to), *accendere*.  
 Like (to), *piacere*. See Note a,  
     p. 72.  
 Likely, *probabile*.  
 Lion, *leone*.  
 Listen (to), *ascoltare*.  
 Little, *poco*, -a; (=size), *pic-*  
     *colo*, -a; a little, *un poco*.  
 Live (to), *vivere*; (=reside),  
     *abitare, dimorare, stare di*  
     *casa*.  
 Lofty, *alto*, -a.  
 London, *Londra*.  
 Long, *lungo*, -a; a long time,  
     *un pezzo, molto tempo, molto*.  
 Longer, *più*.  
 Look (to), *guardare, mirare*;

the window looks on the garden, *la finestra dà sul giardino*.

Looks, *cera* (sing.).

Lose (to), *perdere*.

Luggage, *bagaglio*.

Lupercal, *Lupercale*.

## M.

Madam, *signora*.

Mæcenas, *Mecenatè*.

Magnificence, *magnificenza*.

Magnificent, *magnifico*, -a; pl., *ci, ce*.

Maid-servant, *serva*.

Maintain (to), *preservare*.

Mail, *corriere*; mail-coach, *posta, diligenza*.

Make (to), *fare*.

Mamma, *mamma*.

Man, *uomo*; a man of letters, *un dotto*; man-servant, *servo*.

Manner, *modo*.

Manuscript, *manoscritto*.

Many, *molti, -a*. See 'much.'

Marble, *marmo*.

Marquis, *marchese*.

Marry (to), *sposare*; marry with, *sposarsi con*.

Mason, *muratore*.

Master, *maestro, padrone*.

Match, *zolfanello, fiammifero*.

Matter (to), *importare*; it does not matter, *non importa, non fa niente*.

May. See *potere*, p. 65.

May, *maggio*.

Me. See p. 182.

Mean (to), *voler dire*.

Means (the), *i mezzi*.

Measure, *misura*; to take the measure for, *prendere la misura di*.

Mediterranean, *Mediterraneo*.

Meet (to), *incontrare*.

Melodious, *melodioso, -a*.

Message (to leave a), *fare un'ambasciata*.

Messiah, *Messia*.

Mew (to), *miagolare*.

Michael Angelo, *Michelangelo*.

Midst, *mezzo*.

Mile, *miglio* (m.); pl. *miglia* (f.).

Milk, *latte* (m.).

Mind (to) (=beware), *badare*.

Mine. See p. 198.

Milan, *Milano*.

Million, *milione*.

Minute, *minuto*.

Mischief, *male* (m.); to do mischief, *far del male*.

Misfortune, *disgrazia*.

Mistake, *sbaglio*; to mistake, *sbagliare*.

Moderate, (of climate), *temperato, -a*.

Modern, *moderno, -a*.

Monday, *lunedì* (m.).

Money, *danaro*.

Monkey, *scimia*.

Month, *mese* (m.).

Monument, *monumento*.

Moon, *luna*.

More, *più*; (=further), *di più*.

Morning, *mattina, mattino*; this morning, *stamane*; good morning, *buon giorno*.

Mosaic, *mosaico*.

Most (the), *il più*.

Mother, *madre*.

Mount, mountain, *monte* (m.).

Mouse, *topo, sorcio*.

Mr., *Signor*; Mrs., *Signora*.

Much, *molto, -a*; *assai*. See 'many.'

Music, *musica*.

Must. See *dovere*, p. 67.

My. See p. 198.

## N.

Name, *nome* (m.).

Naples, *Napoli*.

Native, *nativo, -a*; a native of Italy, *Italiano, -a*; — of England, *Inglese*.

Near, *vicino, vicino a*.

Nearly, *presso a poco, a un dipresso, quasi*.

Necessary, *necessario, -a*; to be necessary, *bisognare*.

Necklace, *collana*.

Need, *bisogno*.  
 Neigh (to), *nitrire*.  
 Neighbour, *vicino*.  
 Neighbourhood, *vicinato*.  
 Neither...nor, *nè...nè*.  
 Neither (pron.), *nè l' uno nè l' altro*.  
 Nephew, *nipote*.  
 Net, *rete* (f.).  
 Never, *mai, giammai*, with *non* before verbs.  
 New, *nuovo*, -a.  
 News, *nuove* (pl.).  
 Newspaper, *giornale* (m.).  
 Next, *prossimo*, -a; *venturo*, -a; the next day, *il giorno dopo*.  
 Niece, *nipote*.  
 Night, *notte* (f.); last night, *ieri sera*.  
 Nine, *nove*.  
 No, *no*; I have no books, *non ho libri*.  
 Nobody, no one, none, *nessuno, niuno, veruno*.  
 Noise, *romore* (m.).  
 None. See 'nobody.'  
 Noon, *mezzodì*.  
 Nor, *nè*; nor even, *neppure*.  
 North wind, *vento di tramontana*.  
 Not, *non*; ...or not, ...o *no*; I think not, *credo di no*; not at all, *punto*.  
 Note, *annotazione*; to take notes, *far annotazioni*.  
 Nothing, *niente, nulla*.  
 Now, *adesso, ora*; now and then, *di quando in quando, tratto tratto*.  
 Nowhere else, *in nessun altro luogo*.  
 Nursemaid, *bambinaia*.

## O.

Object, *cosa, oggetto*.  
 Obligated (to be), *esser tenuto, obbligato*.  
 O'clock. See p. 176.  
 Of, *di*; of it, *ne*; of course *certainemente*.

Offer (to), *offrire*.  
 Officer, (strictly), *uffiziale*; (commonly), *militare*.  
 Often, *spesso*.  
 Oh, *oh*.  
 Old, *vecchio*, -a; how old is he? *quanti anni ha?*  
 On, *su, sopra*; on account of, *per*.  
 Once, *una volta*; (=formerly), *altre volte*.  
 One, *un, uno*, -a. See p. 145.  
 Only (adv.), *solamente, soltanto, solo, non...che*; only just now, *or ora*.  
 Opera, *opera*; opera-glass, *occhialeto*; to play an opera, *dare un' opera*.  
 Opinion, *opinione* (f.).  
 Opposite, *dirimpetto* a.  
 Oppression, *oppressione* (f.).  
 Or, *o, oppure*.  
 Orange, *arancia*.  
 Oratorio, *oratorio*.  
 Orchestra, *orchestra*.  
 Order (to), *commandare, ordinare*.  
 Origin, *origine* (f.), *principio*.  
 Ornament, *ornamento*.  
 Other, *altro*, -a.  
 Ought. See *dovere*, p. 67.  
 Our. See p. 198.  
 Out, *fuori, fuori*; outside, *fuori*.  
 Overcome (to), *opprimere*.  
 Overture, *sinfonia*.  
 Owe (to), *dovere*.  
 Owner, *proprietario*.  
 Ox, *bue*; pl., *buoi*.

## P.

Page (of book), *pagina*.  
 Paint (to), *dipingere*.  
 Pair, *paio* (m.); pl. *paia* (f.).  
 Palace, *palazzo*.  
 Patent, *patente* (f.).  
 Palatine, *Palatino*.  
 Pantry, *dispensa*.  
 Papal, *papale*.  
 Paper, *carta*; wall-paper, *tappeszeria*; to paper (walls), *tapparezzare di carta*; a sheet of paper, *foglio*.



Papa, *babbo*.  
 Paradise, *paradiso*.  
 Parents (one's), *i genitori*.  
 Parlour, *stanzino*.  
 Paris, *Parigi*.  
 Party (evening), *serata*.  
 Pardon (to), *scusare*.  
 Parrot, *papagallo*.  
 Pass (to), *passare*.  
 Passage (of a building), *corritioio*.  
 Passport, *passaporto*.  
 Patron, *protettore*.  
 Pay attention (to), *badare*; to pay a visit, *fare una visita*.  
 Pear (tree), *pero*; fruit, *pera*.  
 Pen, *penna*.  
 Penknife, *temperino*.  
 People, *gente* (sing. f.).  
 Perhaps, *forse*.  
 Persian, *Persiano*.  
 Person, *persona*; personally, *di persona*; persons (collectively), *gente*; a certain person, *taluno*.  
 Peter, *Pietro*.  
 Physician, *medico*.  
 Pick (to), *cogliere*; pick up, *racogliere*; pick out, *scegliere*.  
 Picture, *quadro, pittura*.  
 Picturesque, *pittoreesco, -a*.  
 Piece, *pezzo*; piece of furniture, *mobile* (m.).  
 Pig, *porco*.  
 Pit (of a theatre), *platea*.  
 Place, *luogo*, pl. *-ghi*; to place, *porre*.  
 Plain, *semplice*.  
 Plant, *pianta*.  
 Play, *commedia*; to play (of music), *suonare*; (of opera), *dare*.  
 Pleasant, *piacevole*; pleasantly, *piacevolmente*.  
 Please (to), *piacere*; will you please to..., *favorite di...*; if you please, *per favore*, or *di grazia*.  
 Pleasure, *piacere* (m.); with pleasure, *con piacere, volentieri*.  
 Poem, *poema* (m.).

Post, *posta* (m.).  
 Poor, *povero, -a*.  
 Poorly (to be), *essere indisposto*.  
 Pope, *papa*.  
 Port, *porto di mare*.  
 Port wine, *vino d' Oporto*.  
 Porter, *facchino*; (in a house), *portiere*.  
 Portuguese, *portoghese*.  
 Post, *posta*; to post up, *affiggere*.  
 Pound (sterling), *lira sterlina*.  
 Pour out (to), *mescolare, versare*.  
 Pray (to), *pregare*.  
 Precision, *esattezza*.  
 Precious, *preziosa, -a*.  
 Prefer (to), *preferire*.  
 Present, *presente* (adj.); present (n.), *regalo, presente* (m.); to present, *presentare*; to present anyone with..., *regalare...ad uno*.  
 Pretty, *bello, -a*; gentle.  
 Pretend to be ..., *fare il...*; to pretend to be deaf, *fare il sordo*.  
 Prevent (to), *impedire*.  
 Prince, *principe*.  
 Principal, *principale*.  
 Price, *prezzo*.  
 Priest, *prete*.  
 Printer, *stampatore*.  
 Probable, *probabile*.  
 Produce (to), *produrre*.  
 Prolong (to), *prolungare*.  
 Proper, *adatto, -a*.  
 Promise, *promessa*.  
 Property, *proprietà*.  
 Pule (to), *pigolare*.  
 Put (to), *mettere, porre*; to put out a light, *spegnere un lume*; to put on a coat, *mettersi un vestito*.

## Q

Quarter, *quarto*.  
 Question, *domanda*.  
 Quick, quickly, *presto*.  
 Quietly, *tranquillamente*.  
 Quite (adv.), *tutto*; quite the contrary, *tutt' altro*.

## R.

Railway, *strada ferrata*.  
 Rain, *pioggia*; to rain, *piovvere*.  
 Rare, *raro*, -a.  
 Rather, *piuttosto*.  
 Reach, (to), *giungere*.  
 Read (to), *leggere*.  
 Reading, *lettura*.  
 Ready, *pronto*, -a.  
 Receive, *ricevere*.  
 Receipt (to a bill), *quittance*.  
 Recollect (to), *rammentarsi*.  
 Reduce (to), *ridurre*.  
 Re-establishment, *ristabilimento*.  
 Regimen, *igiene* (f.).  
 Regular, *regolare*; regularly, *regolarmente*; regularity, *regolarità*.  
 Relation, *parente*.  
 Remain (to), *restare, rimanere*.  
 Remarkable, *singolare*.  
 Remember (to), *ricordarsi di*.  
 Remove (to), *mutar casa, sgomberare*; to remove from, *togliere via*.  
 Renowned, *rinomato*, -a.  
 Rent (to), *prendere a pigione*.  
 Repose (to), *riposarsi*.  
 Repairer (f.), *rimendatrice*.  
 Reputation, *fama*.  
 Require (to), *aver bisogno di*.  
 Reside (to), *abitare, dimorare, stare di casa*.  
 Residence, *soggiorno*.  
 Resolve (to), *risolvere*.  
 Rest, *riposo*; the rest, *il resto*; to rest, *riposarsi*; to go to rest, *coricarsi*.  
 Restorer, *ristauratore*.  
 Return (to), *tornare, ritornare, riedere*.  
 Rich, *ricco*, -a.  
 Ride (to), *andare a cavallo, cavalcare*.  
 Right, *ragione* (f.).  
 Right (to do), *far bene*; to be right (of something done), *andar bene*; you are right, *avete ragione*.  
 Ring, *anello*; to ring, *suonare*.  
 Rise (to), *alzarsi, levarsi*.

River, *fiume* (m.).  
 Roar (to), *muggire*.  
 Rock, *rupe* (f.).  
 Roman, *Romano*.  
 Rome, *Roma*.  
 Romulus, *Romolo*.  
 Room, *stanza, camera*.  
 Rose, *rosa*.  
 Round, *intorno a*.  
 Royal, *reale*.  
 Ruin, *rovina*; to ruin, *rovinare*.

## S.

Salute (to), *salutare*.  
 Same, *stesso*, -a; *medesimo*, -a.  
 Saturday, *sabbato*.  
 Saucepan, *pentola*.  
 Say (to), *dire*.  
 Scarcely, *appena*; scarcely ever, *quasi mai*.  
 Scenery (of a theatre), *decorazioni*.  
 School, *scuola*.  
 Sculpture, *scultura*.  
 Sea, *mare* (m.).  
 Season, *stagione* (f.).  
 Seat, *sedile* (m.).  
 Second, *secondo*, -a.  
 See (to), *vedere, mirare*; to see home, *condurre a casa*; come and see me, *venite a trovarmi*; to see again, *rivedere*.  
 Seed, *seme* (m.).  
 Seem (to), *parere*.  
 Seldom, *di rado*.  
 Select (to), *scegliere*.  
 Self, as sign of reflective pronoun. See Reflective Pronouns, p. 183. As intensive, *stesso*, -a.  
 Sell (to), *vendere*.  
 Send (to), *mandare*; to send for, *mandare a chiamare, mandare per*.  
 Sentence, *frase* (f.).  
 Servant, *servo, serva*; maid-servant, *cameriera*; all the servants of a house, *servitù*.  
 Serve (to), *servire*.

Set a jewel (to), *montare un gioiello*.  
 Settle (to), *fiutare*; to settle in a place, *stabilirsi*.  
 Seven, *sette*.  
 Several, *parecchi* (m. pl.), *parecchie* (f. pl.).  
 Sew (to), *cucire*.  
 Shame, *vergogna*.  
 Shepherd, *pastore*, *pecoraio*.  
 Sheep, *pecora*.  
 Shilling, *scellino*.  
 Shine (to), *splendere*.  
 Shoe, *scarpa*.  
 Shoemaker, *calzolaio*.  
 Shop, *bottega*.  
 Short, *corto*, -a.  
 Should (implying obligation). See *dovere*, p. 67.  
 Shoulder, *spalla*.  
 Show (to), *mostrare*, *far vedere*; to show in, *far entrare*; to show to, *condurre a*.  
 Shut (to), *chiudere*.  
 Sibyl, *Sibilla*.  
 Side, *parte* (f.).  
 Sienna, *Siena*.  
 Sight, *vista*.  
 Silent (to be), *tacere*.  
 Since, *da che*; since then, *d' allora in poi*; since when, *da quando in qua*.  
 Sing (to), *cantare*; to sing out of tune, *stunare*.  
 Singer, *cantante*.  
 Singing, *canto*.  
 Single (adj.), *solo*, -a.  
 Sir, *signore*.  
 Sister, *sorella*.  
 Sit (to), *sedere*; sit down, *acomodarsi*, *sedersi*.  
 Sitting-room, *stanza da ricevere*.  
 Situation, *situazione* (f.).  
 Sixty, *sessanta*.  
 Sleep, *sonno*; to sleep, *dormire*.  
 Slowly, *piano*, *adagio*.  
 Small, *piccolo*, -a.  
 Smell sweet (to), *olire soavemente*.  
 Snow (to), *nevicare*.  
 So, *così*, *tanto*; so much, *tanto*, -a; so many, *tanti*, -e.

Sofa, *sofà* (m.).  
 Sojourn, *soggiorno*.  
 Soldier, *soldato*; foot-soldier, *fante*.  
 Some, *ne*, *qualche* (followed by sing. noun), *alcuno*; (partitive) *del*; sometimes, *qualche volta*, *alcune volte*, *delle volte*.  
 Somebody, *some one*, *alcuno*, *qualcuno*, *qualcheduno*.  
 Sometimes. See 'some.'  
 Something, *qualche cosa*.  
 Somewhere, *in qualche luogo*; somewhere else, *in qualche altro luogo*.  
 Son, *figlio*, *figliuolo*.  
 Song, *canzone* (f.).  
 Soon, *subito*, *presto*.  
 Soprano, *soprano*.  
 Sorry (to be), *rincrescere*. See Note a, p. 72.  
 Sound, *suono*.  
 Soup, *minestra*.  
 Speak (to), *parlare*, *favellare*.  
 Spend (to), *passare* (of time); to spend money, *spendere denaro*.  
 Spill (to), *spandere*.  
 Splendid, *splendido*, -a.  
 Splendour, *splendidezza*.  
 Spring (the), *la primavera*; a spring (of water), *una sorgente*.  
 Squander away (to), *scialacquare*.  
 Square, *piazza*.  
 Squeak (to), *squittire*.  
 Stagnant, *fermo*.  
 Stairs, *scala*; upstairs, *di sopra*.  
 Stand (to), *stare*; to stand up (rise), *alzarsi*.  
 Start (to), *partire* (neut.).  
 Station, *stazione* (f.).  
 Statue, *statua*.  
 Stay (to), *stare*, *rimanere*; to stay in one place, *trattenersi*; to stay at one's country seat, *villeggiare*, *fare villeggiatura*.  
 Steam, *vapore* (m.).  
 Steeple, *campanile* (m.).  
 Stem, *stelo*.  
 Step into (to), *entrare*.

Stick (for walking), *bastone* (m.).  
 Still (adv.), *ancora*.  
 Stone, *pietra*.  
 Stop (to), *fermarsi*.  
 Straightness, *dirittura*.  
 Straw, *paglia*.  
 Street, *via*; *strada*; street-door,  
*porta della strada*.  
 Stroll, *passeggiata*; to take a  
 stroll, *fare una passeggiata*.  
 Strike (of a clock), *suonare*.  
 Study (to), *studiare*.  
 Suburb, *sobborgo*.  
 Such, *tale*; such a one, *taluno*.  
 Suffer (to), *soffrire*.  
 Sufficiently, *abbastanza*.  
 Summer, *state* (f.), *estate* (f.).  
 Sun, *sole* (m.).  
 Sunday, *domenica* (f.).  
 Superior (= excellent), *buono*, -a.  
 Support (to), *mantenere*.  
 Suppose (to), *supporre*.  
 Sure, *certo*, -a.  
 Surgeon, *chirurgo*.  
 Surprised (to be), *maravigliarsi*  
*di*.  
 Swallow up (to), *inghiottire*.

## T.

Table, *tavola*; tablecloth, *tova-*  
*glia*; to set the table, *appar-*  
*recchiare*; to sit properly at  
 table, *stare composto a tavola*;  
 to leave the table, *andar giù*  
*di tavola*; table d'hôte, *tavola*  
*rotonda*.  
 Tailor, *sarto*, *sartore*.  
 Take (to), *prendere*, *portare*;  
 to take any one home, *con-*  
*durre uno a casa*; to take  
 back, *riportare*; to take off  
 (one's hat, &c.), *cavarsi*; to  
 take away, *togliere via*, *con-*  
*durre via*; to take one's leave,  
*salutare*; to take place, *avere*  
*luogo*.  
 Talk (to), *parlare*.  
 Tap (to), *bussare*.  
 Tapestry, *arazzo*.

Tarpeian, *Tarpeo*, -a.  
 Tart, *torta*.  
 Taste, *gusto*.  
 Tea, *tè* (m.).  
 Teach (to), *insegnare*.  
 Teacher, *maestro*.  
 Tear up (to), *svellere*.  
 Tell (to), *dire*.  
 Temple, *tempio*.  
 Ten, *dieci*.  
 Tenor, *tenore*.  
 Than, *di*, *che*. See p. 163.  
 Thank (to), *ringraziare*.  
 Thanks, thank you, *grazie*.  
 That (pron.), absolutely, *ciò*; as  
 demonstrative, *quello*. See p.  
 208; as relative, *che*, *quel che*.  
 That (conj.), *che*.  
 Thaw (to), *digelare*.  
 The. See p. 145.  
 Theatre, *teatro*.  
 Their. See p. 198.  
 Them. See p. 183.  
 Then, *allora*; (= therefore),  
*dunque*; (= afterwards), *poi*,  
*dopo*.  
 There, *vi*, *ci*, *colà*, *là*, *lì*.  
 There! *ecco*! there goes..., *ecco*  
*che passa....*  
 Therefore, *perciò*, *quindi*, *dun-*  
*que*.  
 Thing, *cosa*.  
 Think (to), *credere*; I think not,  
*credo di no*; what do you  
 think? *che vi pare?*  
 Third, *terzo*.  
 Thirst, *sete* (f.).  
 Thirsty (to be), *aver sete*.  
 Thirty, *trenta*.  
 This, *questo*, -a. See p. 208.  
 Those, *quelli*. See p. 208.  
 Thousand, *mille*; preceded by a  
 number higher than one, *mila*.  
 Three, *tre*.  
 Through, *per*, sometimes *in*.  
 Throw wide open (to), *spa-*  
*lancare*.  
 Thunder (to), *tuonare*.  
 Thursday, *giovedì* (m.).  
 Ticket, *biglietto*.  
 Tight, *stretto*, -a.  
 Till, *che*, *fino a*.

Time, *tempo*; (= turn), *volta*; sometimes, *delle volte*.  
 Tired, *stanco*, -a; (= out of breath), *sfatato*, -a.  
 To, *a*; to the, *al*, &c.; before names of country, *in*; implying necessity, *da*; before infinitives (frequently), *di*; to me, *da me*. See N.B., p. 183.  
 To-day, *oggi*.  
 Together, *insieme*.  
 Tomb, *tomba*.  
 To-morrow, *domani*; day after to-morrow, *posdomani*.  
 To-night, *stasera*.  
 Too, *troppo*.  
 Tooth, *dente* (m.); toothache, *mal di denti*.  
 Touch (to), *toccare*.  
 Towards, *verso*.  
 Town, *città*.  
 Trace, *traccia*.  
 Train, *treno*.  
 Translate (to), *tradurre*.  
 Translation, *traduzione* (f.).  
 Travel (to), *viaggiare*.  
 Tree, *albero*.  
 Trouble (to), *disturbare*.  
 True, *vero*, -a.  
 Trunk, *baule* (m.).  
 Try (to), *cercare di*; to try on, *provarsi*.  
 Tuesday, *martedì* (m.).  
 Turin, *Torino*.  
 Turn, *giro*.  
 Tuscany, *Toscana*.  
 Twelve, *dodici*.  
 Twice, *due volte*.  
 Twenty, *venti*.  
 Two, *due*.

## U.

Ugly, *brutto*, -a.  
 Umbrella, *ombrello*.  
 Uncle, *zio*.  
 Under, *sotto*.  
 Understand (to), *capire*; I understand, *ho capito* (continued perfect); to make oneself understood, *farsi capire*.

Undoubtedly, *sens' altro, senza dubbio*.  
 Unexpected, *imprevisto*, -a.  
 University, *università*.  
 Unwell (to be), *star male*.  
 Usual (to be), *esser solito*; as usual, *come il solito*.

## V.

Valuable, *prezioso*, -a.  
 Vatican, *Vaticano*.  
 Venice, *Venezia*.  
 Venetian, *veneziano*, -a.  
 Ventilated, *ventilato*, -a.  
 Verb, *verbo*.  
 Very, *molto, assai*.  
 Victory, *vittoria*.  
 View, *prospettiva, vista*.  
 Villa, *villa*.  
 Vine, *vite* (f.).  
 Vintage, *vendemmia*.  
 Violet, *viola*.  
 Virgil, *Virgilio*.  
 Visit (to), *visitare*.  
 Vivacity, *spirito*.  
 Voice, *voce* (f.).  
 Volume, *volume* (m.), *tomo*.

## W.

Wait (to), *aspettare*.  
 Waiter, *cameriere*.  
 Walk, *passeggiata*; *passeggio*; to take a walk, *fare una passeggiata*; go for a walk, *andare a spasso*.  
 Walk (to), *camminare, andare a piedi*; to walk into, *entrare in*.  
 Wall, *muro*; wall (of a room), *parete* (f.).  
 Walter, *Gualtiero*.  
 Want (to), *aver bisogno di, brama, volere, desiderare*.  
 War, *guerra*.  
 Warm, *caldo*, -a; to be warm (of a person), *avere caldo*; (of weather), *far caldo*; to warm up, *riscaldare*.

- Warn (to), *avvertire*.  
 Wash oneself (to), *lavarsi*.  
 Watch, *orologio*.  
 Water, *acqua*; waterfall, *cascata d'acqua*.  
 Way, *via*.  
 Weather, *tempo*; fine weather, *bel tempo*; bad weather, *cattivo tempo*; to be... weather, *far...tempo*.  
 Wear (to), *portare*.  
 Wedding, *nozze* (f. pl.)  
 Wednesday, *mercoledì*.  
 Week, *settimana*.  
 Weep (to), *piangere*.  
 Welcome, *benvenuto*, -a.  
 Welfare, *felicità*.  
 Well, *bene*; to be well, *star bene*; well then! *allora!*  
 Went. See 'Go.'  
 What, *che* (=that which), *quel che*; what a number, *quanti*; what? *che?* or *che cosa?*  
 Whatever, *checcchè*.  
 When, *quando*.  
 Where, *dove*.  
 Whether, *se*.  
 Which, *quale che, il quale, cui*.  
 See Relat. Pron., p. 213.  
 While, whilst, *mentre*.  
 White, *bianco*, -a.  
 Who, *che*; who? *chi?*  
 Whoever, *chiunque*.  
 Whole, *tutto*, -a.  
 Why? *perché?*  
 Wife, *moglie*; pl. *mogli*.  
 Will (to), be willing, *volere*.  
 Wind, *vento*.  
 Window, *finestra*; to look out of window, *stare alla finestra*; shop-window, *vetrina*.  
 Wine, *vino*; wine-cellar, *cantina*.  
 Winter, *inverno, verno*.  
 Wipe (to), *togliere, asciugare*.  
 Wisdom, *giudizio*.  
 Wish (to), *bramare, desiderare, volere*; — something to any one, *augurare*.  
 With, *con*; with pleasure, *volentieri*; with me, *meco*.  
 Without, *senza*.  
 Wolf, *lupo*.  
 Wonder, *meraviglia*; to wonder, *maravigliarsi*.  
 Wonderful, *ammirabile*.  
 Wont (to be), *solere*.  
 Wood, *legno*.  
 Woodcutter, *spaccalegna*.  
 Word, *parola*.  
 Work, *opera*.  
 World, *mondo*.  
 Would (as principal verb). See *volere*, p. 86.  
 Wound (to), *ferire*.  
 Worth (to be), *valere, meritare*; not to be worth a straw, *non valere un'acca*.  
 Wrap up (to), *imbacocciare*.  
 Write, *scrivere*.  
 Writing-book, *quaderno*.  
 Wrong, *torto*.  
 Wrong (to be), *andar male* (of a thing done); I am wrong, *ho torto*.

## Y.

- Year, *anno*.  
 Yes, *sì*.  
 Yesterday, *ieri*.  
 Yet, *pure, ancora*.  
 Yield (to), *cedere*.  
 You. See p. 182.  
 Young, *giovine*.  
 Your. See p. 198.

## II. ITALIAN-ENGLISH.

## A.

*A*, to, at. See p. 144, & p. 237.  
*Abatino*, young priest (clerk in holy orders).  
*Abbagliare*, to dazzle.  
*Abbandonare*, to abandon.  
*Abbastanza*, enough.  
*Abbracciare*, to embrace.  
*Abbrucciare*, to burn down.  
*Abitante* (m. & f.), inhabitant.  
*Abituarsi*, to accustom oneself.  
*Abusarsi*, to take advantage of.  
*Accadere*, to happen.  
*Accanto*, near.  
*Accendere*, to light, to kindle.  
*Accoglienza*, reception.  
*Accogliere*, to receive.  
*Accomodarsi a*, to put up with, to accommodate oneself to.  
*Accompagnare*, to accompany.  
*Accusare*, to charge, to accuse.  
*Acqua*, water.  
*Adattare*, to accommodate.  
*Addio*, good-bye.  
*Addormentarsi*, to fall asleep.  
*Addosso*, on, upon any one's back.  
*Adeguato*, proper.  
*Adempimento*, fulfilment.  
*Adempire*, to fulfil.  
*Adesso*, now, at present.  
*Adirarsi*, to get angry.  
*Adirato*, -a, angry.  
*Adunque*, therefore.  
*Affare* (m.), business.  
*Affaticarsi*, to struggle.  
*Affetto*, love, attachment.

*Affettuoso*, affectionate.  
*Affiggere*, to attach, to post up (bills).  
*Aggiungere*, to add.  
*Agnello*, lamb.  
*Agosto*, August.  
*Agricoltore*, husbandman.  
*Aiutare*, to assist.  
*Al*, to the. See p. 8.  
*Albergatore* (m.), host.  
*Albero*, tree.  
*Alchimista*, alchemist.  
*Alcuno*, some one, somebody.  
*Alimentare*, to nourish, to feed.  
*All'*, to the. See p. 8.  
*Alla*, to the. See p. 8.  
*Allagare*, to inundate.  
*Allegro*, merry.  
*Allestirsi*, to get ready.  
*Alloggiare*, to lodge.  
*Allungare*, to lengthen.  
*Alpi* (pl. f.), Alps.  
*Alterarsi*, to get excited.  
*Alto*, high, lofty.  
*Altro*, other, else; *un altro*, another.  
*Alzarsi*, to rise, get up.  
*Amare*, to love.  
*Amatore*, lover.  
*Ambasciata*, message.  
*Ambasciatore*, ambassador.  
*Amico*, -a, friend.  
*Ammalarsi*, to get ill.  
*Ammalato*, ill, unwell; *un ammalato*, a patient.  
*Ammassare*, to hoard.  
*Ammirabile*, wonderful.  
*Ammiraglio*, admiral.

- Ammonire*, to admonish, to teach.  
*Ammonizione*, admonition (f.).  
*Anche*, even.  
*Ancora*, yet.  
*Andare*, to go; — *a piedi*, to walk; — *a spasso*, to go for a walk; — *in collera*, to put oneself in a passion; — *in carrozza*, to ride in a carriage; — *bene* (of a thing done), to be right; (of a garment), to fit; — *male*, to be wrong; — *a cavallo*, to go on horseback; — *carponi*, to go on all fours; — *in barca*, to go in a boat; — *giù di tavola*, to leave the table; — *a caccia*, to go a-hunting; — *d' accordo*, to agree; — *per vapore*, to go by steamboat; — *per strada ferrata*, to go by railway; — *a trovare*, to go to see.  
*Anello*, ring.  
*Animale* (m.), animal.  
*Animo*, mind.  
*Annali*, annals. See p. 143.  
*Anno*, year.  
*Annotare*, to become night.  
*Anticamera*, ante-room.  
*Antico*, ancient.  
*Anzi*, 'on the contrary.  
*Apertura*, opening.  
*Apparecchiare la tavola*, to lay the cloth.  
*Apparire*, to appear.  
*Appartenere*, to belong.  
*Appena*, scarcely; — *che*, as soon as.  
*Appicare*, to give, to impart.  
*Appiccarsi*, to become contaminated.  
*Appo*, among, with.  
*Aprile* (m.), April.  
*Aratro*, plough.  
*Arazzo*, tapestry.  
*Ardere*, to burn.  
*Aria*, air.  
*Aristocrazia*, aristocracy.  
*Armi* (pl. f.), arms.  
*Arpa*, harp.  
*Arrabbiarsi*, to get angry.
- Arrivare*, to arrive.  
*Arte* (m.), art, artifice.  
*Artefice*, maker, artisan.  
*Artificio*, artifice, cunning.  
*Ascendere*, to climb.  
*Ascoltare*, to listen.  
*Aspettare* (act.), to wait for, to await, to expect.  
*Aspetto*, aspect, look.  
*Assai*, much.  
*Assalto*, assault.  
*Assistere*, to assist, to attend.  
*Assurdo*, -a, absurd.  
*Astronomo*, astronomer.  
*Atene*, Athens.  
*Atlante*, Atlas.  
*Attendere*, to wait.  
*Attorno a*, about; *esser attorno a uno*, to torment one.  
*Autunno*, autumn.  
*Avanti*, forward, first.  
*Avanzare* (of a watch), to gain.  
*Avanzato*, -a, advanced, old.  
*Avaro*, miser.  
*Avere*, to have; *aver bisogno di*, to want; — *buona cera*, to look well; — *caldo*, to be warm; — *fame*, to be hungry; — *freddo*, to be cold; — *giudizio*, to be wise; — *luogo*, to take place; — *paura*, to be afraid; — *ragione*, to be right; — *sete*, to be thirsty; — *sonno*, to be sleepy; — *torto*, to be wrong; — *vergogna*, to be ashamed; (followed by *da*), to be obliged, must; *che avete?* what is the matter with you?  
*Avvenire*, to happen, to take place.  
*Avventore* (m.), customer.  
*Avvertire*, to warn, to tell.  
*Avvezarsi a*, to accustom oneself to.  
*Avviso*, advice.

## B.

- Babbo*, papa.  
*Bacchiare le noci*, to bring nuts down with a stick.



*Baciare*, to kiss.  
*Badare*, to mind.  
*Bagaglio*, luggage.  
*Bambinaia*, nursemaid.  
*Bambino*, -a, child.  
*Bando*, banishment.  
*Basilica*, cathedral.  
*Basso*, low.  
*Bastare*, to be enough.  
*Bastone* (m.), walking-stick.  
*Battaglia*, battle.  
*Battere*, to beat, knock, thrash.  
*Battesimo*, baptism.  
*Baulo* (m.), trunk.  
*Bellessa*, beauty.  
*Bello*, beautiful, fine.  
*Benchè* (conj.), although.  
*Bene*, well; (n. m.), good, welfare.  
*Benemerito*, well merited.  
*Berlino*, Berlin.  
*Berretta*, (man's) cap.  
*Bevere*, to drink.  
*Bianco*, -a, white.  
*Bicchieri* (m.), drinking-glass.  
*Biglietto*, ticket; — *di visita*, card (visiting).  
*Bisognare*, to be necessary.  
*Bisogno*, want.  
*Bollire*, to boil.  
*Bonifacio*, Boniface.  
*Bontà*, kindness.  
*Borsa*, purse.  
*Bottega*, shop.  
*Braccialetto*, bracelet.  
*Bramare*, to wish.  
*Bramoso*, desirous.  
*Bruttare*, to stain.  
*Buca*, hole, letter-box.  
*Buono*, -a, good.

## C.

*Cadere*, to drop.  
*Caffè* (m.), coffee, café.  
*Caffettiere*, coffee-house keeper.  
*Cagione* (f.), reason; a —, in consequence.  
*Calarsi*, to be lowered.  
*Caldo*, -a (adj.), warm; (n. m.), heat.

*Calere*, to care for.  
*Calpestio*, footstep.  
*Calzolaio*, shoemaker.  
*Camera*, bed-room.  
*Cameriera*, maid-servant.  
*Camieriere*, waiter.  
*Campagna*, country (out of town).  
*Campana*, bell.  
*Campo*, field.  
*Canapé* (m.), couch.  
*Candela*, candle.  
*Cane*, dog.  
*Cantante* (m. & f.), singer.  
*Cantare*, to sing.  
*Cantina*, wine-cellar.  
*Canto*, singing.  
*Qantonata*, street-corner.  
*Canzone* (f.), song.  
*Capire*, to understand.  
*Capitale* (f.), capital.  
*Capo*, head.  
*Cappella*, chapel.  
*Cappello*, hat.  
*Carliuo*, Charles (dimin.).  
*Carlo*, Charles.  
*Caro*, -a, dear; (adv.) dearly.  
*Carozza*, carriage.  
*Carta*, paper; — *sgante*, blotting-paper.  
*Cartello*, bill (to post up).  
*Casa*, house.  
*Casato* or *Casata*, (noble) family name.  
*Cassa*, case, box.  
*Catena*, chain.  
*Cattivo*, bad.  
*Causa*, cause.  
*Cavaliere*, knight.  
*Cavallo*, horse.  
*Cavare*, to draw; *caverni*, to take off.  
*Cavicchio*, peg.  
*Cento*, a hundred.  
*Cercare*, to search, to enquire for.  
*Cerchio*, ring.  
*Certamente*, certainly.  
*Certo*, certain.  
*Castellina*, basket (dim.).  
*Ceto*, class.  
*Che* ? or *che cosa* ? what ? *che*, who, that, which.

*Che* (after a comparative adjective), than; (after a verb conjugated negatively), nothing but; *chè*, because.

*Chi*? who?

*Chiamare*, to call.

*Chiaro*, -a, clear.

*Chiave* (f.), key.

*Chicchera*, cup.

*Chiedere*, to ask, to claim.

*Chiesa*, church.

*Chiodo*, nail.

*Chitarra*, guitar.

*Chiudere*, to shut, to shut up.

*Chiunque*, whosoever.

*Ci*, here.

*Cielo*, heaven, sky.

*Cinquanta*, fifty.

*Cinque*, five.

*Circa*, about.

*Circondare*, to surround.

*Citare*, to summon.

*Città*, town, city.

*Cittadino*, citizen.

*Classe* (f.), class.

*Cogliere*, to gather.

*Cognato*, brother-in-law; *cognata*, sister-in-law.

*Colà*, there.

*Colazione* (f.), breakfast.

*Colla*, with the. See p. 8.

*Colombo*, Columbus.

*Colpa*, fault.

*Coltre* (f. sing.), bed clothes.

*Colui*, that man, the man.

*Combattere*, to fight.

*Come*? how? *come si dice in italiano...*? what is the Italian for...?

*Cominciare*, to begin, commence.

*Commendabile*, commendable.

*Commercio di lettere*, correspondence.

*Comodo*, -a, comfortable.

*Compagnia*, company.

*Compagno*, companion.

*Comparire*, to appear.

*Compensare*, to compensate.

*Compiacenza*, delight.

*Compiacersi*, to be pleased.

*Compiere*, *compire*, to finish.

*Componimento*, composition.

*Comporre*, to compose; — *la faccia*, to set one's countenance.

*Comprare*, to buy.

*Comune*, common.

*Comunque*, however.

*Con*, with.

*Concedere*, to grant, to bestow.

*Concorso*, concourse.

*Concerto*, concert.

*Condanna*, condemnation, sentence.

*Condolarsi*, to condole.

*Condurre*, to conduct, to take.

*Confiscare*, to confiscate.

*Conforme a*, in keeping with.

*Connettere*, to connect.

*Conoscenza*, acquaintance, knowledge.

*Conoscere*, to know.

*Conoscitore* (m.), connoisseur.

*Consacrare*, to consecrate.

*Consegna*, charge, watchword.

*Considerare*, to consider.

*Consiglio*, advice.

*Console*, consul.

*Contadino*, countryman.

*Conte*, count.

*Contemplatore*, observer.

*Contenere*, to contain.

*Contentarsi*, to be contented.

*Contessa*, countess.

*Continuo*, -a, continual.

*Conto*, bill, account; *far — di*, to intend.

*Contorni* (pl.), environs.

*Contradire*, to contradict.

*Contrario*, contrary.

*Contrarre*, to contract.

*Contrastare*, to oppose.

*Contristare*, to distress.

*Convenire* (v. neut.), to suit, agree; (v. impers.) to be necessary.

*Convertirsi in vento*, to turn into nothing.

*Copernico*, Copernicus.

*Coprire*, to cover.

*Corallo*, coral.

*Coricarsi*, to go to rest.

*Corpo*, body.

*Correggiato*, flail.

*Correntemente*, fluently.

*Corriere* (m.), mail.

*Corrispondere a*, to repay.  
*Corrompersi*, to go bad, to be spoiled.  
*Corrotto*, -a, corrupt.  
*Corto*, -a, short.  
*Cosa*, thing.  
*Così*, thus.  
*Cospirare*, to conspire.  
*Costare*, to cost.  
*Costi*, here.  
*Costringere*, to compel.  
*Costume* (m.), custom, manner.  
*Cotesto*, that.  
*Credere*, to believe; *credersi*, to be believed.  
*Crescere*, to increase.  
*Cristallo*, crystal.  
*Cristo*, Christ.  
*Cristiano*, Christian.  
*Cronaca*, chronicle.  
*Cucire*, to sew.  
*Cugino*, -a, cousin.  
*Cui*, whom, that, which.  
*Cuocere*, to cook.  
*Cuore* (m.), heart.  
*Cura*, care.  
*Currado*, Conrad.

## D.

*D'*, of. Note *b*, p. 15, and Obs. p. 239.  
*Da*, by, from. See p. 239.  
*da me*, to me = at, to, or in my house.  
*Dabbenaggine* (f.), obtuseness.  
*Dai*, by the. See p. 8.  
*Dal*, by the. See p. 8.  
*Danaro*, coin; *danari*, money.  
*Dare*, to give; — *da mangiare*, to give something to eat; — *da bere*, to give something to drink; — *da cena*, to give some supper; — *in giardino* (of a window), to look into the garden; — *un' opera*, to play an opera; — *retta*, to give heed.  
*Davvero*, indeed.  
*Debito*, debt.  
*Dicembre* (m.), December.

*Decorare*, to adorn.  
*Decorazioni*, scenery.  
*Definitivo*, -a, definite.  
*Degno*, -a, worthy.  
*Del, dell', della, dello*, of the.  
 See p. 8.  
*Delitto*, crime, misdeed.  
*Deludere*, to disappoint.  
*Dentro*, in, within.  
*Derelitto*, destitute.  
*Desiderare*, to wish.  
*Desiderio*, desire, anxiety.  
*Destarsi*, to awake.  
*Di*, of; (after a comparative), than; *di sopra*, upstairs.  
*Di*, day.  
*Dicianove*, nineteen.  
*Diciasette*, seventeen.  
*Diciotto*, eighteen.  
*Dieci*, ten.  
*Dietro*, behind.  
*Difendere*, to defend.  
*Difficile*, difficult.  
*Digelare*, to thaw.  
*Diligente*, diligent.  
*Dimenticare*, to forget.  
*Dimorare*, to reside.  
*Dio*, God.  
*Dipingere*, to paint.  
*Diportarsi*, to behave.  
*Dire*, to say; — *da senno*, to speak in earnest.  
*Dirimpetto*, opposite.  
*Disgrazia*, misfortune.  
*Dispensa*, pantry.  
*Dispetto*—*a dispetto*, reluctantly.  
*Dispiacere*, to be sorry. See Note *a*, p. 72.  
*Distinguere*, to distinguish.  
*Dito*, finger; *a mena* —, at one's fingers' ends.  
*Divenire*, to become, to grow.  
*Divertimento*, amusement.  
*Divertirsi*, to enjoy oneself.  
*Divisamento*, device.  
*Divorare*, to devour.  
*Dodici*, twelve.  
*Dolere*, to ache. See Note *c*, p. 79.  
*Dolersi*, to complain.  
*Dolore* (m.), pain, grief.  
*Domanda*, question.  
*Domandare*, to ask.

*Domani*, to-morrow.  
*Domenica*, Sunday.  
*Domestico*, domestic.  
*Donde*, whence.  
*Dopopranzo*, afternoon.  
*Dormire*, to sleep.  
*Dove*, where.  
*Dovere* (n. m.), duty.  
*Dovere* (v. act.), to owe, be obliged.  
*Due*, two.  
*Duello*, duel.  
*Durante*, during.

## E.

*E*, and; *e*, is.  
*Eccessivo*, -a, excessive.  
*Ecclesiastico*, ecclesiastic.  
*Eclissi* (m. & f.), eclipse.  
*Ecco*, here is, here are.  
*Edificio*, building.  
*Edimburgo*, Edinburgh.  
*Edizione* (f.), edition.  
*Effetto*, effect; *in* —, in fact.  
*Egli*, he, it. See p. 182.  
*Eletto*, choice.  
*Ella*, she, it. See p. 183.  
*Empio*, wicked, malicious.  
*Empire*, to fill.  
*Entrare*, to enter.  
*Erba*, grass.  
*Esame* (m.), examination.  
*Esattezza*, precision.  
*Esclamare*, to exclaim.  
*Esempio*, example, instance.  
*Esercizio*, exercise.  
*Esigere*, to require, to exact.  
*Esiliare*, to banish.  
*Esilio*, exile.  
*Espellere*, to eject.  
*Esprimere*, to express; *esprimersi*, to be expressed.  
*Esso*, -a, he, she, it; *essi*, -e, they. See p. 183.  
*Essere*, to be; — *infreddato*, -a, to have a cold; — *solito*, -a, to be accustomed.  
*Estate* (f.), summer.  
*Esterno*, exterior.  
*Estollere*, to raise, extol.  
*Estrarre*, to draw, extract.  
*Esule* (m.), an exile.

*Eta* (*etade*), age.  
*Europa*, Europe.  
*Evangelio*, Gospel.

## F.

*Fabbricare una casa*, to build a house.  
*Fabbro*, smith.  
*Faccenda*, business.  
*Facchino*, porter, carrier.  
*Fallare*, to commit a fault.  
*Fallo*, fault.  
*Falso*, -a, false.  
*Fama*, reputation; *venir in* — or *in nome*, to come into notice.  
*Famiglia*, family.  
*Famoso*, -a, famous.  
*Fanciullina*, little girl.  
*Fanciullo*, child.  
*Fare*, to do, make; (of weather), to be; (of a profession), to exercise, practise; — *freddo*, to be cold; — *colazione*, to breakfast; — *una passeggiata*, to take a walk; — *una visita*, to pay a visit; — *il sordo*, to pretend to be deaf, *far conto di*, to intend; *far del bene*, to do good; *far del male*, to do mischief; *fare buona accoglienza*, to give a kind reception; *far entrare*, to show in; *far fare*, to have made; *far fiasco*, to fail; *far montare*, to have set; *far pagare*, to charge; *far prendere*, to have taken; *farsi fare*, to have made for oneself, *farsi capire*, to make oneself understood; *come si fa*, as is usual.  
*Farfalla*, butterfly.  
*Fastidio*, trouble.  
*Fatica*, labour.  
*Fatto*, fact.  
*Fattura*, invoice.  
*Favola*, fable.  
*Favoleggiare*, to report.  
*Favoletta*, little story.  
*Favore* (m.), favour; *per* —, if you please.

*Febbraio*, February.  
*Febbre* (f.), fever.  
*Felice*, happy.  
*Fendere*, to split.  
*Ferire*, to wound.  
*Fermarsi*, to stay.  
*Fermezza*, firmness.  
*Fermo*, stagnant (water).  
*Ferro*, iron.  
*Ficoia*, fig-tree.  
*Fico*, fig.  
*Figere*, to drive in.  
*Figlia*, daughter.  
*Figlio*, son.  
*Figliolanza*, children.  
*Figliuolo*, little son.  
*Fin, fino*, until; *fin dove*, how far, as far as.  
*Finalmente*, at last.  
*Finchè*, until, so long as.  
*Fine* (m. & f.), end.  
*Finestra*, window.  
*Fingere*, to pretend.  
*Finire*, to finish.  
*Fiore* (f.), flower.  
*Fiorire*, to flower, to flourish.  
*Firenze*, Florence.  
*Fiume* (m.), river.  
*Focherello*, fire (dimin.).  
*Foco*, fire.  
*Foggiare*, to form.  
*Foglio*, sheet of paper.  
*Folla*, crowd.  
*Fondare*, to found.  
*Fondere*, to cast.  
*Fondo*, end, bottom.  
*Fonte* (f.), source; — *d'oro*, mine of gold.  
*Forestiero*, foreigner.  
*Formare*, to form.  
*Fornaio*, baker.  
*Forse*, perhaps.  
*Forza*, strength.  
*Fra*, among.  
*Francese*, French.  
*Francia*, France.  
*Franco*, free, open.  
*Fratello*, brother.  
*Freddo*, cold.  
*Fresco*, fresh.  
*Fretta*, haste, hurry.  
*Fronte* (f.), brow, forehead.

*Frutto*, fruit.  
*Fuggire*, to flee.  
*Fuoco*, fire.  
*Fuori*, outside, beyond.

## G.

*Garzone*, a youth.  
*Gas, gasse* (m.), gas.  
*Gelare*, to freeze.  
*Generalmente*, generally.  
*Genere* (m.), kind.  
*Generoso*, generous.  
*Genio*, genius.  
*Genitore*, father.  
*Genitori* (pl.), parents.  
*Gennaio*, January.  
*Genova*, Genoa.  
*Gente* (f.), people.  
*Gentile* (adj.), kind.  
*Germania*, Germany.  
*Ghibellini*, Ghibellines.  
*Ghiotto*, greedy.  
*Già*, already, formerly.  
*Giacchè*, since, as.  
*Giacere*, to lie.  
*Giardiniere*, gardener.  
*Giardino*, garden.  
*Giocare*, to play.  
*Gioielliere*, jeweller.  
*Giornale* (m.), newspaper.  
*Giorno*, day.  
*Giovane* (m. & f.), a youth.  
*Giovanni*, John.  
*Giovare*, to be useful.  
*Giovedì*, Thursday.  
*Giovevole*, useful.  
*Giovine*, young man.  
*Girare*, to revolve.  
*Gire*, to go.  
*Giro*, turn.  
*Giudizio*, judgment.  
*Giugno*, June.  
*Giungere*, to arrive.  
*Giusta*, according to.  
*Giustizia*, justice.  
*Gli*, the (pl.). See p. 8.  
*Godere*, to enjoy.  
*Grammatica*, grammar.  
*Gran, grande*, large, great.  
*Grandinare*, to hail.

*Grano*, corn.  
*Gratitudine* (f.), gratitude.  
*Greco*, Greek.  
*Gridare*, to cry out.  
*Guadagnare*, to gain.  
*Guantiera* (*vassoio* at Florence), tray.  
*Guardarsi di*, to take care of, to guard against, to keep aloof from.  
*Guardia*, guard, watch.  
*Guanto*, glove.  
*Guarire*, to recover, cure.  
*Guastare*, to spoil.  
*Guerra*, war.  
*Guerriero*, warrior.  
*Guglielmo*, William.  
*Guizzare*, to shoot.  
*Gusto*, taste, tact.

## I.

*I*, the (pl.). See p. 8.  
*Ieri*, yesterday; — *l'altro*, the day before yesterday.  
*Igiene* (f.), regimen.  
*Ignorante*, ignorant, ignoramus.  
*Il*, the. See p. 8.  
*Ilarità*, cheerfulness.  
*Immergere*, to plunge.  
*Impaccio*, trouble, embarrassment.  
*Imparare*, to learn.  
*Impedire*, to prevent.  
*Imperocchè*, since.  
*Imporre*, to impose.  
*In*, in, into, to; *in viaggio*, abroad.  
*Inaridire*, to wither.  
*Incapace*, incapable.  
*Inchiudere*, to enclose.  
*Incirca*, all'—, about.  
*Inclinare*, to incline.  
*Incomodare*, to incommode, to disturb.  
*Incontrare*, to meet; (of a performance), to succeed.  
*Incutere spavento*, to strike terror.  
*Indegno*, unworthy.  
*Indirizzo*, address.  
*Indugiare*, to tarry.

*Indugio*, delay.  
*Inezie* (pl. f.), trifling.  
*Infelice*, unhappy.  
*Informazione* (f.), information.  
*Infreddato*, -a, (*essere*), to have a cold.  
*Infreddatura*, a cold.  
*Ingegno*, genius.  
*Inghilterra*, England.  
*Inghiottire*, to swallow.  
*Inglese*, English.  
*Ingresso*, entrance.  
*Insegnare*, to teach.  
*Insieme*, together.  
*Institutore* (m.), founder.  
*Intanto*, in the mean time.  
*Intendere*, to hear.  
*Intenzione* (f.), intention.  
*Interamente*, entirely.  
*Interessante*, interesting.  
*Interessare*, to interest.  
*Intorno*, about.  
*Introdurre*, to introduce.  
*Invece*, instead.  
*Inverno*, winter.  
*Inviare*, to send, forward.  
*Invitare*, to invite.  
*Involto*, parcel.  
*Ire*, to go.  
*Iscrizione* (f.), inscription.  
*Italia*, Italy.  
*Italiano*, Italian.  
*Ivi*, there.

## L.

*L'*, the (see p. 8); her, it, him.  
*La*, the (see p. 8); her, it.  
*Là*, there.  
*Laborioso*, industrious.  
*Lagnarsi*, to complain.  
*Largo*, wide.  
*Lasciare*, to let, leave; — *in consegna*, to have in charge.  
*Latte* (m.), milk.  
*Lavandaia*, laundress.  
*Lavarsi*, to wash oneself.  
*Lavoro*, work.  
*Le*, the (see p. 8); them, to her, to it (see p. 183).  
*Legare*, to tie.  
*Leggere*, to read.

*Leggersi*, to be related.  
*Legno*, wood.  
*Lettera*, letter.  
*Letto*, bed.  
*Levante* (m.), East.  
*Levarsi*, to rise, get up.  
*Lezione* (f.), lesson.  
*Libreria*, library.  
*Libro*, book.  
*Licere*, to be allowed.  
*Lieto*, glad, joyful.  
*Limone*, lemon.  
*Lingua*, tongue, language.  
*Lira*, pound; — *sterlina*, pound sterling. *Lira* = franc in money.  
*Livorno*, Leghorn.  
*Lodare*, to praise.  
*Londra*, London.  
*Loquace*, talkative.  
*Lucciola*, glow-worm.  
*Luce* (f.), light.  
*Lucere*, to shine, to glitter.  
*Luglio*, July.  
*Luna*, moon.  
*Lunedì*, Monday.  
*Lungi*, far.  
*Lungo*, long.  
*Luogo*, place.  
*Lupo*, wolf.

## M.

*Ma*, but.  
*Madre*, mother.  
*Madrid*, Madrid.  
*Maestro*, teacher.  
*Magagna*, speck.  
*Maggio*, May.  
*Maggiore*, eldest (of brothers and sisters).  
*Mai*, never.  
*Mal di capo*, headache.  
*Mal di denti*, tooth-ache.  
*Malattia*, illness.  
*Male* or *mal* (m.), pain, illness.  
*Malo*, bad.  
*Malvolentieri*, unwillingly.  
*Mancanza*, want.  
*Mandare*, to send.  
*Mangiare*, to eat.  
*Mano* (f.), hand.

*Mantenere*, to keep.  
*Mantiglia*, mantle.  
*Maravigliarsi*, to wonder.  
*Marchese*, marquis.  
*Mare* (m.), sea.  
*Margheritina*, daisy.  
*Marito*, husband.  
*Martedì*, Tuesday.  
*Marzo*, March.  
*Maschile*, masculine.  
*Mattina* or *mattino*, morning; *dì buon* —, early in the morning.  
*Meco*, with me.  
*Mediante*, by means of.  
*Medicina*, medicine.  
*Mediterraneo*, Mediterranean.  
*Meglio* (adv.), better.  
*Mela*, apple; *melo*, apple-tree.  
*Melancia*, an orange.  
*Memoria*, memory.  
*Meno*, less.  
*Mentre che*, while.  
*Mercante*, tradesman.  
*Mercanzia*, goods, merchandise.  
*Merciavolo*, pedlar.  
*Mercoledì*, Wednesday.  
*Mercurio*, Mercury.  
*Mescere*, to pour out (wine).  
*Meschino*, miserable.  
*Mescolare*, to mix.  
*Mese* (m.), month.  
*Mesto*, sad.  
*Metallo*, metal.  
*Mettere*, to put; *mettersi*, to put on; *mettersi a*, to set about; *mettersi in sesto*, to arrange properly; *mettere alte strida*, to scream loudly.  
*Mezzi*, means.  
*Mezzo*, middle, means.  
*Miele* (m.), honey.  
*Mietere*, to reap.  
*Migliore*, better.  
*Milano*, Milan.  
*Milanese* (m. & f.), Milanese.  
*Militare*, officer.  
*Milton*, Milton.  
*Minestra*, rice-soup.  
*Minore*, youngest (of brothers and sisters).  
*Mirare*, to look; — *a*, to have for one's object.

*Miseria*, distress.  
*Misero*, wretched.  
*Misura*, measure.  
*Mobigliare*, to furnish.  
*Mobile* (m.), piece of furniture.  
*Mobiliare* (m.), furniture.  
*Moda*, fashion.  
*Molto*, much.  
*Monarchia*, monarchy.  
*Mondo*, world.  
*Monsignor*, My Lord (a dignitary of the Church).  
*Montagna*, mountain.  
*Montare* (of jewels), to set.  
*Monte* (m.), mountain; *Monte Bianco*, Mont Blanc.  
*Morire*, to die.  
*Morte* (f.), death.  
*Mosaico*, mosaic.  
*Moscolo*, moss.  
*Molino*, mill.  
*Muffa*, mildew.  
*Muratore*, mason.  
*Muro*, wall.  
*Muschio*, moss.  
*Musica*, music.  
*Mutare casa*, to change residence.  
*Mutarsi*, to change.

## N.

*Napoli*, Naples.  
*Narrare*, to relate.  
*Nascere*, to be born, (of vegetation) to grow.  
*Nascondere*, to hide.  
*Ne*, of it, of him, of her, of them, some. See p. 183.  
*Necessario*, necessary.  
*Negligere*, to neglect.  
*Nemico*, enemy.  
*Nero*, black.  
*Nessuno*, nobody.  
*Nevicare*, to snow.  
*Niente*, nothing.  
*Nipote*, nephew, niece.  
*Niuno*, no one.  
*No*, no.  
*Nobile*, noble.  
*Nocchiero*, pilot.  
*Noia*, trouble.

*Nominare*, to name, to state.  
*Non*, not; — *che*, much less.  
*Nonna*, grandmother.  
*Nonno*, grandfather.  
*Notizia*, intelligence.  
*Noto*, known.  
*Notte* (f.), night.  
*Novanta*, ninety.  
*Nove*, nine.  
*Novembre* (m.), November.  
*Noverare*, to count.  
*Nozze*, wedding. See p. 143.  
*Nulla*, nothing.  
*Numero*, number.  
*Numeroso*, numerous.  
*Nuova*, news.

## O.

*O*, or.  
*Obbedire*, to obey.  
*Obbligo*, obligation.  
*Occhio*, eye.  
*Occorrere*, to want.  
*Offrire*, to offer.  
*Oggetto*, object.  
*Oggi*, to-day; — *a otto*, this day week; — *a quindici*, this day fortnight.  
*Ogni*, every.  
*Oliere*, to smell.  
*Oltre a*, upwards of.  
*Ombra*, shadow.  
*Ombrello*, umbrella.  
*Oncia*, ounce.  
*Onorare*, to honour.  
*Onorevole*, honorable.  
*Opera*, work, opera.  
*Ora* (n. f.), hour; *che* — è? what time is it? *a che* — ? at what time; *ora* (adv.), now.  
*Oratorio*, oratorio.  
*Ordinare*, to order.  
*Ordine* (m.), order.  
*Orecchino*, ear-ring.  
*Origine* (f.), origin.  
*Oriuolo*, watch.  
*Ornamento*, ornament.  
*Oro*, gold.  
*Orologio*, clock.  
*Ossa*, bones. See p. 142.



*Ottanta*, eighty.  
*Ottenere*, to obtain.  
*Ottimo*, superl. of *buono*.  
*Otto*, eight.  
*Ottobre* (m.), October.  
*Ove*, where.  
*Ovile* (m.), sheep-fold.  
*Oziare*, to be inactive, to loiter.

## P.

*Pace* (f.), peace.  
*Padre*, father.  
*Padrone*, master.  
*Paese* (m.), country.  
*Paesano*, fellow-countryman.  
*Paga*, payment.  
*Pagare*, to pay.  
*Pagina*, page.  
*Paio*, pair.  
*Palazzo*, palace.  
*Pane* (m.), bread.  
*Panni*, clothes.  
*Pannilini*, (linen) clothes.  
*Papa*, pope.  
*Parecchie*, several.  
*Parente* (m. & f.), relation.  
*Parere*, to seem.  
*Parete* (f.), wall of a room.  
*Parigi*, Paris.  
*Parlamento*, parliament.  
*Parlare*, to speak; *parlarsi*, to be spoken.  
*Parola*, word.  
*Parte* (f.), part.  
*Partire*, to leave, depart, start.  
*Partorire*, to produce.  
*Pascere*, to feed.  
*Pascolo*, pasture.  
*Passaporto*, passport.  
*Passare* (of time), to spend;  
*passare da uno*, to call on a person.  
*Passato*, last.  
*Passeggiata*, walk.  
*Pastore*, shepherd.  
*Patente* (m.), patent.  
*Paterno*, fatherly.  
*Patimento*, suffering.  
*Patria*, country.  
*Paura*, fear; *avere* —, to be afraid.

*Pavimento*, floor.  
*Pazzamente*, foolishly.  
*Pecora*, sheep.  
*Pel*, for the. See p. 8.  
*Pena*, punishment.  
*Penna*, pen.  
*Pensare*, to think; *non* — *a*, not to trouble one's mind about.  
*Pensiero*, thought.  
*Pentire*, to repent.  
*Pentola*, saucepan.  
*Per*, for; — *tempo*, early.  
*Pera*, pear; *pero*, pear-tree.  
*Perche*? (adv.), why? (conj.), because.  
*Perciò*, therefore.  
*Perdere*, to lose; — *il tempo in inezie*, to lose one's time in trifling.  
*Perdita*, loss.  
*Pericolo*, danger.  
*Perla*, pearl.  
*Però*, however.  
*Persiano*, Persian.  
*Persona*, person.  
*Persuadere*, to persuade.  
*Pervertere*, to pervert.  
*Pezzo*, piece; *un* —, a long time.  
*Piacere*, to like, to be fond of.  
 See note *a*, p. 72.  
*Piacevolmente*, pleasantly.  
*Piangere*, to weep.  
*Piano*, floor, story.  
*Pianoforte* (m.), piano.  
*Pianta*, plant.  
*Piazza*, square.  
*Piccolo*, small.  
*Piego*, parcel.  
*Pieno*, full.  
*Pietà*, piety, compassion.  
*Pietro*, Peter.  
*Pietroburgo*, St. Petersburg.  
*Pigliare*, to catch, take.  
*Pioggia*, rain.  
*Piovere*, to rain.  
*Pipistrello*, bat.  
*Pittore*, painter.  
*Più*, more; *il* or *la* —, the most.  
*Plebe* (f.), the working classes.  
*Poc' anzi*, a short time ago.  
*Poco*, little; *pochi*, -e, few.

*Poco lungi*, not far.  
*Poeta*, poet.  
*Pomeridiano*, in the afternoon.  
*Pomo*, handle of a stick.  
*Pompeo*, Pompey.  
*Ponente* (m.), West.  
*Pontefice*, Pontiff.  
*Ponteficio*, papal.  
*Popolare*, popular.  
*Popolo*, people.  
*Porcellana*, porcelain, china.  
*Porre*, to place ; — *in campo pre-*  
*testi*, to bring forward ex-  
 cuses.  
*Porsi in capo*, to take into one's  
 head.  
*Porta*, door.  
*Portare*, to carry, bring, wear ;  
 — *in tavola*, to serve up din-  
 ner.  
*Portiere*, porter.  
*Portogallo*, Portugal.  
*Possedere*, to possess.  
*Posta*, post.  
*Potare*, to prune.  
*Potente*, powerful.  
*Potere*, to be able ; *non ne — più*,  
 to be very tired.  
*Potestà*, chief magistrate.  
*Povero*, poor.  
*Pranzare*, to dine.  
*Pranzo*, dinner.  
*Prato*, meadow.  
*Precepto*, precept.  
*Preferire*, to prefer.  
*Pregare*, to beg.  
*Pregiare*, to value.  
*Prendere*, to take.  
*Presentarsi*, to appear.  
*Presente* (m.), a present ; (adj.)  
 present.  
*Prestare*, to lend ; — *fede*, to  
 believe.  
*Presto*, soon, early, quickly.  
*Prezioso*, precious.  
*Prigione* (f.), prison.  
*Prima chè*, before.  
*Prima di*, before.  
*Primavera*, spring.  
*Primo*, first.  
*Principale*, principal.  
*Principe*, prince.

*Principiare*, to begin, com-  
 mence.  
*Principio*, beginning, commence-  
 ment.  
*Procedere*, to proceed.  
*Prometeo*, Prometheus.  
*Promessa*, promise.  
*Pronto*, ready.  
*Proprio*, his, her own.  
*Prospettiva*, view.  
*Prossimo*, next.  
*Provvedere*, to foresee, to provide.  
*Pubblicare*, to publish ; — *i beni di*,  
 to confiscate the property of.  
*Pulire*, to clean.  
*Pure*, yet, however.  
*Putto*, boy.

## Q.

*Quà*, here.  
*Quadro*, picture.  
*Qualche*, some, any (followed by  
 sing.).  
*Quale* or *qual'* (sg.) } which.  
*Quali* (pl.) }  
*Qualità*, quality, character.  
*Qualunque*, any.  
*Quando*, when ; *di — in —*, ever  
 and anon.  
*Quante* (f.) } how many.  
*Quanti* (m.) }  
*Quanti anni* ? how old ?  
*Quanto*, how much ; *quanto*  
*tempo*, how long.  
*Quaranta*, forty.  
*Quattordici*, fourteen.  
*Quattro*, four.  
*Quel, quello*, that ; *quello che*,  
 that which, what, or that.  
*Querciuolo*, small oak.  
*Questi*, this man.  
*Questo, questa*, this.  
*Qui*, here.  
*Quindici*, fifteen.

## R.

*Raccogliere*, to pick up.  
*Racconto*, account, story.

*Radere*, to scrape.  
*Ragazzo*, -a, boy, girl.  
*Raggio*, ray, beam.  
*Ragionamento*, conversation.  
*Ragione* (f.), reason, right.  
*Rallegrarsi*, to be glad.  
*Rapina*, rapine, robbery.  
*Regalare*, to present.  
*Regalo*, a present.  
*Regno*, kingdom, state.  
*Rendere*, to give back.  
*Restare*, to stay.  
*Resto*, rest.  
*Rete* (f.), net.  
*Retto*, right, correct.  
*Riaprire*, to open again.  
*Riavere*, to have back.  
*Ricapitare*, to forward to one's address.  
*Ricchezza*, wealth, riches.  
*Ricco*, -a, rich.  
*Ricevere*, to receive; — *nuove di*, to hear from; — *con bella grazia uno*, to receive a person kindly.  
*Ricompensa*, reward.  
*Riconoscenza*, gratitude.  
*Riconoscere*, to recognize, to notice.  
*Ricordarsi*, to remember.  
*Ricorrere a*, to recur, to resort to.  
*Ridere*, to laugh.  
*Ridersi di*, to laugh at.  
*Riedere*, to return.  
*Rientrare*, to go in again.  
*Riflessivo*, thoughtful.  
*Rimanere*, to stay; — *colla lettura*, to leave off reading.  
*Rimendatrice* (f.), repairer.  
*Rimettere*, to put off.  
*Rimuovere*, to remove.  
*Rincrescere* (impers.), to be sorry.  
*Ringraziare*, to thank.  
*Rinomato*, -a, renowned.  
*Ripetere*, to repeat.  
*Ripigliare*, to rejoin.  
*Riporre*, to put in, to place.  
*Riportare*, to carry back.  
*Riposare*, to rest.  
*Riprodurre*, to reproduce.  
*Riputare*, to consider, to look upon.

*Riscaldare*, to warm up.  
*Risolversi*, to make up one's mind.  
*Risparmiarsi*, to spare one's self.  
*Rispetto*, respect.  
*Risplendere*, to light, to glitter.  
*Rispondere*, to answer.  
*Ritirare*, to withdraw.  
*Rito*, rite.  
*Ritorno*, return.  
*Ritrovare*, to discover.  
*Ritrovatore*, discoverer.  
*Rivedere*, to see again.  
*Riverente*, respectful.  
*Rivolgersi a*, to apply to.  
*Roba*, goods; things in general, from the smallest trifle to the most costly object.  
*Roma*, Rome.  
*Rompere*, to break.  
*Rosa*, rose.  
*Rovina*, ruin.  
*Ruotare*, to roll about, to parade.

## S.

*Sabbato*, Saturday.  
*Sacro*, -a, holy, sacred.  
*Sala*, drawing-room.  
*Salire*, to rise, to ascend.  
*Salotto*, drawing-room.  
*Salutare*, to salute; *salutate da parte mia vostro fratello*, give my compliments to your brother.  
*Salute*, health.  
*Salvare*, to save.  
*Sano*, healthy, sound.  
*Sapere*, to know, to smell; — *a mente*, to know by heart; — *di buono*, to have a good smell; — *dire*, to be able to tell.  
*Sapiente*, wise.  
*Sarchiare*, to weed.  
*Sarto*, tailor.  
*Savio*, -a, wise.  
*Saziare*, to satiate.  
*Sbagliare*, to mistake.  
*Sbaglio*, mistake.  
*Sbrigarsi* to hurry.

*Scacchi*, chess.  
*Scarpa*, shoe.  
*Scheletro*, skeleton.  
*Sconfiggere*, to defeat.  
*Scoprimento*, discovery.  
*Scoprire*, to discover.  
*Scorrere*, to flow.  
*Scordarsi*, to forget.  
*Scrivere*, to write.  
*Scuola*, school.  
*Scure* (f.), axe.  
*Sdegnato*, -a, angry.  
*Se*, if.  
*Secolo*, century.  
*Secondo*, second, according to.  
*Segreto*, secret.  
*Sedere*, to sit.  
*Sedia*, chair.  
*Sedici*, sixteen.  
*Seggiola*, chair.  
*Segnale* (m.), sign, mark.  
*Segretario*, secretary.  
*Segreto*, secret.  
*Seguire*, to follow.  
*Sei*, six.  
*Seme* (m.), seed.  
*Semplice*, simple.  
*Sentenza*, sentence; — *di morte*, death warrant.  
*Sentinella*, sentry.  
*Sentire*, to hear, feel; — *parlar di*, to hear of.  
*Senza*, without.  
*Seppellire*, to bury.  
*Sera*, evening.  
*Serata*, evening party.  
*Serva*, maid servant.  
*Servigio*, service.  
*Servire*, to serve.  
*Servo*, man servant.  
*Sessanta*, sixty.  
*Sete* (f.), thirst.  
*Settanta*, seventy.  
*Sette*, seven.  
*Settembre* (m.), September.  
*Settimana*, week.  
*Sfera*, sphere, globe.  
*Sgarbato*, rude.  
*Sgomberare*, to remove.  
*Signor*, Mr.  
*Signora*, Mrs., lady.  
*Signore*, gentleman.

*Signorina*, Miss.  
*Sinfonia*, overture.  
*Singolarissimo*, very remarkable.  
*Sipario*, curtain of a theatre.  
*Soave*, sweet.  
*Sobborgo*, suburb.  
*Sobrio*, -a, sober.  
*Sofà*, couch.  
*Soffitta*, attics.  
*Soggiacere*, to succumb.  
*Soggiorno*, residence.  
*Soldato*, soldier.  
*Sole* (m.), sun.  
*Solere*, to be accustomed.  
*Solo*, -a, alone.  
*Sommo*, highest.  
*Sonare*, to play.  
*Sopra*, above, on; *di* —, up- stairs.  
*Sorbetto*, ice.  
*Sordo*, -a, deaf.  
*Sorella*, sister.  
*Sorte* (f.), lot.  
*Sortire*, to sally out.  
*Sostenere*, to bear.  
*Sottrarre*, to subtract.  
*Sovente*, often.  
*Sovratutto*, above all.  
*Sovvertire*, to subvert.  
*Spaccalegna*, wood-cutter.  
*Spagna*, Spain.  
*Spago*, cord.  
*Spalancare*, to throw wide open.  
*Spargersi*, to spread.  
*Spavento*, terror.  
*Spazzo*, floor.  
*Specchio*, looking-glass.  
*Speciale*, especial.  
*Specie* (f.), species.  
*Spegnere*, to put out, to quench.  
*Speranza*, hope.  
*Sperienza*, experience; *veder la* —, to make the experiment.  
*Spesa*, charge.  
*Spesso*, often.  
*Spicciarsi*, to make haste.  
*Spiegare*, to explain.  
*Spillone* (m.), brooch.  
*Splendere*, to shine.  
*Sposare*, to marry.  
*Sposarsi con*, to marry, to get married to.

*Sposo*, bridegroom.  
*Sprecare*, to waste.  
*Spregiare*, to despise.  
*Stabilire*, to establish, to determine on.  
*Stabilirsi*, to settle.  
*Stagione* (f.), season.  
*Stamane* { this morning.  
*Stamattina* {  
*S'tampatore*, printer.  
*Stancarsi*, to get tired.  
*Stanza*, room, apartment; — *da mangiare*, dining-room; — *da ricevere*, sitting-room.  
*Stare* (of health), to be, do; (of residence), to live; *star bene*, (of a dress), to fit; *stare in dietro* (of a watch), to lose; *stare composto*, to sit properly.  
*Stassera*, this evening.  
*State* (f.), summer.  
*Stato*, state.  
*Statua*, statue.  
*Stazione* (f.), station.  
*Stella*, star.  
*Stelo*, stem.  
*Stimare*, to consider.  
*Stivale* (m.), boot.  
*Storia*, history.  
*Straniero*, stranger.  
*Studiare*, to study.  
*Subito*, immediately.  
*Succedere*, to succeed, to happen.  
*Sudore* (m.), sweat, labour.  
*Suggerimento*, advice.  
*Suo, sua*, his. See p. 198.  
*Suoi*, his. See p. 198.  
*Suonare*, to ring, play music.  
*Suono*, sound.  
*Svegliarsi*, to awake.  
*Svenire*, to faint.  
*Sventura*, misfortune.  
*Sventurato*, -a, unfortunate.  
*Svizzero*, Swiss.

## T.

*Tacere*, to be silent.  
*Tale*, such a one, such or such a.  
*Tangere*, to touch.  
*Tanto*, so much.

*Tappeto*, carpet.  
*Tappezzare*, to paper the wall.  
*Tardi*, late.  
*Tè*, tea.  
*Teatro*, theatre.  
*Tedesco*, German.  
*Tegghia*, earthen pie-dish.  
*Tema* (m.), exercise.  
*Temere*, to fear.  
*Temperino*, pen-knife.  
*Tempo*, time, weather; *per* —, early; *sprecare il* —, to waste one's time.  
*Tenere*, to keep; — *dozzina*, to keep a boarding-house; — *per galantuomo*, to believe (one) to be honest; — *conto di*, to take care of.  
*Tenerello* (speaking of age), young (dim.).  
*Tergere*, to wipe.  
*Terra*, earth.  
*Terreno*, ground.  
*Ti*, thee, to thee.  
*Titolo*, right, title.  
*Toccare ad uno*, to be one's turn, to come to.  
*Toppa*, patch, key-hole.  
*Tornare*, to return.  
*Torta*, tart.  
*Tosto*, soon, quick.  
*Tovaglia*, table-cloth.  
*Tra*, amongst.  
*Traccia*, trace.  
*Tradurre*, to translate.  
*Traduzione* (f.), translation.  
*Tralasciare*, to leave off.  
*Tranne*, except.  
*Trarsi d'impaccio*, to get out of trouble.  
*Trattenersi*, to stay.  
*Tredici*, thirteen.  
*Treno*, train.  
*Trenta*, thirty.  
*Trinciare*, to carve.  
*Trionfare*, to triumph.  
*Tristo*, bad.  
*Trittolemo*, Triptolemus.  
*Trovare*, to find; *andare a* — *uno*, to go to see a person; *trovarsi*, to be found.  
*Tu*, thou.

*Two*, thy.  
*Tuonare*, to thunder.  
*Tuttavia*, still, nevertheless.  
*Tutto*, all, the whole, every-thing. See p. 223.

## U.

*Uccello*, bird.  
*Uccidere*, to kill.  
*Udire*, to hear.  
*Uffizio*, office; — *divino*, divine service.  
*Ultimo*, -a, last.  
*Umano*, human.  
*Umoro* (m.), humour.  
*Un*, *uno*, *una*, a, an, one. See p. 145.  
*Undici*, eleven.  
*Uomo*, man; — *dabbene*, a good man.  
*Urgere*, to be urgent.  
*Usare*, to use.  
*Uscire*, to go out.  
*Uso*, use; *fare uso*, to use.  
*Utile*, useful.  
*Uva*, grapes.

## V.

*Vaccaro*, cow-keeper.  
*Valere*, to be worth.  
*Vano*, vain.  
*Vantaggiare*, to profit.  
*Vantamento*, boasting.  
*Vantarsi*, to boast.  
*Varcare*, to cross.  
*Vaso*, pot.  
*Vaticano*, Vatican.  
*Vedere*, to see; *vedersi*, to be seen.  
*Veli*, to you, them. See p. 186.  
*Velo*, to you, it. See p. 186.  
*Vendere*, to sell.  
*Venezia*, Venice.  
*Venerdì*, Friday.  
*Venire*, to come; — *meno*, to faint.  
*Venti*, twenty.  
*Venuta*, arrival.

*Verbo*, verb.  
*Vergogna*, shame; *aver vergogna*, *vergognarsi*, to be ashamed.  
*Vermicello*, worm (dimin.).  
*Vero*, true.  
*Versare*, to pour out.  
*Verso* (prep.), towards, about.  
*Veruno*, any; *non* —, no.  
*Vestibolo*, hall.  
*Vestire*, to dress.  
*Vestito*, dress, coat.  
*Vettura*, coach.  
*Vetturino*, cabman.  
*Vi*, there; *vi* (conj. pron.), you, or to you; (reflec. pron.) to yourself, yourself or selves.  
*Via*, way.  
*Viaggiare*, to travel; — *a piedi*, to travel on foot; — *in carrozza*, to travel in a carriage.  
*Viaggio*, journey.  
*Viale*, avenue.  
*Vicendevole*, mutual.  
*Vicinato*, neighbourhood.  
*Vicino*, near, neighbour.  
*Vienna*, Vienna.  
*Vietare*, to forbid.  
*Villa*, country-seat, house.  
*Vino*, wine; — *d' Oporto*, Port wine.  
*Viola*, violet.  
*Virtuoso*, virtuous.  
*Visita*, visit.  
*Vispo*, lively.  
*Vista*, sight.  
*Vistoso*, striking to the sight, splendid.  
*Vite* (f.), vine.  
*Vizio*, vice.  
*Voce* (f.), voice; *ad alta* —, aloud.  
*Voglia*, desire, longing.  
*Voi*, you.  
*Volare*, to fly.  
*Volentieri*, with pleasure.  
*Volere*, to wish, will, want; — *dire*, to mean; — *bene*, to be fond of, to love; *si vuole*, it is believed; *volete una mela?* will you have an apple?  
*Volgere le spalle a*, to turn one's back on.

2

*Volta*, time; *altre volte*, formerly.

*Voltarsi*, to turn.

*Volto*, face.

*Vostro*, -a, (pl.) -i, -e, your. See p. 198.

*Voto*, wish.

*Vuoto*, empty.

## Z.

*Zanzara*, gnat, mosquito.

*Zia*, aunt.

*Zio*, uncle.

*Zoppo*, lame.

*Zucchero*, sugar.

2





**RETURN TO the circulation desk of any  
University of California Library  
or to the  
NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station  
University of California  
Richmond, CA 94804-4698**

---

**ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS**

**2-month loans may be renewed by calling**

**510 ~~(415)~~ 642-6753**

**1-year loans may be recharged by bringing books  
to NRLF**

**Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days  
prior to due date**

---

**DUE AS STAMPED BELOW**

---

**OCT 15 1992**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

IB 41891.



**968314**

**THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY**



